



**Jones Gillam Renz Architects**

---

**Address**

730 N 9th St.  
Salina, KS 67401

1881 Main St., Suite 301  
Kansas City, MO 64108

**Contact**

[jgr@jgrarchitects.com](mailto:jgr@jgrarchitects.com)  
(785) 827-0386

**Web**

[jgrarchitects.com](http://jgrarchitects.com)

## **Project Manual**

for

# **101 N. SANTA FE AVE Remodel & Additions: Pele's Playground, Apartments & Roof Top Bar Salina, KS**

**March 7, 2025**

**Project No. 24-3421**



101 N. SANTA FE AVE  
REMODEL & ADDITIONS:  
PELE'S PLAYGROUND, APARTMENTS & ROOF TOP BAR  
SALINA, KANSAS

Project No. 24-3421

---

DATE OF DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

March 7, 2025

OWNER

DRS. CAMERON & JESSICA PETRO-SAKUMA  
PO Box 887, Salina, KS 67402  
808 222 5634 Cameron 501 424 9744 Jessica

ARCHITECT

JONES GILLAM RENZ ARCHITECTS INC  
Maggie Gillam, Project Architect  
730 N. 9<sup>th</sup>, Salina KS 67401  
785 827 0386

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER

ENGINEERING CONSULTANTS P.A.  
Brett Engelland, P.E.  
1227 N. Main St., Hutchinson, KS 67501  
620-665-6394

MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL

LST CONSULTING ENGINEERS, P.A.  
John F. Lewis-Smith, P.E.  
Tim Tredway, P.E.  
4809 Vue Du Lac Place, Ste 201, Manhattan KS 66503  
785 587 8042 Fax 785 587 8039



## Table of Contents

	<u>Page</u>
GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION	A201-2017-1 - 39
SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT	SC-1 - SC-3
LIST OF DRAWINGS	LOD-1
<b><u>Division 1 - General Requirements</u></b>	
Section 01010	General Work Requirements
Section 01019	Special Provisions
Section 01030	Alternates
Section 01220	Unit Prices
Section 01500	Temporary Facilities
<b><u>Division 2 - Site Work</u></b>	
Section 02222	Excavating
Section 02223	Backfilling
Section 02225	Trenching
Section 02281	Termite Control
Section 02411 6	Structure Demolition
<b><u>Division 3 - Concrete</u></b>	
Section 03100	Concrete Formwork
Section 03200	Concrete Reinforcement
Section 03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete
Section 03541 3	Gypsum Cement Underlayment
<b><u>Division 4 - Masonry</u></b>	
Section 04012 0.63	Brick Masonry Repair
Section 04012 0.64	Brick Masonry Repointing
Section 04100	Mortar and Masonry Grout
Section 04300	Unit Masonry
Section 04720 0	Cast Stone Masonry
<b><u>Division 5 - Metals</u></b>	
Section 05120	Structural Steel
Section 05210 0	Steel Joint Framing
Section 05400 0	Cold Formed Metal Framing
Section 05440 0	Cold Formed Metal Trusses
Section 05500	Metal Fabrication
Section 05520	Handrail and Railings
<b><u>Division 6 - Wood and Plastics</u></b>	
Section 06100	Rough Carpentry
Section 06112	Sheathing
Section 06114	Wood Blocking
Section 06200	Finish Carpentry
Section 06410	Custom Casework
<b><u>Division 7 - Thermal and Moisture Protection</u></b>	
Section 07141	Cold-Fluid-Applied Waterproofing
Section 07213	Batt Insulation
Section 074213.23	Aluminum Composite Material
Section 07533	Elastomeric Sheet Roofing Mechanically Attached
Section 07620	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
Section 07760	Hybrid Pedestal System
Section 07900	Joint Sealers
<b><u>Division 8 - Doors and Windows</u></b>	
Section 08111	Standard Steel Doors and Frames
Section 08211	Panel Masonite Doors
Section 08331	Overhead Coiling Doors
Section 08375	Hydraulic Bi-Fold Vertical Doors
Section 08410	Aluminum Entrances, Storefront and Windows
Section 08521 0	Aluminum Windows
Section 08710	Door Hardware
Section 08800	Glazing

**Table of Contents, (Cont'd)****Page****Division 9 – Finishes**

Section 09240 0	Cement Plastering	092400-1 – 092400-5
Section 09241	Gypsum Veneer Plastering	09241-1 – 09241-4
Section 09290 0	Gypsum Board	092900-1 – 092900-4
Section 09306	Floor and Wall Tile	09306-1 – 09306-2
Section 09511 0	Suspended Acoustical Ceiling	095110-1 095110-2
Section 09650	Resilient Flooring	09650-1 – 09650-2
Section 09900	Painting	09900-1 – 09900-5

**Division 10 – Specialties**

Section 10160	Solid Phenolic Toilet Compartments	10160-1 – 10160-2
Section 10431	Signage	10431-1 – 10431-3
Section 10522	Fire Extinguishers, Cabinets, and Accessories	10522-1
Section 10800	Toilet and Bath Accessories	10800-1
Section 10850	Building Specialties	10850-1

**Division 11 - Equipment**

Section 11451	Residential Appliances	11451-1 – 11451-4
---------------	------------------------	-------------------

**Division 12 - Furnishings**

Section 12356	Residential Kitchen & Bath Casework	12356-1 – 12356-5
---------------	-------------------------------------	-------------------

**Division 14 – Conveying Equipment**

Section 142123.16	MRL Electric Traction Pass Elevators	142123.16-1 – 142123.16-13
-------------------	--------------------------------------	----------------------------

**Division 21 – Fire Suppression**

Section 210500	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression	210500-1 - 210500-6
Section 210523	General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping	210523-1 - 210523-5
Section 210553	Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment	210553-1 - 210553-2
Section 211200	Fire Suppression Standpipes	211200-1 – 211200-2
Section 211300	Fire Suppression Sprinklers	211300-1 - 211300-4

**Division 22 - Plumbing**

Section 220501	Plumbing Demolition	220501-1
Section 220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	220553-1 - 220553-2
Section 220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation	220719-1 - 220719-3
Section 221005	Plumbing Piping	221005-1 - 221005-11
Section 221006	Plumbing Piping Specialties	221006-1 - 221006-2
Section 223000	Plumbing Equipment	223000-1 - 223000-3
Section 224000	Plumbing Fixtures	224000-1 - 224000-2

**Division 23 – Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC)**

Section 230001	Mechanical Demolition	230001-1
Section 230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC	230593-1 - 230593-4
Section 230713	Duct Insulation	230713-1 - 230713-3
Section 230719	HVAC Piping Insulation	230719-1 - 230719-2
Section 232100	General Requirements for HVAC Piping	232100-1 – 232100-2
Section 232300	Refrigerant Piping	232300-1 - 232300-4
Section 233100	HVAC Ducts and Casings	233100-1 - 233100-4
Section 233300	Air Duct Accessories	233300-1 - 233300-4
Section 233423	Power Ventilators	233423-1 – 233423-2
Section 233700	Air Outlets and Inlets	233700-1
Section 233813	Commercial-Kitchen Hoods	233813-1 – 233813-3
Section 234000	HVAC Air Cleaning Devices	234000-1 - 234000-2
Section 237413	Packaged Outdoor Central-Station	237413-1 – 237413-3
Section 238127	Mini-Split Heat Pump Systems	238127-1 - 238127-3
Section 238128	Small-Split System Heating & Cooling	238128-1 – 238128-3

**26 - Electrical**

Section 260501	Electrical Demolition	260501-1
Section 260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	260519-1 - 260519-7
Section 260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	260526-1 - 260526-5
Section 260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	260529-1 - 260529-2
Section 260534	Conduit	260534-1 - 260534-8
Section 260537	Boxes	260537-1 - 260537-4
Section 260553	Identification for Electrical Systems	260553-1 - 260553-5

**Table of Contents, (Cont'd)**

	<u>Page</u>
Section 260919 Enclosed Contactors	260919-1 - 260919-2
Section 260923 Lighting Control Devices	260923-1 - 260923-6
Section 262100 Low Voltage Electrical Service Entrance	262100-1 – 262100-2
Section 262200 Low-Voltage Transformers	262200-1 – 262200-4
Section 262416 Panelboards	262416-1 - 262416-6
Section 262717 Equipment Wiring	262717-1 - 262717-2
Section 262726 Wiring Devices	262726-1 - 262726-5
Section 262813 Fuses	262813-1 - 262813-2
Section 262818 Enclosed Switches	262818-1 - 262818-3
Section 264300 Surge Protective Devices	264300-1 – 264300-4
Section 265100 Interior Lighting	265100-1 - 265100-8
Section 265600 Exterior Lighting	265600-1 - 265600-4
 <b><u>Electronic Safety and Security</u></b>	
Section 283100 Fire Detection and Alarm	283100-1 – 283100-6







# AIA® Document A201™ – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

### for the following PROJECT:

*(Name and location or address)*

101 N. Santa Fe Ave  
Rehabilitation and Restoration  
Salina, KS  
JGR Project #24-3421

### THE OWNER:

*(Name, legal status and address)*

Drs. Cameron & Jessica Petro-Sakuma  
PO Box 887, Salina, KS 67402  
808-222-5634 and 501-424-9744

1

### THE ARCHITECT:

*(Name, legal status and address)*

Jones Gillam Renz Architects, Inc.  
Maggie Gillam, Principal  
730 N. Ninth St, Salina, KS  
785-827-0386

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

1	GENERAL PROVISIONS
2	OWNER
3	CONTRACTOR
4	ARCHITECT
5	SUBCONTRACTORS
6	CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
7	CHANGES IN THE WORK
8	TIME
9	PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
10	PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
11	INSURANCE AND BONDS
12	UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
13	MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
14	TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
15	CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

Init.

## INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

### Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

### Access to Work

**3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5,

10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

### Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

### Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

### Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

### Allowances

**3.8**

### Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,

3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

### Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

## ARCHITECT

**4**

Architect, Definition of

**4.1.1**

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2,  
9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1,  
13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2,  
9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1,  
13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16,  
3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5,  
9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

### Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

**5.2**

### Basic Definitions

**1.1**

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5,  
15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

### Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**

### Building Information Models Use and Reliance

**1.8**

Building Permit

3.7.1

### Capitalization

**1.3**

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Init.

/

## **Certificates for Payment**

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
13.4.4

Certificates of Insurance  
9.10.2

## **Change Orders**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

**Change Orders**, Definition of  
**7.2.1**

## **CHANGES IN THE WORK**

2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

**Claims**, Definition of

### **15.1.1**

**Claims**, Notice of  
1.6.2, 15.1.3

## **CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4  
**Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims**  
15.4.1

### **Claims for Additional Cost**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**

### **Claims for Additional Time**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**

### **Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for** **3.7.4**

**Claims for Damages**

3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

**Claims Subject to Arbitration**  
15.4.1

## **Cleaning Up**

**3.15**, 6.3

**Commencement of the Work**, Conditions Relating to  
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**

**Commencement of the Work**, Definition of  
**8.1.2**

## **Communications**

3.9.1, **4.2.4**

**Completion**, Conditions Relating to

3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2

## **COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND** **9**

**Completion**, Substantial

3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

**Compliance with Laws**

2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

**Concealed or Unknown Conditions**

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

**Conditions of the Contract**

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

**Consent**, Written

3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2

## **Consolidation or Joinder**

### **15.4.4**

## **CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

1.1.4, **6**

**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of  
**7.3.1**

### **Construction Change Directives**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1

**Construction Schedules**, Contractor's

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

### **Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

**5.4**, 14.2.2.2

## **Continuing Contract Performance**

### **15.1.4**

**Contract**, Definition of

### **1.1.2**

## **CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE**

5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, **14**

**Contract Administration**

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

**Contract Award and Execution**, Conditions Relating to

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

**Contract Documents**, Copies Furnished and Use of  
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

**Contract Documents**, Definition of

### **1.1.1**

### **Contract Sum**

2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5**, **15.2.5**

**Contract Sum**, Definition of

**9.1**

### **9.1**

**Contract Time**

1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

**Contract Time**, Definition of

### **8.1.1**

## **CONTRACTOR**

### **3**

**Contractor**, Definition of

### **3.1**, **6.1.2**

## **Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Init.

/

Contractor's Employees  
2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

**Contractor's Liability Insurance**  
**11.1**  
Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors  
and Owner's Forces  
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4

Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors  
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7,  
9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4

Contractor's Relationship with the Architect  
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2,  
7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3,  
11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Contractor's Representations  
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2

Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the  
Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8

Contractor's Review of Contract Documents  
3.2

Contractor's Right to Stop the Work  
2.2.2, 9.7

Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract  
14.1

Contractor's Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2,  
9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Contractor's Superintendent  
3.9, 10.2.6

Contractor's Supervision and Construction  
Procedures  
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Coordination and Correlation  
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1

Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications  
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11

Copyrights  
1.5, **3.17**

Correction of Work  
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3,  
15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1

**Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**  
**1.2**

**Cost, Definition of**  
**7.3.4**

Costs  
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3,  
7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2,  
12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14

**Cutting and Patching**  
**3.14**, 6.2.5

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate  
Contractors  
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work  
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damages, Claims for  
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2,  
11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Damages for Delay  
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2

**Date of Commencement of the Work, Definition of**  
**8.1.2**

**Date of Substantial Completion, Definition of**  
**8.1.3**

**Day, Definition of**  
**8.1.4**

Decisions of the Architect  
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4,  
7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2,  
14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2

**Decisions to Withhold Certification**  
9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3

Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance,  
Rejection and Correction of  
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3,  
9.10.4, 12.2.1

Definitions  
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1,  
6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1

**Delays and Extensions of Time**  
**3.2**, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**,  
10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5

**Digital Data Use and Transmission**  
**1.7**

Disputes  
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2

**Documents and Samples at the Site**  
**3.11**

**Drawings, Definition of**  
**1.1.5**

Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of  
3.11

Effective Date of Insurance  
8.2.2

**Emergencies**  
**10.4**, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**

Employees, Contractor's  
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Equipment, Labor, or Materials  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,  
9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Execution and Progress of the Work  
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1,  
3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1,  
9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4

Extensions of Time  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2,  
10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**

**Failure of Payment**  
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Faulty Work  
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)

**Final Completion and Final Payment**  
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Financial Arrangements, Owner's  
2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

**GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**1**

**Governing Law**

**13.1**  
Guarantees (See Warranty)

**Hazardous Materials and Substances**  
10.2.4, **10.3**

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers  
5.2.1

**Indemnification**  
3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

**Information and Services Required of the Owner**  
2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,  
9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,  
14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

**Initial Decision**

**15.2**

**Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**  
1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions  
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority  
14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

**Injury or Damage to Person or Property**  
**10.2.8**, 10.4

Inspections  
3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,  
9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

Instructions to Bidders  
1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor  
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

**Instruments of Service, Definition of**

**1.1.7**

Insurance  
6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, **11**

Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration  
11.1.4, 11.2.3

**Insurance, Contractor's Liability**

**11.1**  
Insurance, Effective Date of  
8.2.2, 14.4.2

**Insurance, Owner's Liability**

**11.2**

**Insurance, Property**  
**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Insurance, Stored Materials  
9.3.2

**INSURANCE AND BONDS**

**11**  
Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy  
9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of  
11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents  
1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

**Interest**

**13.5**

**Interpretation**  
1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written  
4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award  
15.4.2

**Labor and Materials, Equipment**  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,  
10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes  
8.3.1

Laws and Regulations  
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,  
9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,  
15.4

Liens  
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of  
12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability  
3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,  
4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,  
11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1

Limitations of Time  
2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,  
5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,  
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,  
15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5

**Materials, Hazardous**  
**10.2.4**, **10.3**

Materials, Labor, Equipment and  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,  
10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and  
Procedures of Construction  
3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien  
2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

**Mediation**  
8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1,  
15.4.1.1

**Minor Changes in the Work**  
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**

## MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### 13

#### Modifications, Definition of

##### 1.1.1

#### Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2

#### Mutual Responsibility

##### 6.2

#### Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of  
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2

#### Notice

**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1

#### Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### Notice of Claims

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

#### Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.4.1, 13.4.2

#### Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

#### Occupancy

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

#### Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## OWNER

### 2

#### Owner, Definition of

##### 2.1.1

#### Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements

**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

#### Owner, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

#### Owner's Insurance

##### 11.2

#### Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

#### Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

**2.5**, 14.2.2

#### Owner's Right to Clean Up

##### 6.3

#### Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

##### 6.1

#### Owner's Right to Stop the Work

##### 2.4

#### Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

#### Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

#### Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

#### Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, **9.9**

#### Patching, Cutting and

**3.14**, 6.2.5

#### Patents

3.17

#### Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### Payment, Certificates for

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

#### Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

#### Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

#### Payments, Progress

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

## PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### 9

#### Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2  
PCB

10.3.1

#### Performance Bond and Payment Bond

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

#### Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

## PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF

### 10

#### Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

#### Product Data, Definition of

##### 3.12.2

#### Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

#### Progress and Completion

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### Progress Payments

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

Init.

/

**Project, Definition of**  
**1.1.4**  
Project Representatives  
4.2.10  
**Property Insurance**  
10.2.5, **11.2**  
**Proposal Requirements**  
1.1.1  
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**  
**10**  
Regulations and Laws  
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,  
10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4  
Rejection of Work  
4.2.6, 12.2.1  
Releases and Waivers of Liens  
9.3.1, 9.10.2  
Representations  
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1  
Representatives  
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1  
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10  
Retainage  
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
**Review of Contract Documents and Field**  
**Conditions by Contractor**  
**3.2**, 3.12.7, 6.1.3  
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and  
Architect  
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2  
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples  
by Contractor  
3.12  
**Rights and Remedies**  
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,  
6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,  
12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4  
**Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**  
**3.17**  
Rules and Notices for Arbitration  
15.4.1  
**Safety of Persons and Property**  
**10.2**, 10.4  
**Safety Precautions and Programs**  
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4  
**Samples, Definition of**  
**3.12.3**  
**Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and**  
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7  
**Samples at the Site, Documents and**  
**3.11**  
**Schedule of Values**  
**9.2**, 9.3.1  
Schedules, Construction  
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Separate Contracts and Contractors  
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2  
**Separate Contractors, Definition of**  
**6.1.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Definition of**  
**3.12.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**  
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7  
**Site, Use of**  
**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1  
Site Inspections  
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Site Visits, Architect's  
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Special Inspections and Testing  
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4  
**Specifications, Definition of**  
**1.1.6**  
**Specifications**  
1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14  
Statute of Limitations  
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
Stopping the Work  
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1  
Stored Materials  
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4  
**Subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.1**  
**SUBCONTRACTORS**  
**5**  
Subcontractors, Work by  
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2,  
9.6.7  
**Subcontractual Relations**  
**5.3**, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1  
Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8,  
9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Submittal Schedule  
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7  
**Subrogation, Waivers of**  
6.1.1, **11.3**  
**Substances, Hazardous**  
**10.3**  
**Substantial Completion**  
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2,  
15.1.2  
**Substantial Completion, Definition of**  
**9.8.1**  
Substitution of Subcontractors  
5.2.3, 5.2.4  
Substitution of Architect  
2.3.3  
Substitutions of Materials  
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8  
**Sub-subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.2**

Subsurface Conditions

3.7.4

**Successors and Assigns**

**13.2**

**Superintendent**

3.9, 10.2.6

**Supervision and Construction Procedures**

1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Suppliers

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6, 9.10.5, 14.2.1

Surety

5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2, 15.2.7

Surety, Consent of

9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Surveys

1.1.7, 2.3.4

**Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**14.3**

Suspension of the Work

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

Suspension or Termination of the Contract

5.4.1.1, 14

**Taxes**

3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

**Termination by the Contractor**

**14.1**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Cause**

5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**14.4**

Termination of the Architect

2.3.3

Termination of the Contractor Employment

14.2.2

**TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

**14**

**Tests and Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**

**TIME**

**8**

**Time, Delays and Extensions of**

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4

**Time Limits on Claims**

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work

9.3.2, 9.3.3

**UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

**12**

**Uncovering of Work**

**12.1**

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

Unit Prices

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

**Use of Site**

**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

**Values, Schedule of**

**9.2**, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect

13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor

9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Claims by the Owner

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Consequential Damages

14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

**Waivers of Subrogation**

6.1.1, **11.3**

**Warranty**

**3.5**, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2, 15.1.2

Weather Delays

8.3, 15.1.6.2

**Work, Definition of**

**1.1.3**

Written Consent

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1



## ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

#### § 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### § 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### § 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### § 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### § 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### § 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### § 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### § 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### § 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### **§ 1.3 Capitalization**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### **§ 1.4 Interpretation**

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service**

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

### **§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document

G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## **ARTICLE 2 OWNER**

### **§ 2.1 General**

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### **§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### **§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### **§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

### **ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR**

#### **§ 3.1 General**

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

#### **§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### **§ 3.4 Labor and Materials**

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

**§ 3.4.3** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### **§ 3.5 Warranty**

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### **§ 3.6 Taxes**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### **§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### **§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions**

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### **§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### **§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

### **§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and

delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

### **§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely



upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### **§ 3.18 Indemnification**

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## **ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT**

### **§ 4.1 General**

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### **§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract**

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

### **§ 4.2.4 Communications**

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.5** Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

**§ 4.2.6** The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

**§ 4.2.7** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

**§ 4.2.9** The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

**§ 4.2.10** If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

**§ 4.2.12** Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

**§ 4.2.13** The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.14** The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### § 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

**§ 5.4.2** Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

**§ 6.1.3** The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### **§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

**§ 6.2.1** The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

Init.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### **§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up**

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## **ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

### **§ 7.1 General**

**§ 7.1.1** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

**§ 7.1.3** Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### **§ 7.2 Change Orders**

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### **§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives**

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

#### **§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work**

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

### **ARTICLE 8 TIME**

#### **§ 8.1 Definitions**

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

## § 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

## § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### § 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### § 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

### § 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.



**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

#### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

#### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;

- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.5.2** When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 9.5.3** When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

**§ 9.5.4** If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

### **§ 9.6 Progress Payments**

**§ 9.6.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

**§ 9.6.2** The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

**§ 9.6.3** The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**§ 9.6.4** The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

**§ 9.6.5** The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

**§ 9.6.6** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.6.7** Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

**§ 9.6.8** Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

### **§ 9.7 Failure of Payment**

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.8 Substantial Completion**

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### § 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

### ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

#### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

#### § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

Init.

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will

promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

#### **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

### **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or

expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

## **§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## **§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

#### **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

#### **§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

### **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

#### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

#### **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

##### **§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

##### **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during



that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### **§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **§ 13.1 Governing Law**

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### **§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns**

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### **§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies**

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

## **§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections**

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## **§ 13.5 Interest**

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## **ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor**

**§ 14.1.1** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

**§ 14.1.2** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

**§ 14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

**§ 14.1.4** If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

#### **§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 14.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.2.2** When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

**§ 14.2.3** When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

**§ 14.2.4** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;

- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

## **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

### **§ 15.1 Claims**

#### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### **§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### **§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost**

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### **§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

#### **§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

**§ 15.2.6.1** Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.2.7** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.8** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

### **§ 15.3 Mediation**

**§ 15.3.1** Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.3.2** The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

**§ 15.3.3** Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.3.4** The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

### **§ 15.4 Arbitration**

**§ 15.4.1** If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

**§ 15.4.1.1** A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

**§ 15.4.2** The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.





SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS OF AIA DOCUMENT A201-2017  
*General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, Project Manual*

1. DEFINITIONS - Supplement Paragraph 1.1 as follows:
  - a. When words such as approved, proper, satisfactory, equal, and as directed are used, they imply such reference to the Architect's specific approval and directions.
  - b. Provide means to furnish and install.
  - c. The provisions of the Agreement take precedence over all other Contract Documents.
  
2. WARRANTY - Supplement Paragraph 3.5 as follows:
  - a. Contractor warrants to Owner and Architect that on receipt of notice from either of them, within the period of one (1) year following date of Substantial Completion, that defects in materials and/or workmanship have appeared in the Work, Contractor will promptly correct such defects to the state of condition originally required by the Contract Documents at Contractor's expense.
  
3. SHOP DRAWINGS - Supplement Paragraph 3.12 as follows:
  - a. The Contractor is encouraged to submit electronic copies of all Shop or Setting Drawings and Schedules required for the work of the various trades, after same have been checked and compared with the Contract Document Requirements, and after checking with field conditions at the job and so certified on the Drawings by the Contractor. Above Drawings will not be checked by Architect unless same bear certification.
  - b. electronic submittals shall be organized into a single document for each section being submitted and shall be labeled by the specification section number. Submittals that are not organized or that include multiple files may be rejected.
  - c. Architect's approval is subject to notations on Drawings, Compliance with Drawings and Specifications, and conditions and measurements at project. Measurements and quantity not checked or approved.
  
4. SAMPLES - Supplement Subparagraph 3.12.3 as follows:
  - a. All samples as called for in the various Sections of this Specification and any other samples, as directed, shall be furnished by the Contractor for approval.
  - b. All samples of materials that require approval as to color, texture, finish and type shall be furnished at the same time, so that an intelligent selection of colors and textures may be made by the Architect.
  
5. COLOR SELECTIONS
  - a. The Contractor shall provide for and coordinate into the project construction schedule, a 6-week time frame for the Architect/Designer to make final color selections from Contractor's submittals, obtain approval from the Owner and to submit a color schedule, indicating what colors go where, to the Contractor. Time frame begins when Architect has received 100% of submittals listed below.
  - b. Submittals, i.e., actual samples, manufacturers' literature, full color line options, etc., shall include as a minimum, but not limited to:
    - Plaster texture/color
    - Floor and Wall Tile
    - Wood Flooring
    - Resilient Flooring
    - Carpet
    - Cabinet and Countertop
  
6. CLEAN UP - Supplement Paragraph 3.15 as follows:
  - a. Each Contractor shall, at all times, remove any and all of his rubbish from the buildings and grounds and keep the building site clean.
  
  - b. In addition to the general broom cleaning, the General Contractor shall do the following special cleaning for all trades at the completion of the work:
    - 1) Glass. Remove putty, stains and paint from all glass and wash and polish same. Care shall be taken not to scratch the glass.
    - 2) Painted, Decorated, and Stained Work. Remove all marks, stains, fingerprints and other soil or dirt from all painted, decorated and stained work.
    - 3) Temporary Protection. Remove all temporary protections; clean and polish all floors at completion.
    - 4) Woodwork. Clean and polish all woodwork upon completion.
    - 5) Hardware. Clean and polish all hardware for all trades. This shall include removal of all stains, dust, dirt, paint, etc., upon completion.
    - 6) Tile Work. Remove all spots, soil, and paint from all tile work, wash same upon completion.

- 7) Fixtures and Equipment. Clean all fixtures and equipment, removing all stains, paint, dirt and dust.
- c. All combustible rubbish, and all debris and other rubbish shall be removed entirely from the premises.
7. MUTUAL RESPONSIBILITY OF CONTRACTORS - Supplement Paragraph 6.2 as follows:
- a. General Contractor shall assume general coordination and direction of the project. General Contractor shall cooperate with Mechanical and Electrical Contractors and other subcontractors and/or suppliers on the Work and install their work in sequence to facilitate and not delay the completion of the project. The Architect is not the coordinator or expeditor of the work of the contractors and/or subcontractors referred to hereinbefore.
8. CHANGES IN THE WORK  
Refer to Paragraph 7.2 and insert the following:
- a. Whenever a Change Order involves net cost decrease, the CREDIT to the Owner shall be such net cost decrease. Whenever a Change Order involves a summary net increase, the Contract shall be increased by the amount of such net cost increase plus a percentage of such net cost for overhead and profit as indicated on the Bid Form. The General Contractor will furnish supervision and coordination for a percentage as noted on the Bid Form, of the cost of additional Mechanical and Electrical work ordered by the Owner.
- b. The Contractor shall furnish the Owner an itemized accounting with supporting data used in computing the value of any change that might be ordered.
- c. Change Orders must state a number of added days or days to be deleted from completion time. If no change in days is required by the change order, write NONE. Failure to comply with above voids any later request for extra time.
9. APPLICATION FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS AND CERTIFICATION FOR PAYMENT
- a. Amend Subparagraph 9.3.1 and insert the following: On or before the 25th day of each month, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment supported by such data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment as the Owner or Architect may require.
- b. Amend Subparagraph 9.4.1 and insert: If the Contractor has made application for payment as above, the Architect will, with reasonable promptness and within seven (7) days after receipt of the application, issue an application for payment to the Owner, with a copy to the Contractor in the amount of 90% of the value of the Contract the Architect determines has been completed to the date of application, thus a 10% retainage, less any amount paid to the Contractor, or state in writing his reason for withholding an application as provided in Subparagraph 9.5.1.
- c. Date of payment of the Application for Payment by the Owner is hereby defined as the earliest possible date that the Owner can prepare vouchers after receipt of Application for Payment from the Architect and approval of same by any governing body of the Owner and issuance of vouchers to cover Application for Payment.
10. PROPERTY INSURANCE MARINE ALL RISK SPECIAL BUILDERS RISK AND TRANSIT FORM  
Refer to Paragraph 11.3.1 Property Insurance and insert the following:
- a. Until the Work is completed and accepted by the Owner, **the Owner shall effect and maintain total Property Insurance (Marine All Risk Special Builders Risk and Transit Form)** upon the Work at the site to 100% of the insurable value thereof (plus 8% of this insured value for Architect's Fee in connection with any loss covered by this insurance) including items of labor and materials connected therewith in or adjacent to the structure insured, materials in place or to be used as a part of the permanent construction, including surplus materials, shanties, protective fences, bridges or temporary structures, miscellaneous materials and supplies incidental to the Work, and such scaffoldings, stagings, towers, forms and equipment as are not owned or rented by the Contractor, the cost of which is included in the cost of the work. EXCLUSIONS: This insurance does not cover any tools owned by mechanics; any tools, equipment, scaffoldings, stagings, towers and forms owned or rented by the Contractor; the capital value of which is not included in the cost of the work, nor loss of equipment, materials, tools, etc., by theft. **Contractor shall not commence construction prior to receipt of policy copy from Owner.**
- b. This insurance shall include the interest of the Owner, the Contractor, Subcontractor, and Sub-Subcontractor in the Work.
11. CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE
- a. Workers' Compensation and Employers Liability Insurance - Refer to Subparagraph 11.1.1.
- b. Bodily Injury and Property Damage - Refer to Subparagraph 11.1.2. Limits shall be as follows:
- (1) Limits of liability coverage shall be \$2,000,000.00 Combined Single Limit for Bodily Injury and Property Damage.

12. PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS - Supplement Subparagraph 11.3.1.1 as follows:
  - a. Bond shall be equivalent to AIA Form A312-2010, incorporates two bonds – one covering the contractor’s performance, and the other covering the contractor’s obligations to pay subcontractors and other for s for material and labor. AIA document A312-2010 obligates the surety to act responsively to the owner’s requests for discussion aimed at anticipating or preventing a contractor’s default. Performance Bond and Labor and Materials Bond with amount shown on each part equal to 100% of the total amount payable by the terms of the Contract. Surety shall be company licensed to do business at the place of building and shall be acceptable to the Owner.
13. TESTS AND INSPECTIONS – The contractor shall bear all costs associated with testing and inspections where required by the construction documents, the City of Salina, or by standard construction practices.

END OF SECTION



## List of Drawings

### General

	Cover	ANSI1	ICC A117.1-2009 Diagrams
CFP1	Code Footprint	ANSI2	ICC A117.1-2009 Diagrams
CFP2	Code Footprint	ANSI3	ICC A117.1-2009 Diagrams
ADA	ADA Diagrams		

### Demolition

D2.0	Demolition – Basement Plan	D3.1	Demolition Elevations	
D2.1	Demolition – First Floor & Mezzanine Floor Plans	D3.2	Demolition Elevations & Building Sections	
D2.2	Demolition – Second Floor Plan			Photograph

### Architectural

A2.0	Basement Plan	A6.2	Stair Section
A2.1	First Floor Plan	A6.3	Stair Section
A2.2	Mezzanine Floor Plan	A6.4	Stair Section
A2.3	Second Floor Plan	A7.1	Reflected Ceiling Plans
A2.4	Roof Top Deck Plan	A8.1	Enlarged Restroom Plans & Interior Elevations
A3.1	Elevations	A8.2	Enlarged Restroom Plans & Interior Elevations
A3.2	Elevations	A8.3	Apartment Enlarged Bath Plans & Interior Elevations
A3.3	Building Sections	A8.4	Apartment Enlarged Bath Plans & Interior Elevations
A3.4	Building Sections	A8.5	Apartment sections & Details
A4.1	Rooftop Wall Sections	A9.1	Interior Elevations
A4.2	Rooftop Wall Sections	A9.2	Casework Elevations
A4.3	Wall Sections	A9.3	Casework Elevations
A4.4	Laminators Inc Panel System	A9.4	Casework Sections
A4.5	Tile Tech Pedestal System	A9.5	Apartment Casework Elevations
A4.6	Nichiha Fiber cement Wall Panels	A10.0	Floor Finish Plans
A4.7	Hardie Reveal Panel System	A10.1	Finish Schedules
A5.1	Roof Plan	A10.2	Door & Window Schedules
A6.0	Stair & Elevator Enlarged Plans	A10.3	Door Details
A6.1	Elevator Sections		

### Structural

S0.0	Structural Specifications	S1.6	Penthouse Roof Framing Plan
S0.1	Schedule of Special Inspections	S2.0	Building Section B1
S1.0	Basement Plan	S2.1	Building Section B2 & B3
S1.1	First Floor Plan	S3.0	Structural Details
S1.2	Mezzanine Plan	S3.1	Structural Details
S1.3	Second Floor Framing Plan	S3.2	Structural Details
S1.4	Roof Framing Plan	S3.3	Structural Details
S1.5	Penthouse Floor Framing Plan	S4.0	Structural Details & Column Schedule

### Mechanical

M0.1	Mechanical Legends	P1.2	Waste & Vent First Floor Plan
M1.1	HVAC Basement Plan	P1.3	Waste & Vent Mezzanine Plan
M1.2	HVAC First Floor Plan	P1.4	Waste & Vent Second Floor Plan
M1.3	HVAC Mezzanine Floor Plan	P1.5	Waste & Vent Roof Plan
M1.4	HVAC Second Floor Plan	P1.6	Domestic Water Basement Plan
M1.5	HVAC Roof Plan	P1.7	Domestic Water First Floor Plan
M5.1	Manufacturer Details	P1.8	Domestic Water Mezzanine Plan
M5.2	Manufacturer Details	P1.9	Domestic Water Second Floor Plan
M6.1	Schedules	P1.10	Domestic Water Roof Plan
M6.2	Details	P6.1	Schedules & Details
P0.1	Plumbing Legend	P6.2	Waste & Vent Riser Diagram
P1.1	Waste & Vent Basement Plan		

### Electrical

E0.1	Electrical Legend	E1.10	Power Roof Plan
E1.1	Lighting Basement Plan	E1.11	Special System Basement Plan
E1.2	Lighting First Floor Plan	E1.12	Special System First Floor Plan
E1.3	Lighting Mezzanine Plan	E1.13	Special System Mezzanine Plan
E1.4	Lighting Second Floor Plan	E1.14	Special System Second Floor Plan
E1.5	Lighting Roof Plan	E1.15	Special System Roof Plan
E1.6	Power Basement Plan	E6.1	Schedule & Power Service Riser Diagram
E1.7	Power First Floor Plan	E6.2	Panel Schedules
E1.8	Power Mezzanine Plan	E6.3	Panel Schedules
E1.9	Power Second Floor Plan		

### Food Service

FS1	Food Service Equipment Plans
FS2	Food Service Utility Connection Plans



## SECTION 01010

### GENERAL WORK REQUIREMENTS

1. **GENERAL**  
Should conflict occur between these General Work Requirements and the General Conditions, the requirements of this Section take precedence.
2. **INTENT OF DOCUMENTS**  
The Contract Drawings are complementary and what is called for by anyone shall be as binding as if called by all. The intention of the documents is to include all labor and materials, equipment and transportation necessary for the proper execution of the work.
3. **MANUFACTURERS' DIRECTIONS**  
All manufactured articles, materials and equipment shall be applied, installed, connected, erected, used, cleaned and conditioned as directed by the manufacturers, unless herein specified to the contrary.
4. **COOPERATION - CONTRACTOR WITH OWNER**  
It shall be clearly understood that the Owner reserves the right to install various equipment in the building prior to completion and acceptance, and it shall be the duty of the Contractor to cooperate with the Owner's employees rendering such assistance and so arranging his work that the entire project will be delivered complete in the best possible condition when required.
5. **BUILDING PERMIT**  
As stated in Subparagraph 4.7.1, AIA DOCUMENT A201, General Conditions, the General Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit.
6. **CONSTRUCTION COORDINATION**  
Before starting construction, a meeting shall be held with Contractor(s), Architect, and Consulting Engineers in attendance to plan and coordinate the schedule of construction and to review intent of Contract Documents. Contractor(s) shall follow instructions received at meeting in prosecuting the Work.
7. **MATERIALS - EQUIPMENT - SUBSTITUTION**
  - a. In general, these Specifications identify the required materials and equipment by naming one or more manufacturers, brand, model, catalog number, and/or other identification; the first-named manufacturer's product used as a basis for design; the other named brands considered equivalent. Equivalent brand manufacturers named must furnish products consistent with the Specifications for the first-named product, as determined by the Architect. Base Bid shall include only those brands named and must be used on the project, except as hereinafter provided.
  - b. Materials or equipment specified exclusively, Base Bid shall be based on same and used on project, except as hereinafter provided.
  - c. Prior to receipt of bids, should Contractor wish to incorporate in Base Bid, brands or products other than those named in the Specifications, he shall submit written request for substitution to Architect not later than seven (7) days prior to date bids are due. Architect will consider request and items approved will be listed in an addendum issued to all bidders.
  - d. After execution of Contract, substitution of product brands for those named in the Specifications will be considered, only if request is received within thirty (30) days after Contract Date and request includes showing credit due Owner.
  - e. Materials specified equivalent and those proposed for substitution must be equal or better than first-named material in construction, efficiency, utility, aesthetic design, physical size shall not be larger than space provided for it. Request for substitution by full description and technical data in two (2) copies, including manufacturer's name, model, catalog number, photographs or cuts, physical dimensions, operating characteristics, and any other information for comparison.
  - f. Owner reserves the right:
    - 1) To require any or all bidders, before execution of Contract, to state what materials they will use.
    - 2) To require "if bound with the Bid Form," the Contractor to fill out a BID SUPPLEMENT listing the BASE BID and "ADD" or "DEDUCT" for other materials he proposes to use.

8. APPROVAL OF SUBCONTRACTORS - MATERIALS
- a. The Contractor, if requested, must submit for approval before signing Agreement, list of Subcontractors and material suppliers enumerating items of work to be performed, name of materials, equipment, etc., to be furnished and/or installed. Refer to Paragraph - MATERIALS - EQUIPMENT - SUBSTITUTION.
  - b. If the list is not requested prior to signing of Agreement, list, as described in previous paragraph, shall be furnished within ten (10) days of signing Agreement.
9. PROTECTION - Supplement, ARTICLE 10, AIA GENERAL CONDITIONS
- a. Refer to Paragraph - WEATHER CONDITIONS.
  - b. Each Contractor shall assume responsibility for his materials stored on the premises.
  - c. General Contractor shall take charge and assume general responsibility for proper protection of project during construction.
  - d. The General Contractor shall protect trees, shrubs, lawns and all landscape from damage, providing guards and covering. Damaged work shall be repaired or replaced at his expense. Protect streets and sidewalks and make repairs at his expense.
    - 1) Water Protection. The General Contractor shall, at all times, protect the excavation, trenches, and/or the building from damage by rain water, spring water, ground water, backing up of drains or sewers and all other water. He shall provide all pumps and equipment and enclosures to provide this protection.
    - 2) Temporary Drainage. The General Contractor shall construct and maintain all necessary temporary drainage and do all pumping necessary to keep the excavation free of water.
    - 3) Snow and Ice. The General Contractor shall remove all snow and ice from public sidewalks and from the building, as may be required for the proper protection and/or prosecution of the Work.
    - 4) Bracing, Shoring, and Sheeting. The General Contractor shall provide all shoring, bracing and sheeting as required for safety and for the proper execution of the work and have same removed when the work is completed.
    - 5) Guard Lights. The General Contractor shall provide and maintain guard lights at all barricades, railings, obstructions in the streets, roads or sidewalks and at all trenches or pits adjacent to public walks or roads.
    - 6) Weather Conditions. The General Contractor shall, at all times, provide protection against weather; rain, winds, storms, frost, or heat, so as to maintain all work, materials, apparatus, and fixtures, free from injury or damage. At the end of the day's work, all new work likely to be damaged shall be covered.
10. WEATHER CONDITIONS
- The Contractor shall protect all portions of his work and all materials, at all times from damage by water, freezing, frost and is to repair, replace and make good to the satisfaction of the Architect, any portion of same which may in the Architect's opinion, have been damaged by the elements.
11. GRADES, LINES, LEVELS, AND SURVEYS
- The Owner will establish the lot lines, restrictions and a bench mark. All other grades, lines, levels, and bench marks shall be established and maintained by the General Contractor, who shall be responsible for same. The General Contractor shall verify all grades, lines, levels, and dimensions as shown on the Drawings and he shall report all errors or inconsistencies in the above to the Architect before commencing work.
- a. The General Contractor shall provide and maintain well-built batter boards at all corners. He shall establish bench marks in not less than two (2) widely separated places. As the work progresses, he shall establish bench marks at each floor, giving exact levels of the various floors.
  - b. As the work progresses, the General Contractor shall lay out in the forms and the rough flooring the exact location of all partitions as a guide to all trades.
  - c. The General Contractor shall verify all grades, lines, levels, and dimensions as shown on the Drawings and he shall report any errors or inconsistencies in the above to the Architect before commencing work.



12. USE OF COMPLETED PORTIONS

The Owner reserves the right to take possession of and use any completed or partially completed portions of the building, and further reserves the right to install equipment and facilities which are not a part of the Contract, notwithstanding the fact that the time of completion of entire work or portions thereof may not have expired; but such taking possession or installation of facilities shall not be deemed an acceptance of any work not completed in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner, in taking possession of completed portions or installing such equipment, and facilities, shall do so at his own expense any damage which may occur either directly or indirectly by reason of such action.

- a. Building Completion-Occupancy. Owner reserves the right to occupy building when the time for completion of work as stipulated in Contract has been reached, even though all parts of the work have not been completed and accepted by Owner. All work, including heating, electrical, and water service, will be discontinued only to Owner schedule.
- b. Limit of Contract is not confined to any particular area of the site, but includes any area required to perform work shown on the Drawings and/or specified in these Specifications.

13. REQUIREMENTS IMMEDIATELY AFTER EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

Immediately after execution of the Contract, the Contractor shall deliver to the Architect the following items which are described more fully in following Articles:

Schedule of Values  
Schedule of Operations  
Progress Charts  
Samples  
Superintendent's name and resume of experience  
List of Subcontractors and Material Suppliers

- a. Schedule of Values on AIA Form G702, or other form approved by the Architect, a detailed breakdown of the Contract Sum indicating the amounts allotted to the various divisions of the work for labor and material. The schedule will serve as a guide to the Architect in determining the amounts due each month as the work progresses. The schedule shall be broken down as directed by the Architect.
- b. Schedule of Operations based on the above Schedule of Values and indicating the progress of the work up to the first day of each month shall be prepared by the Contractor in a form approved by the Architect and shall be delivered to the Architect in duplicate with each application for payment.
- c. Progress Charts based on the above specified schedule of operations and indicating the progress of the work up to the first day of each month shall be prepared by the Contractor in a form approved by the Architect and shall be delivered to the Architect in duplicate with each application for payment. Progress charts shall be in the form of a bar graph. Along with progress charts the Contractor shall provide an estimated monthly cash flow chart.

14. CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURE

- a. Each Contractor shall schedule his work so as to cause a minimum of interference with business operations during all of the construction work.
- b. In-Use Areas. Construction work within areas immediately adjacent to existing in-use areas shall be coordinated with the Owner, so that work is accomplished during periods of light occupancy of the areas and cause the least disturbance. Work shall be executed by methods that will create the least amount of noise. Work shall be prefabricated when practical to do so. New facilities shall be ready for use prior to disturbing existing areas.
- c. Precautions and Cooperation
  - 1) Notify the Owner 7 days in advance before any utility (natural gas, water, electricity, or sewer) is to be interrupted.
  - 2) With proper notification, interruption in utilities up to 4 hours will be permitted without special provisions by the Contractor. \*If any interruption of a utility exceeds 4 hours the Contractor must make arrangements for temporary alternate utility service.
  - 3) Interruption of utilities must be coordinated with the Owner with changeovers and out of service at night. Weekend and evening changeovers of utilities shall occur with no additional cost to the Owner.

15. TIME EXTENSIONS ADVERSE WEATHER

- a. The Contractor shall comply with all provisions of the General Conditions in submitting any request for extension of Contract Time due to unusually severe weather.
- b. Definitions:
  - 1. Adverse Weather - Atmospheric conditions at a definite time and place which are unfavorable to construction activities.
  - 2. Unusually Severe Weather - Weather which is more severe than the adverse weather anticipated for the season, location, or activity involved.
- c. In order for any request of time extension due to unusually severe weather to be valid, the Contractor must document both of the following conditions.
  - 1. The weather experienced at the project site during the Contract period is more severe than the adverse weather anticipated for the project location during any given month.
  - 2. The unusually severe weather actually caused a delay to the completion of the project. The delay must be beyond the control and without fault or negligence by the Contractor.
- d. The following schedule of monthly anticipated adverse weather delays will constitute the baseline for monthly weather time evaluations. The Contractor's Progress Schedule must reflect these anticipated adverse weather delays in all weather affected activities:  
MONTHLY ANTICIPATED ADVERSE WEATHER DELAY WORK DAYS BASED ON FIVE (5) DAY WORK WEEK

<u>JAN</u>	<u>FEB</u>	<u>MAR</u>	<u>APR</u>	<u>MAY</u>	<u>JUN</u>	<u>JUL</u>	<u>AUG</u>	<u>SEP</u>	<u>OCT</u>	<u>NOV</u>	<u>DEC</u>
10	8	7	6	7	7	5	5	5	4	5	9

END OF SECTION 01010

SECTION 01019

SPECIAL PROVISIONS

1. GENERAL

Should conflict occur between these Special Provisions and the General Conditions, the requirements of the Special Provisions shall take precedence.

2. TIME OF CONSTRUCTION – PENALTY CLAUSE

- a. Time of Construction – Construction commencement date shall be as specified in the AIA Document A133 – Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Construction Manager as Constructor. The Contractor may commence bidding and project preparation upon the receipt of the Final Bid set of drawings and specifications and once the Architect has given the Contractor written notice to proceed to the satisfaction of the Owner. The time for completion shall be as specified in the AIA Document A133 – Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Construction Manager as Constructor. This deadline may be extended for the period of any reasonable delay which is due exclusively to causes beyond the control and without the fault of the Contractor, including acts of God, fires, floods, and direction by the Architect. It is impractical to perform any operation of construction and acts of omissions of the Owner with respect to matters for which Owner is solely responsible; provided, however, that no such extension of time for completion shall be granted the Contractor, unless within ten (10) days after the happening of any event relied upon by the Contractor for such extension of time, the Contractor shall have made a request, therefore, in writing to the Architect. Extended time will be submitted with pay request for Owner’s approval.
- b. Penalty Clause - The time of completion of the construction of the project is of the essence of this Contract. Should the Contractor neglect, refuse, or fail to complete the project (100%) within the time herein agreed upon, after giving effect to extensions of time, if any, herein provided; the Owner shall have the right to deduct from and retain out of such money, which may then be due or which may become due and payable to the Contractor, the sum of TWO HUNDRED DOLLARS (\$200.00) per day for each and every day that such construction is delayed in its completion beyond the specified time. If the amount due and to become due from the Contractor to the Owner is insufficient to pay in full any such penalties, the Contractor shall pay to the Owner the amount necessary to effect such payment in full; provided, however, that the Owner shall promptly notify the Contractor in writing of the manner in which the amount retained, deducted or claimed. No award is given to the Contractor for early completion.
- c. Joint Responsibility - The General Contractor and/or Subcontractors causing the delay in completion of the project shall be responsible for payment of the penalty. In no case shall the total penalty for all contracts exceed the sum of daily penalty multiplied by the number of days of delay in completion.

3. WORK SEQUENCE, SCHEDULE FOR COMPLETION AND LIQUIDATED DAMAGES

- a. Schedule requirements for each area will be negotiated between the owner and the contractor. Reference the AIA Document A133 – Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Construction Manager as Constructor.

<b>Work</b>	<b>Available Start</b>	<b>Substantial Completion</b>	<b>Liquidated Damages</b>
Addition and Renovation	TBD	TBD	\$200/Calendar Day

- b. Schedule requirements for final completion – 14 days following substantial completion with liquidated damages equivalent to those identified for substantial completion.

4. ALTERNATES - Refer to Alternate Schedule, Section 01030

- a. Alternates specified are not a part of Base Bid, but are Alternates to same, their acceptance being at option of Owner.

5. CASH ALLOWANCES

- a. Costs included in Allowances: Cost of Product to Contractor or Subcontractor, less applicable trade discounts, delivery to site, except those taxes saved by use of Owner's tax exemption.
- b. Costs Not Included in the Allowance: Fees for overhead and profit, product handling at the site, including unloading, uncrating, and storage; protection of Products from elements and from damage and labor for installation and finishing.

- c. Architect Responsibilities:
    - 1. Consult with Contractor in consideration and selection of Products, suppliers and installers.
    - 2. Select Products in consultation with Owner and transmit decision to Contractor.
    - 3. Prepare Proposal Requests and Change Orders.
  - d. Contractor Responsibilities:
    - 1. Assist Architect/Engineer in selection of Products, suppliers and installers.
    - 2. Obtain proposals from suppliers and installers and offer recommendations.
    - 3. On notification of selection by Architect, execute purchase agreement with designated supplier and installer.
    - 4. Arrange for and process shop drawings, product data, and samples. Arrange for delivery.
    - 5. Promptly inspect Products upon delivery for completeness, damage, and defects. Submit claims for transportation damage.
    - 6. Product handling at the site, including unloading, uncrating and storage, protection of Products from elements and from damage and labor for installation and finishing.
    - 7. The Contractor shall include in his Bid all fees for all cash allowances.
  - e. Funds will be drawn from Cash Allowances only by written authorization from Owner.
  - f. Cash Allowances:
    - 1. Inspection and Testing Allowance – The contractor shall include in his bid, an allowance of **\$20,000.00** for direct cost of testing by the approved testing companies. The contractor shall bear all costs associated with coordination, administration scheduling, and supervision of testing companies, and include those costs in his bid.
    - 2. Section 08710 Door Hardware, **Amount \$30,000** (or as specified by owner.)
    - 3. Section 10431 Signage, **Amount \$15,000.00** (or as specified by owner.)
    - 4. New supports, platforms, structural needs and modification to accommodate new roof-top mechanical equipment – **Amount \$25,000.00** (or as specified by owner.)
    - 5. Contingency Allowance – In addition to the specification sections listed above, contractor is encouraged to include a contingency allowance equal to **1%** (or as specified by owner) of the general bid and contract amount to be included in the contractor's base bid. This allowance shall be used at the sole discretion of the Architect and/or Owner specifically for hidden conditions discovered in the field or on site, the addition of labor, parts, and/or materials required for timely completion in conjunction with the general scope of work.
6. **ENUMERATION OF DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS**
- a. Correlation. Accompanying these Specifications are the Drawings, which jointly with these Specifications, are intended to explain each other and describe and coordinate the work to be performed under the Contract.
  - b. Verification of Documents. Before submitting his bid, each Bidder shall check his set(s) of Drawings and Specifications and advise the Architect if any sheets are missing.
  - c. Specifications Explanations. For convenience of reference, the Specifications are separated into Titled Divisions and Sections. Such separation shall not, however, operate to make the Architect an arbiter to establish limits between the Contractor and Subcontractor or Sub-Subcontractor.
  - d. Drawings. Refer to LIST OF DRAWINGS.
  - e. Specifications. Refer to TABLE OF CONTENTS.
7. **WARRANTIES**  
Before being eligible for final payment, Contractor shall deliver to Owner, through Architect, all special warranties specified for materials, equipment, and installation.
8. **OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS**  
Before being eligible for final payment, Contractor shall deliver to Owner, through Architect, three (3) copies of manufacturer's operating and maintenance instructions, and one (1) CD/DVD containing complete set or manufacturers operating instructions, a complete set of shop drawings on each piece of equipment. Electronic files shall be in PDF format with files organized into single documents for Architectural, Mechanical, and Electrical divisions.
9. **AS-BUILT DRAWINGS**  
Before being eligible for final payment, the Electrical and Mechanical Contractors shall prepare and deliver to Owner, through Architect, One (1) CD/DVD containing AS-BUILT DRAWINGS in PDF format. These drawings shall consist of marked-up prints, and shall show the correct location of every item of equipment, piping, conduit, panel boards, ductwork, switches, valves, etc. If marked-up prints are used, and scanned, they shall be new white prints without miscellaneous markings. All markings shall be clearly legible and identified.

10. **CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE**  
Upon completion of project, Contractor is to furnish written Certification to the Architect that he has complied with every paragraph of the Specifications and Drawings.
11. **CONTRACTOR'S AFFIDAVIT OF RELEASE OF LIENS**  
Upon completion of project, Contractor shall submit to Owner a signed Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens prior to final payment.
12. **CONTRACTOR'S MONTHLY APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT FORM**  
Contractor's monthly Application for Payment shall be submitted as per General Conditions. AIA Document G702, Application and Certificate for Payment is approved and acceptable.
13. **FILING AND RECORDING OF BONDS**  
In addition to furnishing the number of combination Performance Bond and Labor and Materials Payment Bond, and Statutory Bond, if required, the Contractor shall file copies of such bonds with Clerk of the District Court and furnish Architect with receipt furnished by Clerk of the District Court, covering charges for filing and recording of said bonds.
14. **STATUTORY BONDS**  
In addition to furnishing the combination Performance and Labor and Materials Payment Bond specified in General Conditions, the Contractor shall furnish Statutory Bond in an amount not less than 100% of the Agreement in such numbers and form stated in Sample Copy bound in the Specifications. Statutory Bond shall be filed and recorded with Clerk of the District Court, as specified in Paragraph - FILING AND RECORDING OF BONDS.
15. **DOCUMENTS FURNISHED CONTRACTORS**  
The General Contractor will be furnished, free of charge, the following working drawings and specifications, including modifications for construction of the project - 20 sets. The General Contractor will be responsible for distribution of these sets to the Subcontractors and suppliers. The Contractor shall pay the actual cost of reproduction and postage for all additional sets requested by him.
16. **TESTING AND INSPECTIONS**
  - a. The General Contractor shall be responsible for coordination and scheduling of all inspections and testing as required by the Contract documents. The Contractor shall include a testing and inspection allowance in his bid as described in paragraph 5.f.3 of this section. The Contractor shall pay all costs associated with testing and all direct costs from the testing/inspection company and shall be deducted from the testing and inspection allowance. Re-testing/inspection costs associated with incorrect or defective work shall be paid by the Contractor and such costs are not to be deducted from the allowance.
  - b. All sampling and testing procedures shall be performed by the inspection company responsible for inspection and testing.
17. **SALES TAX EXEMPTIONS**
  - a. Materials and equipment incorporated into this project **are not exempt** from the payment of sales tax under the laws of the State of Kansas and such sales tax shall be included in the Bid of the Bidder.

END OF SECTION 01019



## SECTION 01030

### ALTERNATES

#### PART 1 – GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

##### 1.3 GENERAL

1. The General Contractor shall state in his Bid Form the amount of dollars to be ADDED or DEDUCTED from his Base Bid for the following Alternates.
2. Alternates are not in order of acceptance.
3. It shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor to advise all necessary personnel and suppliers as to the nature and extent of all alternates selected by the owner.
4. Circle Add or Deduct to indicate that the alternate price is to be added or subtracted from the base bid.

##### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the Bidding Requirements that may be added to or deducted from the Base Bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  1. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

##### 1.5 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to alternates.
- C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- D. Schedule: A Schedule of Alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- 1. ALTERNATE NO. 1  
As described by Addendum.

Add/Deduct \$ \_\_\_\_\_

- 2. ALTERNATE NO. 2  
As Described by Addendum

Add/Deduct \$ \_\_\_\_\_

END OF SECTION 01030



## SECTION 012200

### UNIT PRICES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related requirements:
  - 1. Section 012100 “Allowances” for procedures for using unit prices to adjust quantity allowances.

##### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- 1. Unit price is an amount incorporated into the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the work, added to or deducted from the contract sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of work or estimated quantities of work required by the Contract Document are increased or decreased.

##### 1.3 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor’s measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at the Owner’s expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections references in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

#### PART 2 – PRODUCTS (not used)

#### PART 3 – EXECUTION

##### 3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES

- A. Unit Price No. 1: included in the **BASE BID: Brick Masonry Repair and Replacement Brick**
  - 1. Description: Repairing brick masonry and replacing units at both the interior and exterior of the building. Reference Section 040120 – Brick Masonry Repair.
  - 2. Unit of Measurement: **Contractor to provide a price per 100 Bricks.**
- B. Unit Price No. 2: included in the **BASE BID: Brick & Masonry Repointing**
  - 1. Description: Repointing existing brick and stone masonry at both the exterior and interior of the building. Reference Section 040120 – Brick & Masonry Repointing
  - 2. Unit of Measurement: **Contractor to provide a price per 100 s.f.**
- C. Unit Price No. 3: included in the **BASE BID: Cement Plaster Repair**
  - 1. Description: Existing plaster repair at the walls and ceilings in the historic office area of the building. Reference Section 092400 – Cement Plastering Repair
  - 2. Unit of Measurement: **Contractor to provide a price per 100 s.f.**

END OF SECTION 012200

## SECTION 01500

### TEMPORARY FACILITIES

#### 1. GENERAL

Should conflict occur between the Temporary Facilities and the General Conditions, the requirements of this Section take precedence.

#### 2. TEMPORARY HEAT

a. The General Contractor shall provide heat, fuel and services as necessary to protect all work and materials against injury from dampness and cold until final acceptance of all work and material in the Contract, unless the building or buildings are fully occupied by the Owner prior to such acceptance, in which case, the Owner shall assume all expenses of heating from date of occupancy. The General Contractor shall provide heat as follows:

- 1) At all times during the placing, setting and curing of concrete, provide sufficient heat to insure the heating of the spaces involved to not less than 50° F.
- 2) From the beginning of the application of gypsum board taping and during the setting and curing period, provide sufficient heat to produce a temperature in the spaces involved of not less than 50° F.
- 3) For a period of ten (10) days previous to the placing of interior wood finish and throughout the placing of this and other interior finishing, varnishing, painting, etc., and until final acceptance of the work or until full occupancy by the Owner, provide sufficient heat to produce a temperature of not less than 70° F. Heating Subcontractor shall set such necessary temporary radiation as may be required.
- 4) Mechanical Subcontractor shall, as soon as possible, provide temporary heating facilities through the installed heating equipment.

#### 3. SIGN AND ADVERTISING

a. The General Contractor shall furnish and erect one (1) painted sign, 4'-0" x 8'-0" in size, as shown on the last page of this Section and placed where directed. Sign shall have the following:

- 1) Name of Project
- 2) Name and Address of Architect
- 3) Name and Address of General Contractor
- 4) Name of Mechanical Subcontractor
- 5) Name of Electrical Subcontractor
- 6) Picture of Project (coordinate with Architect)

b. Post entire construction with DANGER and NO TRESPASSING signs to comply with safety and insurance regulations.

c. Keep premises clear and free from other signs or posters.

#### 4. TEMPORARY FIELD OFFICES

a. General Contractor shall provide and maintain in good condition, a painted weatherproof field office (adequate size trailer acceptable) for use of General Contractor and Architect's representative. Provide such building with heat, electric lights, telephone, locked doors, windows, table, and rack for Drawings. Building to remain property of General Contractor.

b. Electrical and Mechanical Subcontractors shall maintain similar field office, meeting requirements of previous paragraph, except provisions for Architect's representative not needed.

#### 5. TEMPORARY ENCLOSURES

General Contractor to provide:

a. Temporary weathertight enclosures for all exterior openings as soon as possible as walls and roofs are built to protect work from weather. Temporary exterior doors equipped with padlocks.

b. In cold weather, provide additional precautions necessary, including heat at such openings to protect building and contents.

#### 6. TEMPORARY SHEDS

The Contractor shall provide and maintain on the premises watertight storage sheds for storage of all materials which may be damaged by weather. These sheds shall have wood floors raised above the ground.

#### 7. TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION ITEMS

General Contractor shall furnish necessary temporary stairs, chutes, runways, scaffolds, ladders, and hoist.

8. TEMPORARY TOILET ACCOMMODATIONS

- a. The General Contractor shall provide for the use of all workmen, in accordance with local ordinances, ample temporary sanitary toilet accommodations and keep such clean and free from flies. Prior to completion of the Contract, all connections and appliances connected with same will be removed and the premises left perfectly clean.
- b. The Mechanical Subcontractor shall, as soon as conditions of the work will allow, install inside building a temporary toilet with connections to the sewer.

9. TEMPORARY TELEPHONE

The General Contractor shall install at his own expense, a job telephone, and shall pay for all local calls. All long distance calls shall be paid by party making the call.

10. TEMPORARY LIGHT AND POWER

- a. For new construction, the General Contractor shall arrange for temporary service, pay for all expenses therewith and bring services to building and run extensions to locations necessary for operations.
- b. Permit other Subcontractors to use same. Other Subcontractors requiring additional extensions, make and remove same at their expense. General Contractor shall pay for all electricity consumed.

11. WATER FOR CONSTRUCTION

The Owner will furnish all water for construction. The General Contractor will be responsible for necessary water connections to existing source.

END OF SECTION 01500

## SECTION 02222

### EXCAVATING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Excavating for footings, slabs-on-grade, paving.
  - B. Excavating for site utilities.
- 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS
  - A. Section 02223: Backfilling
  - B. Section 02224: Trenching

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

Not Used

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 PREPARATION
  - A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
  - B. Locate, identify, and protect utilities that remain, from damage.
  - C. Notify utility company to remove and relocate utilities.
  - D. Protect plant life, lawns, rock outcropping and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
  - E. Protect bench marks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving and curbs from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.
- 3.02 EXCAVATION
  - A. Underpin adjacent structures which may be damaged by excavation work.
  - B. Excavate subsoil required to accommodate building foundations, slabs-on-grade, paving and site structures, construction operations.
  - C. Machine slope banks to angle of repose or less, until shored.
  - D. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundation.
  - E. Grade top perimeter of excavation to prevent surface water from draining into excavation.
  - F. Hand trim excavation. Remove loose matter.
  - G. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
  - H. Notify Architect/Engineer of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
  - I. Correct areas over-excavated in accordance with Section 02223.
  - J. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site and remove excess material not being reused, from site.
  - K. Execute work in coordination with the Soils Report
- 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. Field inspection will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Provide for visual inspection of bearing surfaces.
- 3.04 PROTECTION
  - A. Protect excavations by methods required to prevent cave-in or loose soil from falling into excavation.
  - B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil adjacent to and beneath foundation, from freezing.

END OF SECTION 02222



## SECTION 02223

### BACKFILLING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building perimeter and site structure backfilling to subgrade elevations.
- B. Site filling and backfilling.
- C. Fill under slabs-on-grade, paving.
- D. Consolidation and compaction as scheduled.
- E. Fill for over-excavation.

##### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D698 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5 lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12 inch (304.8 mm) Drop.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Fill & Soil Material: As specified in Section 02205.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify subdrainage, dampproofing or waterproofing installation has been inspected and completed.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Compact subgrade to density requirements for subsequent backfill materials.
- B. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of in situ compaction. Backfill with fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.
- C. Scarify and proof roll subgrade surface to a depth of 4 inches to identify soft spots; fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent fill material.

##### 3.03 BACKFILLING

- A. Backfill areas to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- C. Fill, place and compact materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
- D. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of backfill materials to attain required compaction density. Backfill against supported foundation walls. Do not backfill against unsupported foundation walls.
- F. Backfill simultaneously on each side of unsupported foundation walls until supports are in place.
- G. Slope grade away from building minimum 2 inches in 10 ft. unless noted otherwise.
- H. Make gradual grade changes. Blend slope into level areas.
- I. Remove surplus backfill materials from site.
- J. Leave fill material stockpile areas free of excess fill materials.

##### 3.04 TOLERANCES

- A. Top Surface of Backfilling Under Paved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.
- B. Top Surface of General Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

##### 3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D698.
- C. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace and retest at no additional cost to the Owner.
- D. Proof roll compacted fill surfaces under slabs-on-grade, and paving.

3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Reshape and re-compact fills subjected to vehicular traffic.

3.07 SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Slab-On-Grade:
  - 1. Fill compacted to 95 percent
  - 2. Cover with Sand Fill 2 inches thick, compacted to 95 percent.
- B. Exterior Side of Foundation Walls Retaining Walls and Over Granular Filter Material and Foundation Perimeter Drainage:
  - 1. Fill to subgrade elevation, each lift, compacted to 90 percent.
- C. Fill Under Grass Areas:
  - 1. Fill to 4 inches below finish grade.
- D. Fill Under Asphalt or Concrete Paving:
  - 1. Compact subsoil to 95 percent of its maximum dry density.
- E. Fill to Correct Overexcavation:
  - 1. Lean concrete to minimum compressive strength of 1000 psi.
  - 2. Compact approved fill to 95 percent of its maximum dry density.

END OF SECTION 02223

## SECTION 02225

### TRENCHING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Excavating trenches for utilities from building to municipal utilities.
- B. Compacted fill from top of utility bedding to subgrade elevations.
- C. Backfilling and compaction.

##### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM D698 - Test Methods for Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil-Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5 lb (2.49 Kg) Rammer and 12 inch (304.8 mm) Drop.

##### 1.04 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that survey bench mark and intended elevations for the Work are as shown on drawings.

##### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate all work as required.
- B. Verify work associated with lower elevation utilities are complete before placing higher elevation utilities.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Fill: As specified in Section 02205.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Identify required lines, levels, contours, and datum.
- B. Protect plant life, lawns, rock outcropping and other features remaining as a portion of final landscaping.
- C. Protect bench marks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving, and curbs from excavation equipment and vehicular traffic.
- D. Maintain and protect above and below grade utilities which are to remain.
- E. Cut out soft areas of subgrade not capable of in situ compaction. Backfill with fill and compact to density equal to or greater than requirements for subsequent backfill material.

##### 3.02 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavate subsoil required for utilities to municipal utilities.
- B. Cut trenches sufficiently wide to enable installation and allow inspection.
- C. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
- D. Hand trim excavation. Remove loose matter.
- E. Remove lumped subsoil, boulders, and rock up to 1/3 cu yd measured by volume.
- F. Correct areas over excavated in accordance with Section 02222.
- G. Stockpile excavated material in area designated on site and remove excess material not being used, from site.

##### 3.03 BACKFILLING

- A. Backfill trenches to contours and elevations with unfrozen materials.
- B. Systematically backfill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not backfill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
- C. Granular Fill: Place and compact materials in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
- D. Soil Fill: Place and compact material in continuous layers not exceeding 8 inches compacted depth.
- E. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage foundation perimeter drainage, conduit or pipes in trench.
- F. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
- G. Remove surplus fill materials from site.



H. Leave fill material stockpile areas completely free of excess fill materials.

3.04 TOLERANCES

A. Top Surface of Backfilling: Plus or minus 1 inch from required elevations.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field inspection and testing will be performed under provisions of the General Requirements.

B. Compaction testing will be performed in accordance with ANSI/ASTM D698.

C. If tests indicate Work does not meet specified requirements, remove Work, replace, compact, and retest at no additional cost to the owner.

3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. Protect or reshape and recompact fills subjected to vehicular traffic during construction.

END OF SECTION 02225

## SECTION 02281

### TERMITE CONTROL

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Soil treatment for termite control below grade, to interior and exterior foundation perimeter.

##### 1.02 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years documented experience approved by manufacturer, licensed and approved regulations.

##### 1.03 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to requirements for application, application licensing, and authority to use toxicant chemicals and in accordance with EPA.
- B. Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of toxicants.

##### 1.04 SEQUENCING

- A. Apply toxicant 12 hours prior to installation of vapor barrier under slabs-on-grade and finish grading work outside foundations.
- B. Notify Architect 24 hours prior to application.

##### 1.05 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year warranty under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for damage and repairs to building and building contents caused by termites. Repair damage. Re-treat where required.
- C. Inspect and report annually to Owner in writing. Owner reserves the right to renew warranty for an additional five years.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Toxicant Chemical: EPA and Local authority approved; (DRAGNET, DURSBAN TC, or as approved equal) synthetically color dyed to permit visual identification of treated soil.
- B. Diluent: Recommended by toxicant manufacturer.
- C. Mix toxicant to manufacturer's instructions.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify all the site conditions and become familiar with project scope.
- B. Verify that soil surfaces are unfrozen, sufficiently dry to absorb toxicant, and ready to receive treatment.
- C. Verify final grading is complete.

##### 3.02 APPLICATION

- A. Spray apply or Inject toxicant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Apply toxicant at locations indicated in Schedule at end of Section.
- C. Apply extra treatment to structure penetration surfaces such as pipe or ducts, and soil penetrations such as grounding rods or posts.
- D. Re-treat disturbed treated soil with same toxicant as original treatment. Retreat around building perimeter after top soil has been placed, directly adjacent to foundation wall.
- E. If inspection or testing identifies the presence of termites, re-treat soil and re-test.

##### 3.03 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work, post signage to warn workers that soil poisoning has been applied.
- B. Do not permit soil grading over treated work.

3.04 SCHEDULES

- A. Locations: Both Sides of Foundation Surfaces and soil within 10' of building perimeter

END OF SECTION 02281

## SECTION 024116

### STRUCTURE DEMOLITION

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Demolition and removal of buildings and site improvements.
  - 2. Removing below-grade construction, footings, & slabs.
  - 3. Disconnecting, capping or sealing, and removing site utilities.

##### 1.2 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Building Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  - 1. Detailed sequence of demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity.
  - 2. Interruption of utility services.
  - 3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 4. Locations of temporary protection and means of egress.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of adjacent buildings and partial use of premises.
- B. Inventory: After building demolition is complete, submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.
- C. Pre-demolition Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by building demolition operations. Submit before Work begins.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Demolition Firm Qualifications: An experienced firm that has specialized in demolition work similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Standards: Comply with ANSI A10.6 and NFPA 241.

##### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Buildings and Portion of Buildings to be demolished will be vacated and their use discontinued before start of the Work.
- B. Owner assumes no responsibility for buildings and structures to be demolished.
- C. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. Hazardous materials will be identified and removed by Contractor or a Qualified sub-contractor under the General Contractors direct supervision.
  - 2. If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, the General Contractor shall identify & test, or contact his Sub-Contractor for identification, testing and removal.
- D. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with operations of adjacent occupied buildings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of building demolition required.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction provided by Architect. Owner nor Architect guarantee that existing conditions are the same as those indicated in design or construction documents.

### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. As identified or required, locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utilities serving the building or portions of the building to be demolished.
  - 1. Contractor is required to contact all utility companies and complete all utility disconnections and terminations.
  - 2. If removal, relocation, or abandonment of utility services will affect adjacent occupied buildings, then provide temporary utilities that bypass buildings and structures to be demolished and that maintain continuity of service to other buildings and structures.
  - 3. Terminate utilities, cut off pipe or conduit a minimum of 24 inches below grade. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit after bypassing according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 4. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnecting and sealing have been completed and verified in writing.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Existing Facilities: Protect adjacent walkways, public sidewalks, and other building facilities during demolition operations. Maintain exits from existing buildings.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent unexpected movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
- C. Existing Utilities: Terminate and cap existing utilities. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving adjacent occupied or operating facilities unless authorized in writing by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Temporary Protection: Erect temporary protection, such as walks, fences, railings, canopies, and covered passageways, where required by authorities having jurisdiction and as indicated. Comply with requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
  - 1. Protect adjacent buildings and facilities from damage due to demolition activities.
  - 2. Protect existing site improvements, appurtenances, and landscaping to remain.
  - 3. Erect a plainly visible fence around drip line of individual trees or around perimeter drip line of groups of trees to remain.
  - 4. Provide temporary 6' tall chain link fencing around entire demolition area/site to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 5. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around building demolition area and to and from occupied portions of adjacent buildings and structures.
- E. Remove temporary barriers and protections where hazards no longer exist. Where open excavations or other hazardous conditions remain, leave temporary barriers and protections in place.

### 3.4 DEMOLITION

- A. General: Demolish indicated site improvements as indicated or required. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - 1. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  - 2. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 4 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  - 3. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  - 4. Locate building demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, walkways, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed trafficways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Use water mist and other suitable methods to limit spread of dust and dirt. Comply with governing environmental-protection regulations.
- C. Proceed with demolition of structural framing members systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete building demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
- D. Remove debris from elevated portions of the building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
- E. Promptly repair damage to adjacent buildings caused by demolition operations.

### 3.5 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.
- D. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by building demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before building demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024116



## SECTION 03100

### CONCRETE FORMWORK

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Formwork for cast-in place concrete, with shoring, bracing and anchorage.
  - B. Openings for other work.
  - C. Form accessories.
  - D. Form stripping.
- 1.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site per the suppliers and/or manufacturer's recommendations.
  - B. Store off ground in ventilated and protected manner to prevent deterioration from moisture.
- 1.03 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate this Section with other Sections of work which require attachment of components to formwork.
  - B. If formwork is placed after reinforcement resulting in insufficient concrete cover over reinforcement before proceeding, request instructions from Architect/Engineer.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 WOOD FORM MATERIALS
- A. Form Materials: At the discretion of the Contractor.
- 2.02 PREFABRICATED FORMS
- A. Preformed Steel Forms: Minimum gage matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished surfaces.
  - B. Glass Fiber Fabric Reinforced Plastic Forms: Matched, tight fitting, stiffened to support weight of concrete without deflection detrimental to tolerances and appearance of finished concrete surfaces.
- 2.03 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES
- A. Form Ties: Removable or Snap-off type, metal, size and shape to minimize filling, waterproofing and refinishing concrete surfaces.
  - B. Form Release Agent: Colorless mineral oil which will not stain concrete, or absorb moisture, or impair natural bonding or color characteristics of coating intended for use on concrete.
  - C. Corners: Chamfer, exposed edges 1/2 inch unless otherwise noted or detailed on the drawings.
  - D. Dovetail Anchor Slot: Galvanized steel, 22 gage thick, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
  - E. Flashing Reglets: Galvanized steel 22 gage thick, longest possible lengths, with alignment splines for joints, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
  - F. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts, Anchorages: Sized as required, of sufficient strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.
  - G. Waterstops: Rubber Polyvinyl chloride, minimum 1,750 psi tensile strength, minimum 50 degrees F to plus 175 degrees F working temperature range, maximum possible lengths, ribbed profile, preformed corner sections, heat welded jointing.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
- A. Verify lines, levels and centers before proceeding with formwork. Ensure that dimensions agree with drawings.
- 3.02 EARTH FORMS
- A. Earth forms if permitted, hand trim sides and bottom of earth forms. Remove loose soil prior to placing concrete.
- 3.03 ERECTION - FORMWORK
- A. Erect formwork, shoring and bracing to achieve design requirements, in accordance with requirements of ACI 301.



- B. Provide bracing to ensure stability of formwork. Shore or strengthen formwork subject to over stressing by construction loads.
  - C. Arrange and assemble formwork to permit dismantling and stripping. Do not damage concrete during stripping. Permit removal of remaining principal shores.
  - D. Align joints and make watertight. Keep form joints to a minimum.
  - E. Obtain approval before framing openings in structural members which are not indicated on Drawings.
  - F. Provide chamfer strips on external corners of beams joists columns and exposed decorative concrete edges.
  - G. Install void forms in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protect forms from moisture or crushing.
- 3.04 APPLICATION - FORM RELEASE AGENT
- A. Apply form release agent on formwork in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  - B. Apply prior to placement of reinforcing steel, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
  - C. Do not apply form release agent where concrete surfaces will receive special finishes or applied coverings which are effected by agent. Soak inside surfaces of untreated forms with clean water. Keep surfaces coated prior to placement of concrete.
- 3.05 INSERTS, EMBEDDED PARTS, AND OPENINGS
- A. Provide formed openings where required for items to be embedded in passing through concrete work.
  - B. Locate and set in place items which will be cast directly into concrete.
  - C. Coordinate with work of other sections in forming and placing openings, slots, reglets, recesses, sleeves, bolts, anchors, other inserts, and components of other Work.
  - D. Position recessed reglets for brick veneer masonry anchors to spacing and intervals specified in Section 04300.
  - E. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, straight, level, and plumb. Ensure items are not disturbed during concrete placement.
  - F. Install waterstops continuous without displacing reinforcement. Heat seal joints watertight.
  - G. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection. Locate openings at bottom of forms to allow flushing water to drain.
  - H. Close temporary openings with tight fitting panels, flush with inside face of forms, and neatly fitted so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.
- 3.06 FORM CLEANING
- A. Clean forms as erection proceeds, to remove foreign matter within forms.
  - B. Clean formed cavities of debris prior to placing concrete.
  - C. Flush with water or use compressed air to remove remaining foreign matter. Ensure that water and debris drain to exterior through clean-out ports.
  - D. During cold weather, remove ice and snow from within forms. Do not use de-icing salts. Do not use water to clean out forms, unless formwork and concrete construction proceed within heated enclosure. Use compressed air or other means to remove foreign matter.
- 3.07 FORMWORK TOLERANCES
- A. Construct formwork to maintain tolerances required by ACI 301. Construct and align formwork for elevator hoistway in accordance with ANSI/ASME A17.1.
- 3.08 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Inspect erected formwork, shoring, and bracing to ensure that work is in accordance with formwork design, and that supports, fastenings, wedges, ties, and items are secure.
  - B. Do not reuse wood formwork more than 2 times for concrete surfaces to be exposed to view. Do not patch formwork.
- 3.09 FORM REMOVAL
- A. Do not remove forms or bracing until concrete has gained sufficient strength to carry its own weight and
  - B. Loosen forms carefully. Do not wedge pry bars, hammers, or tools against finish concrete surfaces scheduled for exposure to view.
  - C. Store removed forms in manner that surfaces to be in contact with fresh concrete will not be damaged. Discard damaged forms.

END OF SECTION 03100

SECTION 03200  
CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Reinforcing steel bars, wire fabric and accessories for cast-in-place concrete.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate bar sizes, spacings, locations, and quantities of reinforcing steel and wire fabric, bending and cutting schedules, and supporting and spacing devices.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with CRSI - Manual of Standard Practice and ACI 301.

1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Design reinforcement under direct supervision of a Professional Structural Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State of Kansas.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate with placement of formwork, formed openings and other Work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615, 40, 60, or 75 ksi yield grade as indicated on the drawings; deformed billet steel bars, unfinished.
- B. Reinforcing Steel Plain Bar and Rod Mats: ASTM A704, ASTM A615, Grade 40 or 60 as indicated on the drawings; steel bars or rods, unfinished.
- C. Stirrup Steel: ANSI/ASTM A82, unfinished.
- D. Welded Steel Wire Fabric: ASTM A815; in flat sheets or coiled rolls; unfinished.

2.02 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Tie Wire: Minimum 16 gage annealed type.
- B. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, Spacers: Sized and shaped for strength and support of reinforcement during concrete placement conditions including load bearing pad on bottom to prevent vapor barrier puncture.
- C. Special Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, Spacers Adjacent to Weather Exposed Concrete Surfaces: Plastic coated steel type; size and shape as required.

2.03 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate concrete reinforcing in accordance with CRSI Manual of Practice.
- B. Weld reinforcement in accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.4.
- C. Locate reinforcing splices not indicated on drawings, at point of minimum stress.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 PLACEMENT

- A. Place, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Do not deviate from required position.
- B. Do not displace or damage vapor barrier.
- C. Accommodate placement of formed openings.

D. Maintain concrete cover around reinforcing as indicated on the drawings or if not indicated as follows:

<u>Item</u>	<u>Coverage</u>
Beams	1 1/2 inch
Column Ties	1 1/2 inch
Walls (exposed to weather or backfill)	2 inch
Footings and Concrete Formed Against Earth	3 inch
Slabs on Fill	3/4 inch

END OF SECTION 03200

## SECTION 03300

### CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cast-in-place concrete floors, footings, foundation walls, retaining walls, steps and ramps.
- B. Floors and slabs on grade.
- C. Control, expansion and contraction joint devices associated with concrete work, including joint sealants.
- D. Equipment pads, light pole base and flagpole base.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on joint devices, attachment accessories.
- C. Samples: Submit 2-inch long samples of expansion/contraction joint.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate installation procedures and interface required with adjacent Work.

##### 1.03 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Accurately record actual locations of embedded utilities and components which are concealed from view.

##### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with ACI 301.
- B. Acquire cement and aggregate from same source for all work.
- C. Conform to ACI 305R when concreting during hot weather.
- D. Conform to ACI 306R when concreting during cold weather.

##### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the placement of joint devices with erection of concrete formwork and placement of form accessories.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cement: ASTM C150, Type I - Normal or Type III - High Early Strength Type V - Sulfate Resistant as required Portland type.
- B. Fine and Coarse Aggregates: ASTM C33.
- C. Water: Clean and not detrimental to concrete.

##### 2.02 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air Entrainment: ASTM C260.
- B. Chemical: ASTM C494 Type A - Water Reducing, Type B - Retarding, Type C - Accelerating, Type D - Water Reducing and Retarding, Type E - Water Reducing and Accelerating.

##### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Bonding Agent: Polymer resin emulsion, polyvinyl acetate, Latex emulsion, two component modified epoxy resin, non-solvent two component polysulfide epoxy, mineral filled polysulfide polymer epoxy, mineral filled polysulfide polymer epoxy resin, or Polyamid cured epoxy as approved.
- B. Vapor Barrier: 6 mil thick clear polyethylene film, type recommended for below grade application.
- C. Non-Shrink Grout: Premixed compound consisting of nonmetallic aggregate, cement, water reducing and plasticizing agents; capable of developing minimum compressive strength of 2,400 psi in 48 hours and 7,000 psi in 28 days.

##### 2.04 JOINT DEVICES AND FILLER MATERIALS

- A. Joint Filler:
  - 1. Joint Filler Type A: ASTM D1751; Asphalt impregnated fiberboard or felt, 1/4 inch thick.
  - 2. Joint Filler Type B: ASTM D1752; Closed cell polyvinyl chloride foam, resiliency recovery of 95 percent if not compressed more than 50 percent of original thickness.

- B. Expansion and Contraction Joint Devices: ASTM B221 alloy, extruded aluminum; resilient elastomeric, vinyl, or neoprene, filler strip with a Shore A hardness of 35 to permit plus or minus 25 percent joint movement with full recovery; extruded aluminum or vinyl cover plate, of longest manufactured length at each location, recess mounted; color as selected.
- C. Sealant: Rubber or synthetic rubber compound.

## 2.05 CONCRETE MIX

- A. Mix concrete in accordance with ACI 304. Deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94.
- B. Select proportions for normal weight concrete in accordance with ACI 301.
- C. Provide concrete as noted on structural drawings (minimum compressive strength of 3,500 psi at 28 days).
- D. Use accelerating admixtures in cold weather only when approved by Architect/Engineer. Use of admixtures will not relax cold weather placement requirements.
- E. Use calcium chloride only when approved by Architect/Engineer.
- F. Use set retarding admixtures during hot weather only when approved by Architect/Engineer.
- G. Add air entraining agent to normal weight concrete mix for work exposed to exterior.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify requirements for concrete cover over reinforcement.
- B. Verify that anchors, seats, plates, reinforcement and other items to be cast into concrete are accurately placed, positioned securely, and will not cause hardship in placing concrete.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare previously placed concrete by cleaning with steel brush and applying bonding agent in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. In locations where new concrete is dowelled to existing work, drill holes in existing concrete, insert steel dowels and pack solid with non-shrink grout.

### 3.03 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Place concrete in accordance with ACI 301.
- B. Notify Architect/Engineer minimum 24 hours prior to commencement of operations.
- C. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, embedded parts, formed expansion and contraction joints are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- D. Install vapor barrier under interior slabs on grade. Lap joints minimum 6 inches and seal watertight by sealant applied between overlapping edges and ends or taping edges and ends.
- E. Repair vapor barrier damaged during placement of concrete reinforcing. Repair with vapor barrier material; lap over damaged areas minimum 6 inches and seal watertight.
- F. Separate slabs on grade from vertical surfaces with 1/2 inch thick joint filler.
- G. Place joint filler in floor slab pattern placement sequence. Set top to required elevations. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- H. Extend joint filler from bottom of slab to within 1/2 inch of finished slab surface. Conform to Section 07900 for finish joint sealer requirements.
- I. Install joint devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- J. Install construction joint devices in coordination with floor slab pattern placement sequence. Set top to required elevations. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- K. Install joint device anchors. Maintain correct position to allow joint cover to be flush with floor and wall finish.
- L. Install joint covers in longest practical length, when adjacent construction activity is complete.
- M. Apply sealants in joint devices in accordance with Section 07900.
- N. Maintain records of concrete placement. Record date, location, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.
- O. Place concrete continuously between predetermined expansion, control, and construction joints.
- P. Do not interrupt successive placement; do not permit cold joints to occur where possible.
- Q. Place floor slabs in checkerboard or saw cut pattern indicated.
- R. Saw cut joints within 24 hours after placing. Use 3/16 inch thick blade, cut into 1/4 depth of slab thickness.
- S. Screed floors and slabs on grade level, maintaining surface flatness of maximum 1/4 inch in 10 ft.

- 3.04 CONCRETE FINISHING
- A. Provide formed concrete surfaces to be left exposed concrete walls columns beams joists with smooth rubbed finish.
  - B. Finish concrete floor surfaces in accordance with ACI 301.
  - C. Wood float surfaces which will receive quarry tile, ceramic tile, or terrazzo with full bed setting system.
  - D. Steel trowel surfaces which will receive carpeting, resilient flooring, seamless flooring, thin set quarry tile, or thin set ceramic tile. NO AIR ENTRAINMENT IN SLABS TO RECEIVE TROWEL FINISH.
  - E. Steel trowel surfaces which are scheduled to be exposed. NO AIR ENTRAINMENT IN SLABS TO RECEIVE TROWEL FINISH.
  - F. In areas with floor drains, maintain floor elevation at walls; pitch surfaces uniformly to drains at 1/4 inch per foot or as indicated on drawings.
- 3.05 CURING AND PROTECTION
- A. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
  - B. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
  - C. Cure floor surfaces in accordance with ACI 308.
  - D. Ponding: Maintain 100 percent coverage of water over floor slab areas continuously for 4 days.
  - E. Spraying: Spray water over floor slab areas and maintain wet for 7 days.
- 3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Field inspection and testing will be performed in accordance with ACI 301 and under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Provide free access to Work and cooperate with appointed firm.
  - C. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to inspection and testing firm for review prior to commencement of Work.
  - D. Tests of cement and aggregates may be performed to ensure conformance with specified requirements.
  - E. Three concrete test cylinders will be taken for every 75 or less cu yds of each class of concrete placed.
  - F. One additional test cylinder will be taken during cold weather concreting, cured on job site under same conditions as concrete it represents.
  - G. One slump test will be taken for each set of test cylinders taken.
- 3.07 PATCHING
- A. Allow Architect/Engineer to inspect concrete surfaces immediately upon removal of forms.
  - B. Excessive honeycomb or embedded debris in concrete is not acceptable. Notify Architect/Engineer upon discovery.
  - C. Patch imperfections as directed or in accordance with ACI 301.
- 3.08 DEFECTIVE CONCRETE
- A. Defective Concrete: Concrete not conforming to required lines, details, dimensions, tolerances or specified requirements.
  - B. Repair or replacement of defective concrete will be determined by the Architect/Engineer.
  - C. Do not patch, fill, touch-up, repair, or replace exposed concrete except upon express direction of Architect/Engineer for each individual area.

END OF SECTION 03300



## SECTION 035413

### GYPSUM CEMENT UNDERLAYMENT

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes two gypsum-cement-based, self-leveling under-layment for application below interior floor coverings:
  - 1. **Gyp-Crete, 2000 min psi at apartment units, 1" min. with 1/8" Acousti Mat**
    - a. 2" max. Deeper areas of fill will require a 1.5" min fill over insulation board. Reference details on sheets A4.1-A4.5.
  - 2. **Dura-Cap, 2500 min psi at public and higher traffic areas, 7/8" min. with 1/8" Acousti Mat.**
    - a. 2" max. Deeper areas of fill will require a 1.5" min fill over insulation board. Reference details on sheets A4.1-A4.5.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 09 Sections for patching and leveling compounds applied with floor coverings.

##### 1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Furnish gypsum-cement-based underlayment as part of underlayment allowance.
- B. Furnish and install gypsum-cement-based underlayment as part of underlayment allowance.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans indicating substrates, locations, and average depths of underlayment based on survey of substrate conditions.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certifying that products are compatible

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
- B. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide gypsum-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- D. Sound Transmission Characteristics: Where indicated, provide gypsum-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for STC and IIC ratings per ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 492 by a qualified testing agency.

##### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.



1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
1. Place gypsum-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between **50 and 80 deg F (10 and 27 deg C)**.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate application of underlayment with requirements of floor-covering products and adhesives, specified in Division 09 Sections, to ensure compatibility of products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GYPSUM-CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENTS

- A. Underlayment: Gypsum-cement-based, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thickness of **1/8 inch (3 mm)** and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide the following:**
    - a. Maxxon Corporation; **Gyp-Crete 2000, at all apartment units**
    - b. Maxxon Corporation; **Dura-Cap, at public areas and hallways**  
See schedule end of spec.

Or as submitted and approved equal below;

    - c. Allied Custom Gypsum;
    - d. Ardex;
    - e. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company;
    - f. CMP Specialty Products, Inc.;
    - g. Conspec by Dayton Superior;
    - h. Dependable Chemical Co., Inc.;
    - i. Euclid Chemical Company (The);
    - j. Hacker Industries, Inc.;
    - k. USG Corporation;
  2. Cement Binder: Gypsum or blended gypsum cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
  3. Compressive Strength:
    - a. **Gyp-Crete 2000**; Typical range 2000 – 3200 psi at 28 days, tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M, **at apartment units, 7/8” min. with 1/8” Acoust Mati**
    - b. **Dura-Cap**: Typical range 2500 – 4000 psi at 28 days tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M, **use at public and higher traffic areas, 7/8” min. with 1/8” Acousti Mat.**
  4. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer, formulated for use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
- B. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, **1/8 to 1/4 inch (3 to 6 mm)**; or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Provide aggregate when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
- C. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than **70 deg F (21 deg C)**.
- D. Reinforcement: For underlayment applied to wood substrates, provide galvanized metal lath or other corrosion-resistant reinforcement recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
- E. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.
- F. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for metal substrates.
- G. Overspray Primer Sealer:
1. Seal all areas that receive glue down floor goods with Maxxon Overspray according to manufacturer's specifications.

- H. Acrylic Primer Sealer (Alternate to Overspray):
  - 1. Seal all areas that receive glue down floor goods with Maxxon Acrylic according to manufacturer's specifications.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sound Mat:
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, **provide the following:**
    - a. Maxxon Corporation; Acousti Mat, 1/8" min. thickness
    - b. Submitted as approved equal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Prepare, patch, repair and clean existing floor and substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
  - 2. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
  - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates do not exceed a maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of [**3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/100 sq. m)**] in 24 hours.
- C. Wood Substrates: Mechanically fasten loose boards and panels to eliminate substrate movement and squeaks. Replace, repair, fill decking per manufacturer's instructions and sand to remove coatings that might impair underlayment bond. Clean and remove sanding dust, dirt or debris.
  - 1. Install underlayment reinforcement recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. Do not install mechanical fasteners that penetrate through the floor deck to be exposed at the underside, of the exposed ceilings.
- D. Metal Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, rust, foreign matter, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond. Apply corrosion-resistant coating compatible with underlayment if recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
- E. Nonporous Substrates: For ceramic tile, quarry tile, and terrazzo substrates, remove waxes, sealants, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond, and prepare surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Adhesion Tests: After substrate preparation, test substrate for adhesion with underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Sound Control **Mat**: Install sound control materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Do not install mechanical fasteners that penetrate through the sound control materials.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 2. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.

3. At substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints, allow joint of same width to continue through underlayment.
  - B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
  - C. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
    1. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
    2. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  - D. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
  - E. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
  - F. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.
- 3.4 PROTECTION
- A. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.
- 3.5 SCHEDULE
- A. Areas scheduled to receive Gyp-Crete & Dura-Cap products;
    1. **Gyp-Crete 2000 – All residential areas and apartment units.**
    2. **Dura-Cap – all Public areas and Hallways, including; Lobby 123, Community Rm 124, Laundry 126, Offices 119-121, Mechanical Rms, Toilets, Fitness 116, Commercial 108,**
    3. **Historic Office**
  - B. Areas Exempt from installing Gyp-Crete & Dura-Cap products;  
Historic Office area, 101, 102, 103, 104, 106,107.

END OF SECTION 035413

## SECTION 040120.63

### BRICK MASONRY REPAIR

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes repairing brick masonry, including replacing units.

##### 1.2 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Mortar used to set and anchor masonry in a structure, distinct from pointing mortar installed after masonry is set in place.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and locations of replacement masonry units on the structure.
  - 2. Show provisions for expansion joints or other sealant joints.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality-control program.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repair Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repair firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repair work.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising performance and preventing damage.
- C. Mockups: Prepare mockups of brick masonry repair to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution and for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Masonry Repair: Prepare sample areas for each type of masonry repair work performed. If not otherwise indicated, size each mockup not smaller than two adjacent whole units or approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) in least dimension. Construct sample areas in locations in existing walls where directed by Architect unless otherwise indicated. Demonstrate quality of materials, workmanship, and blending with existing work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Face Brick: **As required to complete brick masonry repair work.**
  - 1. Brick Matching Existing: Units with colors, color variation within units, surface texture, size, and shape that match existing brickwork.
    - a. Physical Properties: According to ASTM C 67.

- b. For existing brickwork that exhibits a range of colors or color variation within units, provide brick that proportionally matches that range and variation rather than brick that matches an individual color within that range.
  - 2. Special Shapes:
    - a. Provide molded, 100 percent solid shapes for applications where core holes or "frogs" could be exposed to view or weather when in final position and where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
    - b. Provide specially ground units, shaped to match patterns, for arches and where indicated.
    - c. Mechanical chopping or breaking brick, or bonding pieces of brick together by adhesive, are unacceptable procedures for fabricating special shapes.
- B. Building Brick: ASTM C 62, Grade SW where in contact with earth or Grade SW, MW, or NW for concealed backup; and of same vertical dimension as face brick, for masonry work concealed from view.

## 2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; **white gray, or both required for color matching of mortar.**
  - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.
- E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.
  - 1. Exposed Mortar: Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
  - 2. Colored Mortar: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Mortar Pigments: ASTM C 979/C 979M, compounded for use in mortar mixes, and having a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.
- G. Water: Potable.

## 2.3 MANUFACTURED REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Brick Patching Compound: Factory-mixed cementitious product that is custom manufactured for patching brick masonry.
  - 1. Use formulation that is vapor and water permeable (equal to or more than the masonry unit), exhibits low shrinkage, has lower modulus of elasticity than masonry units being repaired, and develops high bond strength to all types of masonry.
  - 2. Formulate patching compound in colors and textures to match each masonry unit being patched.

## 2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Setting Buttons and Shims: Resilient plastic, nonstaining to masonry, sized to suit joint thicknesses and bed depths of masonry units, less the required depth of pointing materials unless removed before pointing.
- B. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:
  - 1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
  - 2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
  - 3. Consistency of each application.
  - 4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
  - 5. Do not use products or tools that could leave residue on surfaces.

## 2.5 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
  - 1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
  - 1. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, **Type N** unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to **portland cement and lime, masonry cement, or mortar cement**.
  - 2. Pigmented, Colored Mortar: Add mortar pigments to produce exposed, setting (rebuilding) mortar of colors required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Remove all items in the way, preventing proper review, required for scope of work and to be demolished; conduits, gutters, boxes, fans, door & windows, downspouts, brackets, clips, lights, etc. all affecting work adjacent to masonry. Store any items indicated to be used or re-installed, during masonry repair. Reinstall when repairs are complete.
  - 1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

### 3.2 BRICK REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

- A. Remove Bricks at locations indicated, soft, damaged, deteriorated, and or spalled. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
- B. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area.
- C. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids, cracks, bulges, and loose units in existing masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.
  - 1. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
  - 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
- F. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for brick replacement.
- G. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
  - 1. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing joints.
  - 2. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
- H. Lay replacement brick with rebuilding (setting) mortar and with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with enough mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than **30 g/30 sq. in. per min. (30 g/194 sq. cm per min.)** Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.

1. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.
  2. Rake out mortar used for laying brick before mortar sets according to Section 040120.64 "Brick Masonry Repointing." Point at same time as repointing of surrounding area.
  3. When mortar is hard enough to support units, remove shims and other devices interfering with pointing of joints.
- I. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

### 3.3 MASONRY UNIT PATCHING

A. Patching Bricks:

1. Remove loose material from masonry surface. Carefully remove additional material so patch does not have feathered edges but has square or slightly undercut edges on area to be patched and is at least **1/4 inch (6 mm)** thick, but not less than recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer.
2. Mask adjacent mortar joint or rake out for repointing if patch extends to edge of masonry unit.
3. Mix patching compound in individual batches to match each unit being patched. Combine one or more colors of patching compound, as needed, to produce exact match.
4. Rinse surface to be patched and leave damp, but without standing water.
5. Brush-coat surfaces with slurry coat of patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Place patching compound in layers as recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer, but not less than **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more than **2 inches (50 mm)** thick. Roughen surface of each layer to provide a key for next layer.
7. Trowel, scrape, or carve surface of patch to match texture and surrounding surface plane or contour of masonry unit. Shape and finish surface before or after curing, as determined by testing, to best match existing masonry unit.
8. Keep each layer damp for 72 hours or until patching compound has set.

### 3.4 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low pressure spray.
1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
  2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.

END OF SECTION 040120.63

## SECTION 040120.64

### BRICK MASONRY REPOINTING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes repointing joints with mortar.

##### 1.2 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 012200 "Unit Prices."

##### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at **Project site**.

##### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

##### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality-control program.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repointing Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repointing firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repointing work.
- B. Quality-Control Program: Prepare a written quality-control program for this Project to systematically demonstrate the ability of personnel to properly follow methods and use materials and tools without damaging masonry. Include provisions for supervising performance and preventing damage.
- C. Mockups: Prepare mockups of brick masonry repointing to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Repointing: Rake out joints in two separate areas, each approximately **36 inches (900 mm)** high by **48 inches (1200 mm)** wide, unless otherwise indicated, for each type of repointing required, and repoint one of the areas.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; **white gray, or both where required for color matching of mortar.**
  - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.
- E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.



1. **Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible.**  
Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
  2. Color: Provide natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Mortar Pigments: ASTM C 979/C 979M, compounded for use in mortar mixes, and having a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortars.
- G. Water: Potable.

## 2.2 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that retains its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
1. Pointing Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, **Type N** unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to **portland cement and lime masonry cement or mortar cement. Add mortar pigments to produce mortar colors required.**

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Remove all items in the way, preventing proper review, required for scope of work and to be demolished; conduits, gutters, boxes, fans, door & windows, downspouts, brackets, clips, lights, etc. all affecting work adjacent to masonry. Store any items indicated to be used or re-installed, during masonry repair. Reinstall when repairs are complete.
1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

### 3.2 REPOINTING MASONRY

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
1. All joints in areas indicated.
  2. Joints indicated as sealant-filled joints. Seal joints according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
  3. Joints at locations of the following defects:
    - a. Holes and missing mortar.
    - b. Cracks that can be penetrated **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more by a knife blade **0.027 inch (0.7 mm)** thick.
    - c. Cracks **1/16 inch (1.6 mm)** or more in width and of any depth.
    - d. Hollow-sounding joints when tapped by metal object.
    - e. Eroded surfaces **1/4 inch (6 mm)** or more deep.

- f. Deterioration to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
  - g. Joints filled with substances other than mortar.
- B. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- C. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
  - 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of **2 times joint width**, but not less than **3/4 inch (20 mm)** or not less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar. Do not remove unsound mortar more than **2 inches (50 mm)** deep; consult Architect for direction.
  - 2. Remove mortar from masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
  - 3. Do not spall edges of masonry units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged masonry units as directed by Architect.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose masonry units, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Pointing with Mortar:
  - 1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
  - 2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (9 mm)** until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
  - 3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (9 mm)**. Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing masonry units have worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of masonry to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed masonry surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
  - 4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
  - 5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
  - 6. Hairline cracking within mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

### 3.3 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low pressure spray.
  - 1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
  - 2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.

END OF SECTION 040120.64



## SECTION 04100

### MORTAR AND MASONRY GROUT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Mortar and grout for masonry, to match existing.

##### 1.02 GENERAL

- A. All notes or specifications on structural drawings shall override any discrepancies listed.

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Include design mix, indicate whether the Proportion or Property specification of ASTM C270 is to be used, required environmental conditions, and admixture limitations.

##### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with ACI 530 and ACI 530.1 .

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Maintain packaged materials clean, dry, and protected against dampness, freezing, and foreign matter.

##### 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
- B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I.
- B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91, Type S.
- C. Premix Mortar: ASTM C387, Type S.
- D. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C144, standard masonry type.
- E. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- F. Water: Clean and potable.
- G. Bonding Agent: Latex or Epoxy type.

##### 2.02 MORTAR COLOR

- A. Mortar Color: Mineral oxide pigment; color to match adjacent CMU color, as selected by Architect.

##### 2.03 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Mortar For Load Bearing Walls and Partitions: ASTM C270, Type M or S using the Property specification.
- B. Mortar For Non-Load Bearing Walls and Partitions: ASTM C270, Type M or S using the Property specification.
- C. Mortar For Engineered Masonry: ASTM C270, Type M or S using the Property specification.
- D. Pointing Mortar: ASTM C270, Type N or O using the Property specification.

##### 2.04 MORTAR MIXING

- A. Thoroughly mix mortar ingredients in accordance with ASTM C270 in quantities needed for immediate use.
- B. Maintain sand uniformly damp immediately before the mixing process.
- C. Add mortar color and admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide uniformity of mix and coloration.
- D. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of mortar.
- E. If water is lost by evaporation, re-temper only within two hours of mixing.

- F. Use mortar within two hours after mixing at temperatures of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), or two-and-one-half hours at temperatures under 40 degrees F.

#### 2.05 GROUT MIXES

- A. Bond Beams, and Lintels: 3,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; premixed type in accordance with ASTM C94.
- B. Engineered Masonry: 3,000 psi strength at 28 days; 8-10 inches slump; premixed type in accordance with ASTM C94.

#### 2.06 GROUT MIXING

- A. Mix grout in accordance with ASTM C94.
- B. Add admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; mix uniformly.
- C. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of grout.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Request inspection of spaces to be grouted.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install mortar and grout in accordance with premix mortar manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install mortar and grout in accordance with ASTM C270.
- C. Work grout into masonry cores and cavities to eliminate voids.
- D. Do not install grout in lifts greater than 16 inches or two CMU courses without consolidating grout by rodding.
- E. Do not displace reinforcement while placing grout.
- F. Remove excess mortar from grout spaces.

END OF SECTION 04100

## SECTION 04300

### UNIT MASONRY SYSTEM

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Concrete masonry or brick units.
  - B. Reinforcement, anchorage, and accessories.
- 1.02 SUBMITTALS
- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Product Data: Provide data for masonry and brick units and fabricated wire reinforcement.
- 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS
- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Accept units on site. Inspect for damage.
- 1.05 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS
- A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
  - B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
  - C. Hot Cold Weather Requirements: IMIAC - Recommended Practices and Guide Specifications for Hot or Cold Weather Masonry Construction.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS
- A. Non-Load Bearing Block Units (CMU): ASTM C90, Heavy weight, sand, light weight will not be accepted. Type I - Moisture Controlled.
  - B. Size and Shape: Nominal modular size of 8 and 4 x 16 x 8 inches. Provide special units for 90 degree corners.
  - C. Style and Color.
    - 1. Moisture controlled with coloring additive. Coloring to be determined by Architect.
    - 2. Provide as indicated on drawings:
- 2.02 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE
- A. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement: Truss type; steel wire, hot dip galvanized to ASTM A641 after fabrication, No. 9 side rods with No. 9 cross ties.
    - 1. Manufacturers:
      - a. DUR-O-WALL
      - b. TRU-MESH
      - c. BET-R-WALL
  - B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615, 40 or 60 ksi yield grade, deformed billet bars, uncoated finish.
  - C. Wall Ties: Formed steel wire, 3/16 inch thick, adjustable, hot dip galvanized to ASTM A123 steel finish.
    - 1. Manufacturers:
      - a. DUR-O-WALL
      - b. TRU-MESH
      - c. BET-R-WALL
- 2.03 MORTAR AND GROUT
- A. Mortar and Grout: As specified in Section 04100.
- 2.04 FLASHINGS
- A. Plastic Flashings: Sheet polyvinyl chloride or polyethylene; 20 mil thick.
  - B. Lap Sealant: Butyl type as specified in Section 07900.

## 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Preformed Control Joints: Rubber, Neoprene, Polyvinyl chloride material. Provide with corner and tee accessories, heat or cement fused joints.
- B. Joint Filler: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride, polyethylene, polyurethane or rubber; oversized 50 percent to joint width; self expanding.
- C. Building Paper: No. 30 asphalt saturated felt.
- D. Nailing Strips: Softwood, preservative treated for moisture resistance, dovetail shape, sized to masonry joints.
- E. Weeps: Preformed plastic cotton wick filled, or cotton rope.
- F. Cavity Vents: Molded polyvinyl chloride grilles; insect resistant.
- G. Cleaning Solution: Non-acidic, not harmful to masonry work or adjacent materials.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify items provided by other sections of work are properly sized and located.
- C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied to other sections.
- B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

### 3.03 COURSING

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units:
  - 1. Bond: Running unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches.
  - 3. Mortar Joints: Concave, unless noted otherwise.
- D. Brick Units:
  - 1. Bond: Running, unless noted otherwise.
  - 2. Coursing: Three units and three mortar joints to equal 8 inches.
  - 3. Mortar Joints: Concave, unless noted otherwise.

### 3.04 PLACING AND BONDING

- A. Lay solid masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- B. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- C. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints are not permitted.
- D. Remove excess mortar as work progresses.
- E. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- F. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.
- G. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.
- H. Cut mortar joints flush where wall tile is scheduled, resilient base is scheduled, cavity insulation vapor barrier adhesive is applied, or bitumen damp proofing is applied.
- I. Isolate masonry partitions from vertical structural framing members with a control joint.
- J. Isolate top joint of masonry partitions from horizontal structural framing members and slabs or decks with compressible joint filler.

### 3.05 WEEPS

- A. Install weeps in veneer at 32 inches oc horizontally above through-wall flashing, above shelf angles and lintels, and at bottom of walls.

### 3.06 CAVITY WALL

- A. Do not permit mortar to drop or accumulate into cavity air space or to plug weeps.
- B. Build inner wythe ahead of outer wythe to receive cavity insulation and air/vapor barrier adhesive.

- 3.07 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE
- A. Install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches oc.
  - B. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings. Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.
  - C. Place joint reinforcement continuous in first and second joint below top of walls.
  - D. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches.
  - E. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
  - F. At masonry veneer, embed wall ties in masonry back-up to bond veneer at maximum 16 inches oc vertically and 36 inches oc horizontally. Place at maximum 3 inches oc each way around perimeter of openings, within 12 inches of openings.
- 3.08 MASONRY FLASHINGS
- A. Extend flashings horizontally at foundation walls, above ledge or shelf angles and lintels, under parapet caps, and at bottom of walls.
  - B. Turn flashing up minimum 8 inches and bed into mortar joint of masonry, seal to concrete, seal or underlap at sheathing over framed back-up.
  - C. Lap end joints minimum 6 inches and seal watertight.
  - D. Turn flashing, fold, and seal at corners, bends, and interruptions.
- 3.09 GROUTED COMPONENTS
- A. Reinforce bond beam as indicated or detailed.
  - B. Lap splices minimum 24 bar diameters.
  - C. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
  - D. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
  - E. At bearing locations, fill masonry cores with grout for a minimum 12 inches either side of opening.
- 3.10 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS
- A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control and expansion joints.
  - B. Install preformed control joint device in continuous lengths. Seal butt and corner joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - C. Size control joint in accordance with Section 07900 for sealant performance.
  - D. Form expansion joint as detailed.
- 3.11 BUILT-IN WORK
- A. As work progresses, install built-in metal door and glazed frames, fabricated metal frames, window frames, wood nailing strips, fireplace accessories, anchor bolts, plates, and other items to be built-in the work and furnished by other sections.
  - B. Install built-in items plumb and level.
  - C. Bed anchors of metal door and glazed frames in adjacent mortar joints. Fill frame voids solid with grout. Fill adjacent masonry cores with grout minimum 12 inches from framed openings.
  - D. Do not build in organic materials subject to deterioration.
- 3.12 TOLERANCES
- A. Maximum Variation From Alignment of Columns: 1/4 inch.
  - B. Maximum Variation From Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/32 inch.
  - C. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft and 1/2 inch in 20 ft or more.
  - D. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch in two stories or more.
  - E. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft and 1/4 inch in 10 ft; 1/2 inch in 30 ft.
  - F. Maximum Variation of Joint Thickness: 1/8 inch in 3 ft.
  - G. Maximum Variation from Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4 inch.
- 3.13 CUTTING AND FITTING
- A. Cut and fit for chases, pipes, conduit, sleeves, and grounds. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
  - B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.
- 3.14 CLEANING
- A. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.
  - B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.
  - C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
  - D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.



3.15 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

A. Protect finished Work.

B. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at exposed external corners which may be damaged by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 04300

## SECTION 047200

### CAST STONE MASONRY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cast-stone trim.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For cast-stone units, include dimensions and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast-stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
- C. Samples:
  - 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required.
  - 2. For colored mortar.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- B. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast-stone units similar to those indicated for this Project that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by **the Cast Stone Institute the Architectural Precast Association or the Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute for Group A.**

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 CAST-STONE UNITS

- A. Cast-Stone Units: Comply with ASTM C 1364.
  - 1. Units shall be manufactured using the **vibrant dry tamp** or **wet-cast** method to best match existing.
  - 2. Units shall be resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666/C 666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.
- B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
  - 3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cure Units as Follows:
  - 1. Cure units in enclosed, moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of **100 deg F (38 deg C)** for 12 hours or **70 deg F (21 deg C)** for 16 hours.
  - 2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
    - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of **70 deg F (21 deg C)** or above.
- D. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.
- E. Colors and Textures: **Match existing units.**

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from **steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.**
- B. Dowels: **1/2-inch- (12-mm-)** diameter round bars, fabricated from **steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M.**
- C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cast-stone manufacturer and expressly approved by cleaner manufacturer for use on cast stone and adjacent masonry materials.

## 2.3 MORTAR

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.
  - 1. For setting mortar, use **Type N.**
  - 2. For pointing mortar, use **Type N.**
- B. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product **or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.**

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast-stone units according to ASTM C 1364.
  - 1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Install cast-stone units to comply with requirements in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- B. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
  - 2. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
  - 3. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
  - 4. Keep head joints in copings and between other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
  - 5. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- C. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- D. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than **3/8 inch (10 mm)**. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard. Use a smooth plastic jointer larger than joint thickness. **Match Existing**
- F. **Where indicated**, Rake out joints for pointing with sealant to depths of not less than **3/4 inch (19 mm)**. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- G. Provide sealant joints at head joints of copings and other horizontal surfaces; at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints; and at locations indicated.
  - 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  - 2. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- 3.2 SETTING ANCHORED CAST STONE WITH SEALANT-FILLED JOINTS
- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated, with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
    - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
    - 2. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set cast stone in locations indicated with uniform joints.
  - B. Fill anchor holes with sealant.
    - 1. Where dowel holes occur at pressure-relieving joints, provide compressible material at ends of dowels.
  - C. Set cast stone supported on clip or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths. Hold shims back from face of cast stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
  - D. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- 3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES
- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
  - B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed **1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m)**, **1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m)**, or **1/2 inch (12 mm)** maximum.
  - C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than **1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm)** or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
  - D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than **1/16 inch (1.5 mm)**, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
  - B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
  - C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
    - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
    - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
  - D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
    - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
    - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
    - 3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
    - 4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
    - 5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
    - 6. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 047200



SECTION 05120  
STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Structural steel framing members and support members.
  - B. Base plates.
  - C. Grouting under base plates.
- 1.02 GENERAL
- A. All notes or specifications on structural drawings shall override any discrepancies listed.
- 1.03 SUBMITTALS
- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
  - B. Shop Drawings:
    - 1. Indicate profiles, sizes, spacing, and locations of structural members, openings, attachments and fasteners.
    - 2. Connections and Connections not detailed.
    - 3. Cambers, and loads.
    - 4. Indicate welded connections with AWS A2.0 welding symbols. Indicate net weld lengths.
  - C. Welders Certificates: Certify welders employed on the Work, verifying AWS qualification within the previous 12 months.
- 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Fabricate structural steel members in accordance with AISC - Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings.
  - B. Perform Work in accordance with AISC - Specification for Architectural Exposed Structural Steel.
- 1.05 QUALIFICATIONS
- A. Fabricator: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years' documented experience.
  - B. Erector: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years' documented experience.
- 1.06 FIELD MEASUREMENTS
- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on shop drawings and/or as instructed by the manufacturer.
- 1.07 MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS
- A. All miscellaneous items required to complete the work in accordance with the intent of the Drawings and Specifications, shall be furnished and installed, regardless of whether or not specifically shown or described. Such items include masonry anchors, dovetail slots, dowels and cramps, loose or embedded items of structural shapes, plates, bars, shield, and other fastening devices which may or may not be provided with the indicated or specified items shall also be furnished and installed as required for attachment and support.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MATERIALS
- A. Reference drawings and notes on the drawings.
- 2.02 FINISH
- A. Prepare structural component surfaces in accordance with SSPC SP 2.
  - B. Shop prime structural steel members. Do not prime surfaces that will be fireproofed, field welded, in contact with concrete or high strength bolts.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.

#### 3.02 ERECTION

- A. Allow for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure safe, plumb, and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- B. Field weld components and shear studs indicated on Drawings and/or shop drawings.
- C. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Architect/Engineer.
- D. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed or galvanized, except surfaces to be in contact with concrete.
- E. Grout under base plates as indicated.

#### 3.03 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
- B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION 05120

## SECTION 052100

### STEEL JOIST FRAMING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. K-series steel joists.
  - 2. K-series steel joist substitutes.
  - 3. Steel joist accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacing of joists.
  - 2. Include joining and anchorage details; bracing, bridging, and joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.

##### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Manufacturer certificates.
- C. Paint compatibility certificates.
- D. Mill Certificates: For each type of bolt.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables in SJI's "Specifications."
  - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify field-welding procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Vulcraft
- B. New Millenium

##### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for recycled content.>](#)

##### 2.3 STEEL JOISTS

- A. K-Series Steel Joist: Manufactured steel joists of type indicated in accordance with "Standard Specification for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
  - 1. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture in accordance with "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.

##### 2.4 PRIMERS

- A. Primer:
  - 1. SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.



2. Primer: Provide shop primer that complies with [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."]

## 2.5 STEEL JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging:
  1. Provide bridging anchors and number of rows of [horizontal] [or] [diagonal] bridging of material, size, and type required by SJI's "Specifications" for type of joist, chord size, spacing, and span. Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325 (Grade A325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH, (ASTM A563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F436/F436M, Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers.
  1. Finish: [Plain]
- C. Furnish miscellaneous accessories including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist assembly.

## 2.6 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories.
- B. Apply one coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories.
- C. Shop priming of joists and joist accessories is specified in [Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."]

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction in accordance with SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
  2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
  3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel [bearing plates] [and] [framework]. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using high-strength structural bolts. Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for high-strength structural bolt installation and tightening requirements.
- E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: [Owner will engage] [Engage] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Visually inspect bolted connections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 052100

## SECTION 054000

### COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Load-bearing wall framing.
  2. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  3. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Cold-formed steel framing materials.
  2. Load-bearing wall framing.
  3. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  4. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  5. Vertical deflection clips.
  6. Single deflection track.
  7. Double deflection track.
  8. Drift clips.
  9. Post-installed anchors.
  10. Power-actuated anchors.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product certificates.
- C. Product test reports.
- D. Research Reports:
1. For [**post-installed anchors**] [**and**] [**power-actuated fasteners**], from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
- B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of [**the Certified Steel Stud Association**] [**the Steel Framing Industry Association**] [**the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association**] [**or**] [**the Supreme Steel Framing System Association**].
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing complies with AISI S100 and [ASTM C955] [AISI S200 and ASTM C955, Section 8] [AISI S240].
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

### 2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING MATERIALS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with [AISI S240] for conditions indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:
- Grade: [ST33H (ST230H)] [ST50H (ST340H)] [As required by structural performance]
  - Coating: [G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZM150), or GF30 (ZGF90)]
- C. Steel Sheet for [Vertical Deflection] [Drift] Clips: ASTM A653/A653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
- Grade: [33 (230)] [50 (340), Class 1]
  - Coating: [G60 (Z180)]

### 2.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
- Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: [0.0428 inch (1.09 mm)] and as indicated on the drawings.
  - Flange Width: [1-5/8 inches (41 mm)] and as indicated on the drawings
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges, as indicated on the drawings.

### 2.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
- Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: [0.0329 inch (0.84 mm)] and as indicated on the drawings.
  - Flange Width: [1-5/8 inches (41 mm)] and as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips, Exterior: Manufacturer's standard [bypass] clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
- SIMPSON STRONG-TIE MITEK
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
- E. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.

- F. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

## 2.6 INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: **[0.0329 inch (0.84 mm)]** and as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Flange Width: **[1-3/8 inches (35 mm)]** and as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips, Interior: Manufacturer's standard **[bypass]** **[head]** clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
  - 1. SIMPSON STRONG-TIE MITEK
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
- E. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
- F. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

## 2.7 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated steel sheet, of same grade and coating designation used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.8 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A36/A36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, **[Grade 36]** threaded carbon-steel **[hex-headed bolts,]** carbon-steel nuts, and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by **[mechanically deposition according to ASTM B695, Class 50]**.
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with bolts of same basic metal as fastened metal, if visible, unless otherwise indicated; with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on **[ICC-ES AC193]** **[ICC-ES AC58]** **[or]** **[ICC-ES AC308]** as appropriate for the substrate.
  - 1. Uses: Securing cold-formed steel framing to structure.
  - 2. Type: **[adhesive anchor]**.
  - 3. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or **ASTM F1941 (ASTM F1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy **[Group 1 (A1)]** **[Group 2 (A4)]** stainless steel bolts, **ASTM F593 (ASTM F738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M)**.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.
  - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: [ASTM A780/A780M] [MIL-P-21035B] [or] [SSPC-Paint 20].
- B. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M, and with a fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- C. Shims: Load-bearing, high-density, multimonomer, nonleaching plastic; or cold-formed steel of same grade and metallic coating as framing members supported by shims.
- D. Sill Sealer Gasket: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members as required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Install load-bearing shims or grout between the underside of load-bearing wall bottom track and the top of foundation wall or slab at locations with a gap larger than 1/4 inch (6 mm) to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting existing construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200, AISI S202, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
- D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- G. Install insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," in framing-assembly members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- H. Fasten hole-reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
  - 1. Anchor Spacing: [24 inches (610 mm)] or as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks, with gap not exceeding 1/8 inch (3 mm) between the end of wall-framing member and the web of track.
  - 1. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks.
  - 2. Space studs as follows:
    - a. Stud Spacing: [As indicated on Drawings]

- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs according to AISI S200, Section C1. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
  - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
  - 2. Install tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
  - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced vertically [48 inches (1220 mm)] or as indicated on the drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
  - 1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of two screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
  - 2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges, and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
  - 3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges; terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
- K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: [As indicated on Drawings]
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
  - 1. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
  - 2. Connect vertical deflection clips to [infill] studs and anchor to building structure.
  - 3. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
  2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
  3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING
- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  - B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
    1. Stud Spacing: [As indicated on Drawings]
  - C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
  - D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
    1. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
    2. Connect vertical deflection clips to studs and anchor to building structure.
    3. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel metal framing and anchor to building structure.
  - E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
    2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
    3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES
- A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
    1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error are not to exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
- 3.7 REPAIRS
- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
  - C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

- D. Cold-formed steel framing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 054000





## SECTION 054400

### COLD-FORMED METAL TRUSSES

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cold-formed steel roof trusses.
  - 2. Cold-formed steel floor trusses.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Cold-formed steel truss materials.
  - 2. Anchor bolts.
  - 3. Post-installed anchors.
  - 4. Power-actuated fasteners.
  - 5. Mechanical fasteners.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel trusses; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

##### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product test reports.
- C. Research Reports: For **[post-installed anchors]** **[and]** **[power-actuated fasteners]**, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Alpine Trus-steel, 6750 Forum Drive, Suite 305 Orlando, FL 32821  
Ph. 888-565-9181 / Email: [info@trussteel.com](mailto:info@trussteel.com)
- B. MiTek, CFS Trusses, Scott Holman  
Phone: 951-264-8531, Email: [sholman@mii.com](mailto:sholman@mii.com)
- C. CFSSTEEL LLC  
General - [info@cf-steel.com](mailto:info@cf-steel.com), Bids/Quote - [bids@cf-steel.com](mailto:bids@cf-steel.com)  
Phone: 704-485-2234
- D. OTHERS – SUBMIT FOR APPROVAL

##### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel trusses capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Design Loads: **[As indicated on Drawings]**.

2. Deflection Limits: Design trusses to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following or as indicated on the drawings:
    - a. Floor Trusses: Vertical deflection of 1/480 for live loads and 1/360 for total loads of the span.
    - b. Roof Trusses: Vertical deflection of [1/240] of the span.
  3. Design trusses to provide for movement of truss members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Truss Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, trusses comply with the following:
1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
  2. Lateral Design: AISI S213.
  3. Roof Trusses: AISI S214.
- 2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL TRUSS MATERIALS
- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:
1. Grade: [As required by structural performance] <Insert grade>.
  2. Coating: [G60 (Z180), A60 (ZF180), AZ50 (AZ150), or GF30 (ZGF90)].
- 2.4 COLD-FORMED STEEL ROOF TRUSSES
- A. Roof Truss Members: Manufacturer's standard [C-shaped] steel sections.
1. Connecting Flange Width: [1-5/8 inches (41 mm)], minimum at top and bottom chords connecting to sheathing or other directly fastened construction.
  2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: [0.0329 inch (0.84 mm)].
  3. Or truss manufacturer's custom shape, provide shape properties in show drawings.
- 2.5 COLD-FORMED STEEL FLOOR TRUSSES
- A. Floor Truss Members: Manufacturer's standard [C-shaped] steel sections.
1. Connecting Flange Width: [1-5/8 inches (41 mm)], minimum at top and bottom chords connecting to sheathing or other directly fastened construction.
  2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: [0.0329 inch (0.84 mm)]
  3. Or truss manufacturer's custom shape, provide shape properties in show drawings.
- 2.6 TRUSS ACCESSORIES
- A. Fabricate steel-truss accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A1003/A1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated steel sheet, of same grade and coating designation used for truss members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.7 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS
- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A36/A36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, [Grade 36], threaded carbon-steel [hex-headed bolts,] [headless, hooked bolts,] carbon-steel nuts, and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by [mechanical deposition in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 50].
- C. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with bolts of same basic metal as fastened metal, if visible, unless otherwise indicated; with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ] [ICC-ES AC193] [ICC-ES AC58] [or] [ICC-ES AC308] as appropriate for the substrate.
1. Uses: Securing cold-formed steel trusses to structure.

2. Type: **[adhesive anchor]**.
  3. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or **ASTM F1941 (ASTM F1941M)**, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy **[Group 1 (A1)]** stainless steel bolts, **ASTM F593 (ASTM F738M)**, and nuts, **ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M)**.
- D. Power-Actuated Fasteners: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
  - E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
    1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: **[ASTM A780/A780M] [MIL-P-21035B] [or] [SSPC-Paint 20]**.
  - B. Shims: Load-bearing, high-density multimonomer, nonleaching plastic; or cold-formed steel of same grade and metallic coating as truss members supported by shims.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed steel trusses without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required to obtain fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install bridge, and brace cold-formed steel trusses according to AISI S200, AISI S202, AISI S214, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  1. Coordinate with wall framing to align webs of bottom chords and load-bearing studs or continuously reinforce track to transfer loads to structure.
  2. Install continuous bridging and permanently brace trusses **[ as indicated on Drawings.] [ as indicated on Shop Drawings and designed according to CFSEI's Technical Note 551e, "Design Guide: Permanent Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses." ] [.]**
- B. Install cold-formed steel trusses and accessories true to line and location, and with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure trusses and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to trusses are secured.
- D. Truss Spacing: **[As indicated on Drawings]**

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install cold-formed steel trusses level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960)** and as follows:
  1. Space individual trusses no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch (3 mm)** from plan location. Cumulative error are not to exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 REPAIR

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel trusses with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: [**Engage**] a qualified special inspector to perform inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Cold-formed metal trusses will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 054400

SECTION 05500  
METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Rough Hardware
  - 2. Loose Steel Lintels
  - 3. Ladders:
    - a. Elevator Pit Ladder
    - b. Attic & Roof Ladder
  - 4. Support Angles for Elevator Door Sills
  - 5. Elevator Sump Pit Cover
  - 6. Pipe Bollards
  - 7. Miscellaneous Metal Trim
  - 8. Steel Framing and Supports for Applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 02820 - Fences and Gates
  - 2. Section 09900 - Paints and Coatings
  - 3. Section 09960 - High Performance Coatings
  - 4. Section 14240 - Hydraulic Elevators

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Submit "Letter of Conformance" in accordance with Section 01330.
  - 1. Include supporting product data for products used in miscellaneous metal fabrications, including paint products and grout.
- C. Submit Shop Drawings detailing fabrication and erection of each metal fabrication indicated. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other sections.
- D. Submit samples representative of materials and finished products as may be requested by Owner's Representative.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Firm experienced in successfully producing metal fabrications similar to that indicated for this Project, with sufficient production capacity to produce required units without causing delay in the Work.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Arrange for installation of metal fabrications specified in this Section by same firm that fabricated them.
- C. Quality welding processes and welding operators in accordance with the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel"
  - 2. D1.3 "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel"
  - 3. D1.2 "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum"
- D. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.

#### 1.04 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Check actual locations of walls and other construction to which metal fabrications must fit, by accurate field measurements before fabrication; show recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of Work.

#### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 FERROUS METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: For metal fabrications exposed to view upon completion of the Work, provide materials selected for their surface flatness, smoothness, and freedom from surface blemishes. Do not use materials whose exposed surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, roughness, and, for steel sheet, variations in flatness exceeding those permitted by reference standards for stretcher-leveled sheet.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53
  - 1. Black finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Galvanized finish for exterior installations, unless shown to receive special coatings.
  - 3. Type E, OR S, Grade B,  $F_y = 35$  KSI, unless otherwise indicated, or another weight, type, and grade required by structural loads.
- D. Gray Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30
- E. Malleable Iron Castings: ASTM A 47, Grade 32510
- F. Brackets, Flanges and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of the same type material and finish as supported rails, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Concrete Inserts: Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either malleable iron, ASTM A 47, or cast steel, ASTM A 27. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as required, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153.
- H. Welding Rods: Select in accordance with AWS Specifications for the metal alloy to be welded.

#### 2.02 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide zinc-coated fasteners for exterior use or where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for the type, grade, and class required for each application and complying with applicable standards.
  - 1. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon head bolts, ASTM A-307, Grade A with hex nuts ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 2. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 30
  - 3. Lag Bolts: Square head type, ASME B18.2.1
  - 4. Machine Screws: Cadmium plated steel, ASME B18.6.3
  - 5. Wood Screws: Flat head carbon steel, ASME B18.6.1
  - 6. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1
  - 7. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, carbon steel, ASME B18.21.1
  - 8. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
    - a. Interior Use - Material: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

- b. Exterior and Swimming Pool Use - Material: Alloy Group 1 or 2 stainless-steel bolts complying with ASTM F 593 and nuts complying with ASTM F 594.
- 9. Toggle Bolts: FS FF-B-588, tumble-wing type, class and style as needed.

#### 2.03 GROUT AND ANCHORING CEMENT

- A. Nonshrink Nonmetallic Grout: Premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior heavy-duty loading applications of type specified in this Section.
- B. Interior Anchoring Cement: Factory-prepackaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Use for interior applications only.
- C. Erosion-Resistant Anchoring Cement: Factory-prepackaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound. Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without need for protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and is recommended for exterior use by manufacturer.

#### 2.04 CONCRETE FILL AND REINFORCING MATERIALS

- A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements of Section 03300, and as shown on Drawings, with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3,000 PSI, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Non-slip Aggregate Finish: Factory-graded, packaged material containing fused aluminum oxide grits or crushed emery as abrasive aggregate; rustproof and non-glazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
- C. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A-615, Grade 60, unless noted otherwise.

#### 2.05 PAINT

- A. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead and chromate-free, universal modified alkyd primer selected for good resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with finish paint systems indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure complying with performance requirements of FS TT-P-664.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc dust content paint for reglazing welds in galvanized steel, with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035 or SSPC-Paint-20.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-Paint 12 except containing no asbestos fibers.

#### 2.06 FABRICATION - GENERAL

- A. Form metal fabrications from materials of size, thickness, and shapes indicated but not less than that needed to comply with performance requirements indicated. Work to dimensions indicated or accepted on shop drawings, using proven details of fabrication and support. Use type of materials indicated or specified for various components of each metal fabrication.
- B. Allow for thermal movement resulting from the following maximum change (range) of exterior metalwork in ambient temperature in the design, fabrication, and installation of installed metal assemblies to prevent buckling, opening up of joints, and overstressing of welds and fasteners. Base design calculations on actual surface temperatures of metals due to both solar heat gain and nighttime sky heat loss. Temperature Change (Range): 120 Degrees F., ambient; 130 degrees F., material surfaces.



- C. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners wherever possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flathead (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- D. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with AWS recommendations and the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so that no roughness shows after finishing and contour
- E. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space anchoring devices to provide adequate support for intended use.
- F. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Cut, reinforce, drill and tap miscellaneous metal work as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water, or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

#### 2.07 ROUGH HARDWARE

- A. Furnish bent or otherwise custom fabricated bolts, plates, anchors, hangers, dowels, and other miscellaneous steel and iron shapes as required for framing and supporting woodwork, and for anchoring or securing woodwork to concrete or other structures. Fabricate items to sizes, shapes, and dimensions required. Furnish malleable-iron washers for heads and nuts which bear on wood structural connections; elsewhere, furnish steel washers.

#### 2.08 STEEL LADDERS

- A. General: Fabricate ladders for the locations shown, with dimensions, spacings, and anchorages as indicated. Comply with requirements of ANSI A14.3.
- B. Siderails: Continuous, steel, 1/2" x 2-1/2" flat bars, with eased edges, space 18" apart.
- C. Bar Rungs: 3/4" diameter steel bars, spaced 12" o.c.
- D. Fit rungs in centerline of side rails, plug weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
- E. Support each ladder at top and bottom and at intermediate points space not more than 5' o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
- F. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating the rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive, or by using a type of manufacture rung that is filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
- G. Provide ladder safety cages where required by local codes, to comply with ANSI A14.3.

#### 2.09 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose structural steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Hot-dipped galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
- C. Size loose lintels for equal bearing of one inch per foot of clear span but not less than 8 inches bearing at each side of openings, if not indicated on Drawings.

#### 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports for applications indicated or which are not a part of structural steel framework, as required to complete work.

- B. Fabricate units to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and required to receive adjacent other construction retained by framing and supports. Fabricate from structural steel shapes, plates, and steel bars of welded construction using mitered joints for field connection. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.
  - 1. Equip units with integrally welded anchors for casting into concrete or building into masonry. Furnish inserts if units must be installed after concrete is placed. Spacing of anchors shall not be more than 24" o.c.

#### 2.11 PIPE BOLLARDS

- A. ASTM A153 galvanized schedule 40 steel pipe with concrete fill, as detailed on Drawings. Provide smooth radius for concrete top to prevent accumulation of rainwater. Provide field painted finish.

#### 2.12 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Provide shapes and sizes indicated for profiles shown. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from structural steel shapes, plates, and steel bars, with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Use concealed field splices wherever possible. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as required for coordination of assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports in exterior locations and where shown to be painted.

#### 2.13 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for "Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to application and designations of finishes. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

#### 2.14 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: For those items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc-coating by the hot-dip process in compliance with the following requirements:
  - 1. ASTM A-153 for galvanizing iron and steel hardware.
  - 2. ASTM A-123 for galvanizing both fabricated and unfabricated iron and steel products made of uncoated rolled, pressed, and forged shapes, plates, bars, and strip 0.0299 inch thick and heavier.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications: Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP3 "Power Tool Cleaning".
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finish or to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements of SSPC-PA1 "Paint Application Specification No. 1" for shop painting. Stripe paint all edges, corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages, including concrete inserts, sleeves, anchor bolts, and miscellaneous items having integral anchors that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to project site.
- B. Set sleeves in concrete with tops flush with finish surface elevations; protect sleeves from water and concrete entry.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing miscellaneous metal fabrications to in-place construction; include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through-bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors as required.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installation of miscellaneous metal fabrications. Set metal fabrication accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- C. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete masonry or similar construction.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with AWS Code for procedures of manual shielded metal-arc welding, appearance and quality of welds made, methods used in correctly welding work, and the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so that no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches those adjacent.

### 3.03 INSTALLING PIPE BOLLARDS

- A. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete. After bollards have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between bollard and sleeve solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope group up approximately 1/8" toward bollard.
- B. Paint bollards yellow in front of dumpsters.

### 3.04 TOUCH-UP PAINTING: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA1 requirements for touch-up of field painted surfaces.

- A. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. For galvanized surfaces clean welds, bolted connections and abraded areas and apply galvanizing repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05500

## SECTION 05520

### HANDRAILS AND RAILINGS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Steel pipe, tube handrails, balusters, and fittings.

##### 1.02 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Railing assembly, wall rails, and attachments to resist lateral force of 75 lbs. at any point without damage or permanent set.

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate profiles, sizes, connection attachments, anchorage, size and type of fasteners, and accessories.

##### 1.04 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 STEEL RAILING SYSTEM

- A. Rails and Posts: As detailed and indicated on the drawings.
- B. Fittings: Elbows, T-shapes, wall brackets, escutcheons; machined steel.
- C. Mounting: Adjustable brackets and flanges, with steel inserts for casting in concrete and/or steel brackets for embedding in masonry. Prepare backing plate for mounting in wall construction.
- D. Exposed Fasteners: Flush countersunk screws or bolts; consistent with design of railing.
- E. Splice Connectors: Steel concealed spigots, welding collars.

##### 2.02 FABRICATION

- A. Fit and shop assemble components in largest practical sizes, for delivery to site.
- B. Fabricate components with joints tightly fitted and secured.
- C. Exposed Mechanical Fastenings: Flush countersunk screws or bolts; unobtrusively located; consistent with design of component, except where specifically noted otherwise.
- D. Supply components required for anchorage of fabrications. Fabricate anchors and related components of same material and finish as fabrication, except where specifically noted otherwise.
- E. Continuously seal joined pieces by continuous welds.
- F. Grind exposed joints flush and smooth with adjacent finish surface. Make exposed joints butt tight, flush, and hairline. Ease exposed edges to small uniform radius.
- G. Accurately form components to suit stairs and landings, to each other and to building structure.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive work.
- B. Beginning of installation means erector accepts existing conditions.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and strip primed steel items to bare metal where site welding is required.
- B. Supply items required to be cast into concrete and/or embedded in masonry, placed in partitions with setting templates, to appropriate Sections.

##### 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install components plumb and level, accurately fitted, free from distortion or defects.
- C. Provide anchors, plates angles required for connecting railings to structure. Anchor railing to structure.
- D. Field weld anchors as indicated on Drawings. Touch-up welds with primer. Grind welds smooth.
- E. Conceal bolts and screws whenever possible. Where not concealed, use flush countersunk fastenings.

- 3.04 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/4 inch per story, non-cumulative.
  - B. Maximum Offset From True Alignment: 1/4 inch.

END OF SECTION 05520

## SECTION 05 73 13

### ORNAMENTAL GLASS RAILING

#### PART 1 -- GENERAL

##### Section 1.01 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Fabricate and install pre-engineered, component-based, ornamental glass panel railing system in accordance with the requirements set forth in this section.
- B. Railing system shall be ICON as manufactured by LIVERS BRONZE CO.

##### Section 1.02 ADDITIONAL WORK INCLUDED IN THIS SECTION

- A. Reinforcing for wall rail brackets at dry wall partitions – supplied and installed by General Contractor.
- B. Field measuring for weld plates, sleeves and insert locations by railing installer.
- C. Field measuring by railing installer.
- D. Anchors or inserts for terrazzo or precast concrete by subcontractor.  
*The following items are not to be included in the metal rail contractor's work:*
  - *Temporary shoring or bracing, Demolition and removal of existing work*
  - *Clean up of existing construction prior to installation of railings, Cleaning out of stair wells*
  - *Cutting; preparation of pockets; setting of plates, inserts, hardware or any other built ins*
  - *Temporary lights and electricity, Temporary safety rails after erection,*
  - *Field painting, Final cleaning and protection of wood, aluminum, stainless steel, bronze and glass*

##### Section 1.03 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED IN OTHER SECTIONS

- A. Section 03 30 00: Cast-in-Place Concrete
- B. Section 03 40 00: Precast Concrete
- C. Section 03 62 00: Non-Shrink Grouting
- D. Section 03 63 00: Epoxy Grouting
- E. Section 04 20 00: Unit Masonry
- F. Section 04 40 00: Stone Assemblies
- G. Section 05 12 00: Structural Steel Framing
- H. Section 05 51 00; Metal Stairs
- I. Section 05 52 00; Metal Railings
- J. Section 05 71 00; Decorative Metal Stairs
- K. Section 08 80 00: Glazing
- L. Section 09 20 00: Plaster and Gypsum Board Assemblies
- M. Section 09 30 00: Tiling
- N. Section 09 65 00: Resilient Flooring
- O. Section 09 68 00: Carpeting
- P. Section 09 90 00: Painting and Coating

##### Section 1.04 STRUCTURAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Railing assembly shall withstand a minimum concentrated load of 200 pounds applied vertically downward or horizontally in any direction, but not simultaneously, at any point on the top rail.  
Codes may vary in method of application and magnitude of load. Governing code should be checked for specific requirements.

##### Section 1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Furnish references listing projects of similar size and scope  
If special or unusual capabilities are required they should be set forth here.
- B. Installer Qualifications  
State as required in 1.05.A or state specific qualifications required.

### C. Regulatory Requirements

1. Components and installation are to be in accordance with state and local code authorities
2. Components and installation are to follow current ADA and ICC/ANSI A117.1 guidelines.  
Determine code regulations that govern this work. Specify requirements and drawings that are necessary to meet governing codes. Specify code and year of code.

### Section 1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data under provisions of General Conditions. Including description of materials, components, fabrication, finishes.
- B. Submit manufacturer's shop drawings, including plans, elevations, sections, and details, indicating materials, components, sizes, dimensions, tolerances, hardware, fasteners, finishes, options, accessories, and installation. Show details of attaching railing system to supports.
- C. Submit manufacturer's samples of standard materials, finishes, colors, and textures.
- D. Test Reports: Submit test reports indicating compliance with ASTM E985.
- E. Manufacturers Quality Assurance: Submit manufacturer's certification that materials comply with specified requirements and are suitable for the intended application. Submit certification that the manufacturer has not less than 5 years' experience producing the product specified in this section. The manufacturer or an approved installer will do the installation of this product.
- F. Maintenance Instructions: Submit manufacturer's maintenance and cleaning instructions.
- G. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty.
- H. Certificates:
  - a. Furnish manufacturer's certification that materials meet specification requirements.
- I. Substitutions:
  1. Submit the following with the substitution request.
    - a. Detailed specifications of construction and fabrication

### Section 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to the job site in good condition and properly protected against damage to finished surfaces.
- B. Storage on site:
  1. Store material in a location and in a manner to avoid damage. Stacking shall be done in a way, which will prevent bending.
  2. Store material in a clean, dry location away from uncured concrete and masonry. Cover with waterproof paper, tarpaulin, or polyethylene sheeting in a manner that will permit circulation of air inside the covering.
  3. Keep handling on site to a minimum. Exercise particular care to avoid damage to finishes of material.

## PART 2 -- PRODUCTS

### Section 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER

- A. Railing system shall be ICON as manufactured by LIVERS BRONZE CO. Phone: 816-300-2828. Fax: 816-300-0864. Web site: [www.liversbronze.com](http://www.liversbronze.com). E-mail: [livers@liversbronze.com](mailto:livers@liversbronze.com)
- B. Other Railing Systems, Manufacturers, Installers shall submit information for approval prior to bidding.

### Section 2.02 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

- A. Stainless Steel: Type 304
  1. Finish: Brushed, Ornamental Grade.
- E. Glass:
  1. Fully tempered ASTM C 1048 Kind FT quality q3 conforming to the safety requirements of ANSI Z97.1.

### Section 2.03 RAILING SYSTEM

- A. Material shall conform to 2.02. and be finished in accordance with 2.02.
- B. Railing system shall Livers Bronze Co. ICON Railing system.
- C. Rails: Fabricate rails from stainless steel
- D. Posts: Fabricate posts from stainless steel  
Posts to be side or top mounted to ½” embedded steel plate (by steel trade) or steel stringer. Posts to be spaced at 48” o.c. maximum.
- E. Glass infill shall be 3/8” tempered glass, conform to the safety requirements of ANSI Z97.1.
- F. Fittings: Shall be aluminum and stainless steel.

### Section 2.04 FASTENERS

- A. All mechanical fasteners used in the assembly of stainless steel railings shall be manufactured from stainless steel.
- B. Exposed mechanical fasteners for use with bronze materials shall be manufactured from yellow brass.
- C. Cement: Hydraulic, ASTM C 595, factory prepared with accelerator.

### Section 2.05 HANDRAIL BRACKETS

- A. Stainless steel – fabricators standard bracket for product specified.

### Section 2.06 FABRICATION

- A. All metal fabrication to be performed by a single source fabricator.

## PART 3 -- EXECUTION

### Section 3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Supply items to be cast in concrete. These items are to be shown on shop drawings if provided by the fabricator.

### Section 3.02 METAL INTERACTION

- A. When bronze and aluminum components come into contact with dissimilar metals, surfaces shall be kept from direct contact by painting the dissimilar metal with [a heavy coat of a proper primer] [asphalt paint].
- B. When aluminum components come into contact with cement or lime mortar, exposed aluminum surfaces shall be painted with [heavy bodied bituminous paint] [water-white methacrylate lacquer] [zinc chromate].

### Section 3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with shop drawings [and manufacturer’s instructions] at locations indicated on the drawings.
- B. Erect work [square and level,] [horizontal or parallel to rake of steps or ramp,] rigid, [and] free from distortion or defects detrimental to appearance or performance.
- C. Expansion joints shall be provided as needed to allow for thermal expansion or contraction.

### Section 3.04 CLEANING

- A. As installation is completed, wash thoroughly using clean water and soap; rinse with clean water.
- B. Do not use acid solution, steel wool or other harsh abrasives.

### Section 3.05 REPAIR OF DEFECTIVE WORK

- A. Remove stained or otherwise defective work and replace with material that meets specification requirements.
- B. Repair damaged finish as directed by Architect



C. Replace defective or damaged components as directed by Architect.  
END OF SECTION

## SECTION 06100

### ROUGH CARPENTRY

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  1. Framing with dimension lumber.
  2. Framing with timber.
  3. Framing with engineered wood products.
  4. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  5. Utility shelving.
  6. Wood furring.
  7. Sheathing.
  8. Subflooring and underlayment.
  9. Plywood backing panels.
  10. Building wrap.

##### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations for Engineered Wood Products: Obtain each type of engineered wood product through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Obtain each type of fire-retardant-treated wood product through one source from a single producer.

##### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels; place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of lumber grading agencies certified by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
  1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
  3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Engineered Wood Products: Provide engineered wood products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  1. Allowable Design Stresses: Provide engineered wood products with allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

- C. Wood Structural Panels:
    1. Plywood: DOC PS 1.
    2. Oriented Strand Board: DOC PS 2.
    3. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified but not less than thickness indicated.
    4. Comply with "Code Plus" provisions in APA Form No. E30K, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial."
    5. Factory mark panels according to indicated standard.
- 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS
- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A C2 lumber except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWP A C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
    1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and one of the following:
      - a. Chromated copper arsenate (CCA).
      - b. Ammoniacal copper zinc arsenate (ACZA).
      - c. Ammoniacal, or amine, copper quat (ACQ).
      - d. Copper bis (dimethyldithiocarbamate) (CDDC).
      - e. Ammoniacal copper citrate (CC).
      - f. Copper azole, Type A (CBA-A).
      - g. Oxine copper (copper-8-quinolinolate) in a light petroleum solvent.
    2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
  - B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 15 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
  - C. Mark each treated item with the treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
  - D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
    1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
    2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
    3. Wood framing members less than 18 inches above grade.
    4. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs directly in contact with earth.
- 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS
- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, provide materials that comply with performance requirements in AWP A C20 lumber and AWP A C27 plywood. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    1. Use treatment for which chemical manufacturer publishes physical properties of treated wood after exposure to elevated temperatures, when tested by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664, for lumber and ASTM D 5516, for plywood
    2. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
    3. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
    4. Use Interior Type A High Temperature (HT), unless otherwise indicated.
  - B. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- 2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER
- A. General: Provide dimension lumber of grades indicated according to the American Lumber Standards Committee National Grading Rule provisions of the grading agency indicated.
  - B. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction, Stud, or No. 2 grade.
  - C. Exterior and Load-Bearing Walls Construction or No. 2 grade.
  - D. Ceiling Joists (Non-Load-Bearing): Construction or No. 2 grade.
  - E. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: Construction or No. 1 grade.
- 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER
- A. General: Provide lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
    1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
    2. Blocking.

3. Cants.
  4. Nailers.
  5. Furring.
  6. Grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction, Stud, or No. 2 grade lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.
  - C. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.
  - D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content.
  - E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.
- 2.6 ENGINEERED WOOD PRODUCTS
- A. Veneer Lumber: A composite of wood veneers with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
  - B. Parallel-Strand Lumber: A composite of wood strand elements with grain primarily parallel to member lengths, manufactured with an exterior-type adhesive complying with ASTM D 2559.
  - C. Wood I-Joists: Prefabricated units complying with APA PRI-400; depths and performance ratings not less than those indicated.
  - D. Rim Boards: Performance-rated product complying with APA PRR-401.
- 2.7 SHEATHING
- A. Reference drawings, the following are minimums where sheathing is not noted on drawings.
  - B. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
    1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
    2. Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.
  - C. Oriented-Strand-Board Wall Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
    1. Span Rating: Not less than 24/0.
    2. Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.
  - D. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
    1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Dens-Glass Gold" by G-P Gypsum Corp.
    2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 5/8 inch thick.
    3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.
  - E. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior, Structural I sheathing.
    1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
    2. Thickness: Not less than 5/8 inch.
  - F. Oriented-Strand-Board Roof Sheathing: Exposure 1, Structural I sheathing.
    1. Span Rating: Not less than 32/16.
    2. Thickness: Not less than 5/8 inch.
- 2.8 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS
- A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inch thick.
- 2.9 FASTENERS
- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
    1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
  - B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
  - C. Power-Driven Fasteners: CABO NER-272.
  - D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
  - E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
  - F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
  - G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
    1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.10 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. General: Provide framing anchors made from metal indicated, of structural capacity, type, and size indicated, and as follows:
  1. Research/Evaluation Reports: Provide products acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which model code research/evaluation reports exist that show compliance of metal framing anchors, for application indicated, with building code in effect for Project.
  2. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- B. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- D. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with **2-inch-** long seat and **1-1/4-inch-** wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.
  1. Thickness: **0.050 inch.**
- E. I-Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with **2-inch-** long seat and **1-1/4-inch-** wide nailing flanges full depth of joist. Nailing flanges provide lateral support at joist top chord.
  1. Thickness: **0.050 inch.**
- F. Top Flange Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers, full depth of joist, formed from metal strap with tabs bent to extend over and be fastened to supporting member.
  1. Strap Width: **1-1/2 inches.**
  2. Thickness: **0.050 inch.**
- G. Bridging: Rigid, V-section, nailless type, **0.062 inch** thick, length to suit joist size and spacing.
- H. Post Bases: Adjustable-socket type for bolting in place with standoff plate to raise post **1 inch** above base and with **2-inch-** minimum side cover, socket **0.062 inch** thick, and standoff and adjustment plates **0.108 inch** thick.
- I. Joist Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying joists together over supports.
  1. Width: **3/4 inch.**
  2. Thickness: **0.050 inch.**
  3. Length: **16 inches.**
- J. Rafter Tie-Downs: Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, **1-1/2 inches** wide by **0.050 inch** thick. Tie fastens to side of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- K. Rafter Tie-Downs (Hurricane or Seismic Ties): Bent strap tie for fastening rafters or roof trusses to wall studs below, **2-1/4 inches** wide by **0.062 inch** thick. Tie fits over top of rafter or truss and fastens to both sides of rafter or truss, face of top plates, and side of stud below.
- L. Floor-to-Floor Ties: Flat straps, with holes for fasteners, for tying upper floor wall studs to band joists and lower floor studs, **1-1/4 inches** wide by **0.050 inch** thick by **36 inches** long.
- M. Hold-Downs: Brackets for bolting to wall studs and securing to foundation walls with anchor bolts or to other hold-downs with threaded rods and designed with first of two bolts placed seven bolt diameters from reinforced base.
- N. Wall Bracing: T-shaped bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, **1-1/8 inches** wide by **9/16 inch** deep by **0.034 inch** thick with hemmed edges.
- O. Wall Bracing: Angle bracing made for letting into studs in saw kerf, **15/16 by 15/16 by 0.040 inch** thick with hemmed edges.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Building Paper: Asphalt-saturated organic felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), unperforated.
- B. Building Wrap: Air-retarder sheeting made from polyolefins; cross-laminated films, woven strands, or spun-bonded fibers; coated or uncoated; with or without perforations; and complying with ASTM E 1677, Type I.
  1. Thickness: Not less than **3 mils**
  2. Permeance: Not less than **10 perms**
  3. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less per ASTM E 84.
  4. Allowable Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
- C. Building Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

- D. Sheathing Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape for sealing joints and penetrations in sheathing and recommended by sheathing manufacturer for use with type of sheathing required.
- E. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; **1-inch** nominal thickness, compressible to **1/32 inch**; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- F. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, **1/4 inch** thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- G. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by both adhesive and panel manufacturers.
- H. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of rough carpentry or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- C. Apply field treatment complying with AWP A M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.
- D. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  1. CABO NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  2. Published requirements of metal framing anchor manufacturer.
  3. Table 23-II-B-1, "Nailing Schedule," and Table 23-II-B-2, "Wood Structural Panel Roof Sheathing Nailing Schedule," in the Uniform Building Code.
  4. Table 2305.2, "Fastening Schedule," in the BOCA National Building Code.
  5. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the Standard Building Code.
  6. Table 602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table 602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the International One- and Two-Family Dwelling Code.
- E. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; predrill as required.
- F. Use finishing nails for exposed work, unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

### 3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. Build anchor bolts into masonry during installation of masonry work. Where possible, secure anchor bolts to formwork before concrete placement.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### 3.3 WOOD FRAMING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AFPA's "Manual for Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Do not splice structural members between supports.
- D. Where built-up beams or girders of **2-inch nominal**- dimension lumber on edge are required, fasten together with 2 rows of **20d** nails spaced not less than **32 inches** o.c. Locate one row near top edge and other near bottom edge.

### 3.4 WALL AND PARTITION FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Arrange studs so wide face of stud is perpendicular to direction of wall or partition and narrow face is parallel. Provide single bottom plate and double top plates using members of **2-inch nominal** thickness whose widths equal that of studs, except single top plate may be used for non-load-bearing partitions. Anchor or nail plates to supporting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
1. For exterior walls, provide **2-by-4-inch nominal**- size wood studs spaced **16 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For interior partitions and walls, provide **2-by-4-inch nominal**-size wood studs spaced **16 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construct corners and intersections with three or more studs. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
1. Provide continuous horizontal blocking at midheight of partitions more than **96 inches** high, using members of **2-inch nominal** thickness and of same width as wall or partitions.
- C. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level and at ceiling line of top story. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted wood blocks of **2-inch nominal**- thick lumber of same width as framing members.
- D. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Set headers on edge and support on jamb studs.
1. For non-load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs with headers not less than **4-inch nominal** depth for openings **48 inches** and less in width, **6-inch nominal** depth for openings **48 to 72 inches** in width, **8-inch nominal** depth for openings **72 to 120 inches** in width, and not less than **10-inch nominal** depth for openings **10 to 12 feet** in width.
  2. For load-bearing walls, provide double-jamb studs for openings **72 inches** and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth indicated.
- E. Provide bracing in exterior walls, at both walls of each external corner, full-story height, unless otherwise indicated. Provide one of the following:
- F. Provide bracing in walls, at locations indicated, full-story height, unless otherwise indicated. Provide one of the following:
1. Diagonal bracing at 45-degree angle using let-in **1-by-4-inch nominal**- size boards.
  2. Diagonal bracing at 45-degree angle using metal bracing.
  3. Plywood panels not less than **48 by 96 inches** applied vertically.
  4. Oriented-strand-board panels not less than **48 by 96 inches** applied vertically.
  5. Particleboard sheathing panels not less than **48 by 96 inches** applied vertically.
  6. In lieu of bracing at corners or at locations indicated, continuous gypsum sheathing may be provided in panels not less than **48 by 96 inches** applied vertically.
  7. In lieu of bracing at corners or at locations indicated, continuous fiberboard sheathing, intermediate type, may be provided in panels not less than **48 by 96 inches** applied vertically.

### 3.5 CEILING JOIST AND RAFTER FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Ceiling Joists: Install ceiling joists with crown edge up and complying with requirements specified above for floor joists. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
1. Where ceiling joists are at right angles to rafters, provide additional short joists parallel to rafters from wall plate to first joist; nail to ends of rafters and to top plate and nail to first joist or anchor with framing anchors or metal straps. Provide **1-by-8-inch nominal**- size or **2-by-4-inch nominal**- size stringers spaced **48 inches** o.c. crosswise over main ceiling joists.
- B. Rafters: Notch to fit exterior wall plates and use metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing, if any, and support with metal hangers. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
1. At valleys, provide double-valley rafters of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and **2 inches** deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafters.
  2. At hips, provide hip rafter of size indicated or, if not indicated, of same thickness as regular rafters and **2 inches** deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafter.
- C. Provide collar beams (ties) as indicated or, if not indicated, provide **1-by-6-inch nominal**-size boards between every third pair of rafters, but not more than **48 inches** o.c. Locate below ridge member, at third point of rafter span. Cut ends to fit roof slope and nail to rafters.
- D. Provide special framing as indicated for eaves, overhangs, dormers, and similar conditions, if any.

### 3.6 FIBERBOARD SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten fiberboard sheathing panels to intermediate supports and then at edges and ends. Use galvanized roofing nails; comply with manufacturer's recommended spacing and referenced fastening

schedule. Drive fasteners flush with surface of sheathing and locate perimeter fasteners at least **3/8 inch** from edges and ends.

- B. Install sheathing vertically with long edges parallel to, and centered over, studs. Install solid wood blocking where end joints do not occur over framing. Allow **1/8-inch** open space between edges and ends of adjacent units. Stagger horizontal joints, if any.
- C. Cover sheathing as soon as practical after installation to prevent deterioration from wetting.

### 3.7 BUILDING PAPER APPLICATION

- A. Apply building paper horizontally with **2-inch** overlap and **6-inch** end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails. Cover upstanding flashing with **4-inch** overlap.

### 3.8 BUILDING WRAP APPLICATION

- A. Cover wall sheathing with building wrap as indicated.
  1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Cover upstanding flashing with **4-inch** overlap.
  3. Seal seams, edges, and penetrations with tape.
  4. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### 3.9 SHEATHING TAPE APPLICATION

- A. Apply sheathing tape to joints between sheathing panels and at items penetrating sheathing. Apply at upstanding flashing to overlap both flashing and sheathing.

END OF SECTION 06100





## SECTION 06112

### SHEATHING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. **Exterior Fire-retardant treated plywood sheathing**
- B. Telephone and electrical panel boards.

##### 1.02 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Protect sheathing from warping or other distortion by stacking.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 SHEATHING MATERIALS

- A. **Exterior Fire-Retardant Treated Wall Sheathing** – Used at new Roof Penthouse Structures and existing exterior building infills (windows, entries, etc)
  - 1. Plywood (per structural drawings)
    - a) Fire-retardant treated
    - b) Approved Manufacturers: Hoover Treated Wood Products, Flameproof Companies, Koppers FlamePRO (Substitutions can be submitted to architect for approval).

##### 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors:
  - 1. Drywall Screws: Bugle head, hardened steel, power driven type, length three times thickness of sheathing, galvanized. Reference requirements of Section 05400 Cold-Formed Framing.
  - 2. Anchors: Toggle bolt type for anchorage to hollow masonry. Expansion shield and lag bolt type for anchorage to solid masonry or concrete. Bolt or ballistic fastener for anchorages to steel.
- B. Weather Barrier: Roll applied membrane, reference section 07141 Cold Fluid Applied Waterproofing.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 FRAMING

- A. Set structural members level and plumb, in correct position.
- B. Make provisions for erection loads, and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure safe, plumb, and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- C. Place horizontal members flat, crown side up.
- D. Construct load bearing framing and curb members full length without splices.

##### 3.02 SHEATHING

- A. Secure wall sheathing with long dimension perpendicular to wall studs, with ends over firm bearing and staggered.
- B. All joints shall be taped and cold fluid applied waterproofing installed per manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Install telephone and electrical panel boards with plywood sheathing material where required. Oversize the panel by 12 on all sides.

##### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch from true position, maximum.
- B. Surface Flatness of Floor: 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum, and 1/2 inch maximum in 30 feet.

END OF SECTION 06112



## SECTION 06114

### WOOD BLOCKING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Roof curbs and cants.
- B. Blocking in wall and roof openings.
- C. Wood furring and grounds.
- D. Concealed wood blocking for support of toilet and bath accessories, wall cabinets, and wood trim.
- E. Telephone and electrical panel boards.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Blocking: Minimum stud grade.
- B. Plywood: APA Rated Sheathing, Grade C-D; Exposure Durability 1; sanded.

##### 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors:
  - 1. Fasteners: Hot-dipped galvanized steel for high humidity and treated wood locations, unfinished steel elsewhere.
  - 2. Anchors: Toggle bolt type for anchorage to hollow masonry. Expansion shield and lag bolt type for anchorage to solid masonry or concrete. Bolt or ballistic fastener for anchorages to steel.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 FRAMING

- A. Set members level and plumb, in correct position.
- B. Place horizontal members flat, crown side up.
- C. Space framing and furring 16 inches o.c.

##### 3.02 SHEATHING

- A. Secure sheathing to framing members with ends over firm bearing and staggered.
- B. Install telephone and electrical panel boards with plywood sheathing material where required. Over size the panel by 12 inches on all sides.

END OF SECTION 06114



## SECTION 06200

### FINISH CARPENTRY

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Finish carpentry items, other than shop prefabricated casework.
- B. Hardware and attachment accessories.

##### 1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with AWI Custom.

##### 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Protect work from moisture damage.

##### 1.04 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings and as instructed by the manufacturer.

##### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with plumbing and electrical rough-in, and installation of associated and adjacent components.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 LUMBER MATERIALS

- A. Softwood Lumber: PS 20; Graded in accordance with AWI Custom; maximum moisture content of 6 percent; suitable for prime and paint.
- B. Hardwood Lumber: Graded in accordance with AWI prime and paint.

##### 2.02 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Exterior Plywood: Exposed to weather shall be group 1, Exterior type, Grade A-B or A-C as required for exposure.
- B. Interior Plywood: Interior or Exterior type, Group 1 or 2, Grade B-D where concealed, Grade A-C one side exposed and Grade A-A two sides exposed.
- C. Wood Particleboard: ANSI A208.1 Type 1; AWI standard, composed of wood chips, medium density, made with high waterproof resin binders; of grade to suit application; sanded faces.

##### 2.03 FASTENERS

- A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application; galvanized finish in concealed locations and brass or chrome finish in exposed locations.

##### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate to AWI Custom standards.
- B. Shop assemble work for delivery to site, permitting passage through building openings.
- C. Fit exposed sheet material edges with 3/8 inch matching hardwood edging. Use one piece for full length only.
- D. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.

##### 2.05 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.
- C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler which matches surrounding surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.
- D. Seal, stain, and varnish exposed to view surfaces. Brush apply only.
- E. Prime paint. Seal surfaces in contact with cementitious materials.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI Custom Quality Standard.
- B. Set and secure materials and components in place, plumb, and level.
- C. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.
- D. Install components trim with nails, screws, bolts with blind fasteners or wall adhesive by gun application.
- E. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.03 SITE APPLIED WOOD TREATMENT

- A. Apply preservative treatment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Brush apply two coats of preservative treatment on wood in contact with cementitious materials, roofing and related metal flashings. Treat site-sawn cuts.
- C. Allow preservative to dry prior to erecting members.

### 3.04 PREPARATION FOR SITE FINISHING

- A. Site Finishing: Refer to Section 09900.
- B. Before installation, prime paint surfaces of items or assemblies to be in contact with cementitious materials.

### 3.05 SCHEDULE

- A. Interior:
  - 1. Trim: Primed and painted.
  - 2. Loose Shelving: Melamine finished, color to be selected.
  - 3. Window Sills: Primed and painted.
  - 4. Wood Base: Primed and painted.
  - 5. Wood Light Valance, primed and painted.

END OF SECTION 06200

SECTION 06410

CUSTOM CASEWORK

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Countertops, base and wall cabinets for **Pele's Playground, Roof Top Bar & Public Restrooms.**
  - a. For casework relating to Apartments/Lofts, reference Section 12356 Residential Kitchen & Bath Casework
- B. Cabinet hardware.
- C. Prefinished surfaces and preparation for site finishing.
- D. Preparation for installing utilities.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, component profiles and elevations, assembly methods, joint details, fastening methods, accessory listings, hardware location, and schedule of finishes.

1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years' documented experience.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store and handle products to site.
- B. Protect units from moisture damage.

1.05 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as on shop drawings.

1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with plumbing and electrical rough-in.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Salina Planning Mill.
- B. Crestwood Inc.
- C. Timberline Cabinetry & Millwork
- D. Technique Manufacturing
- E. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Softwood Lumber: FS MM-L-736; graded in accordance with AWI Premium Grade; average moisture content of 6 percent; species and grade as follows: Select White Birch. Edging & trim where indicated and detailed.

2.3 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Hardwood Plywood: S 51; graded in accordance with AWI, core materials of veneer, and lumber, type of glue recommended for application; face veneer and cuts as follows:

ITEM	FACE SPECIES
Drawer 'Box' Construction	Melamine (unless noted otherwise) - Per AWI Premium Grade.
Door Construction	Plastic Laminate (u.n.o.) - Per AWI Premium Grade.
Cabinet 'Body' Construction unexposed	Plastic Laminate at exposed (u.n.o.). Melamine at (u.n.o.) - Per AWI Premium Grade.
Backs unexposed	Plastic Laminate at exposed (u.n.o.). Melamine at (u.n.o.) - Per AWI Premium Grade.



Shelving Melamine (u.n.o.) - Per AWI Premium Grade.

**(Note: Full line of colors for all melamine selected by architect/owner.)**

- B. High Performance particleboard Core:
1. Particleboard to be ¾" thick of 45 lb. Density, and balanced construction with moisture Content not to exceed 8%. All particleboards shall meet or exceed the requirements for its type and classification under Commercial Standard CS-236-66, Federal Specifications LLL-B-800A, and ASTM D 1037-78.
  2. Particleboard shall meet the following performance requirements. Submit compliance data from the manufacturer prior to fabrication:

Screw Holding, Face	471 lbs.
Modulus of Rupture	2,400 psi.
Modulus of Elasticity	450,000 psi.
Internal Bond	90 psi.
Surface Hardness	900 lbs.
- C. Hardboard: Hardboard shall meet or exceed Commercial Standards CS-251 and Federal Specifications LLL-B-00810. Tempered hardboard ¼" thick, smooth both sides.

#### 2.4 PLASTIC LAMINATE

- A. Approved Manufacturers: Wilsonart, Formica, Pionite or Nevamar.
- B. **Color(s) to be selected by architect/owner** from full line of all manufacturers including premium grade
- C. Plastic Laminate: AWI, 0.040 inch Post Forming 0.050 inch General Purpose quality; color, pattern, and surface texture as selected.
- D. Laminate Backing Sheet: 0.020 inch Backing Sheet grade, undecorated plastic laminate.

#### 2.5 QUARTZ & GRANITE

- 1. As selected by Architect/Owner.**

#### 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive: FS MMM-A-130 contact adhesive, type recommended by AWI and laminate manufacturer to suit application.
- B. Fasteners: Size and type to suit application.
- C. Bolts, Nuts, Washers, Lags, Pins, and Screws: Of size and type to suit application; approved finish in exposed locations.
- D. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.
- E. PVC Edge Band: 3mm Color and Pattern matched to plastic laminated face. Typical at all doors, drawers, and open cabinet edges.

#### 2.7 HARDWARE

- A. Hinges: Grass #3803 120° – nickel finish.
- B. Cabinet/Drawer Pulls: **As selected by architect/owner**
- C. Drawer Slides: Hafele, Accuride #3832SC.
- D. Adjustable shelf clips: Knape & Vogt, 3256 zinc finish.
- E. Cushion Bumpers: Hafele #356.21.428 – clear. Two on each door & drawer.
- F. "Recessed" Adjustable shelf standards: 5mm holes with satin nickel supports
- G. Grommets: Hafele, Series #429, full range colors. Locate per shop drawings review.
- H. Catches: Amerock, #9783 magnetic.

#### 2.10 FINISHING MATERIALS

- I. Stain, Varnish and Finishing Materials: As specified in Section 09900.

#### 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Shop assemble casework for delivery to site in units easily handled and to permit passage through building openings.
- B. Fit shelves, doors, and exposed edges with .3mm pvc. Pattern and color match to laminate cabinets. Use one piece for full length only.

- C. Cap exposed plastic laminate finish edges with material of same finish and pattern.
- D. Door and Drawer Fronts: 3/4 inch thick; overlay style.
- E. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.
- F. Apply plastic laminate finish in full uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Slightly bevel arrises. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet from sink cut-outs.
- G. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.
- H. Provide cutouts for plumbing fixtures, inserts, appliances, outlet boxes, fixtures and fittings. Verify locations of cutouts from on-site dimensions. Seal contact surfaces of cut edges.

#### 2.10 FINISHING

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.
- C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler, which matches surrounding surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.
- D. Seal, stain and varnish exposed to view surfaces.
- E. Seal, stain and varnish internal exposed to view and semi-concealed surfaces.
- F. Seal surfaces in contact with cementitious materials.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Set and secure casework in place; rigid, plumb, and level.
- B. Use fixture attachments in concealed locations for wall mounted components.
- C. Use concealed joint fasteners to align and secure adjoining cabinet units and counter tops.
- D. Carefully scribe casework abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch. Do not use additional overlay trim for this purpose.
- E. Secure cabinet and counter bases to floor using appropriate angles and anchorages.
- F. Countersink anchorage devices at exposed locations. Conceal with solid wood plugs of species to match surrounding wood; finish flush with surrounding surfaces.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving or operating parts to function smoothly and correctly.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean casework, counters, shelves, hardware, fittings and fixtures.

#### 3.5 SCHEDULE

- A. Adjustable shelving longer than 34" to be 1" thick.

END OF SECTION 06410



## SECTION 07141

### COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

#### PART - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Single-component polyurethane waterproofing.
  - 2. Insulation.
- B. Related Section:
  - 1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint-sealant materials and installation.
  - 2. Division 3 Concrete
  - 3. Division 4 Masonry

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate, technical data, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- D. Product Test Reports: For waterproofing, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that is acceptable to waterproofing manufacturer for installation of waterproofing required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain waterproofing materials, and protection course from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference between General Contractor and installing contractor at project site.
  - 1. Review waterproofing requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and flashings, installation procedures, testing and inspection procedures, and protection and repairs.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver liquid materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, shelf life, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer.
- C. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- D. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

##### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.
  - 1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog or mist, or when such weather conditions are imminent during application and curing period.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which waterproofing manufacturer agree to repair or replace waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failure includes, but is not limited to, failure of waterproofing due to failure of substrate prepared and treated according to requirements or formation of new joints and cracks in substrate that exceed 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in width.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - 3. Warranty includes removing and reinstalling protection board, drainage panels, insulation, pedestals, and pavers on plaza decks.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-COMPONENT POLYURETHANE WATERPROOFING

- A. Below Grade Application: Single-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: Comply with manufacturer's written physical requirements.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following.
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - c. Degussa Building Systems
    - d. Meadows, W.R., Inc.
    - e. Applied Technologies

### 2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials recommended by manufacturer to be compatible with one another and with waterproofing, as demonstrated by waterproofing manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Primer: Manufacturer's standard, factory-formulated polyurethane or epoxy primer.
- C. Sheet Flashing: 50-mil- (1.3-mm-) minimum, non-staining, uncured sheet neoprene.
  - 1. Adhesive: Manufacturer's recommended contact adhesive.

### 2.3 PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of molded-polystyrene board insulation faced both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm), with compressive strength not less than 12 psi (83 kPa) per ASTM D 1621 and water absorption by volume of less than 1 percent per ASTM C 272.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean and prepare substrate according to manufacturer's written recommendations. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for waterproofing application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage or overspray affecting other construction.

### 3.3 PREPARATION AT TERMINATIONS AND PENETRATIONS

- A. Prime substrate unless otherwise instructed by waterproofing manufacturer.
- B. Apply waterproofing in two separate applications, and embed a joint reinforcing strip in the first preparation coat when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.
  - 1. Provide sealant cants around penetrations and at inside corners of deck-to-wall butt joints when recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

### 3.4 WATERPROOFING APPLICATION

- A. Apply waterproofing according to [ASTM C 898] [ASTM C 1471] and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply primer over prepared substrate.
  - 1. Apply first coat of waterproofing, embed membrane-reinforcing fabric, and apply second coat of waterproofing to completely saturate reinforcing fabric and to obtain a seamless reinforced membrane free of entrapped gases, with an average dry film total thickness of 120 mils (3 mm).
  - 2. Apply reinforced waterproofing to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces.
  - 3. Verify wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).
- C. Install protection course with butted joints over nominally cured membrane before starting subsequent construction operations.
  - 1. Board insulation may be used in place of a separate protection course to vertical applications when approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

### 3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation drainage panels over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch of projections and penetrations.
- B. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive applied according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use type of adhesive recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a site representative qualified by the waterproofing membrane manufacturer to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, and application of the membrane, flashings, protection, and drainage components; and to furnish daily reports to Architect.

### 3.7 CURING, PROTECTION, AND CLEANING

- A. Cure waterproofing according to manufacturer's written recommendations, taking care to prevent contamination and damage during application stages and curing.
- B. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- C. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07141



## SECTION 07213

### BATT INSULATION

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Faced Batt insulation at exterior stud walls.
- B. Batt insulation for filling perimeter window and door shim spaces, crevices in exterior wall and roof.
- C. Non-Faced Sound batt insulation at interior walls, floors
- D. Vapor retarder.

##### 1.02 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C665 - Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Light Frame Construction and Manufactured Housing.
- B. ASTM E84 - Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

##### 1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Materials of This Section: Provide continuity of thermal barrier at building enclosure with thermal insulating materials in attic and walls. Overlap insulations to ensure complete thermal envelope at all exterior surfaces.

##### 1.04 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with all related Sections for installation of vapor retarder and other forms of insulation.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS - INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. OWENS-CORNING FIBERGLASS Product - thermal batt insulation.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.
- C. **Concealed insulation shall have a flame spread of 25 or less, and a smoke developed rating not to exceed 450, IBC 2018, 720.2**

##### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Batt Insulation, Walls: ASTM C665; preformed glass fiber batts; loose laid and taped, conforming to the following:
  - 1. Thermal Resistance: **R-21 & R-25 Batt Kraft-faced, reference drawings for locations.**  
Exterior walls/ceilings.
  - 2. Facing: Kraft Vapor Barrier
  - 3. Batt Sizes: 5-1/2"
- C. Sound Batt Insulation:
  - 1. Thermal Resistance: **R-11 & R-19**
  - 2. Batt size: 3-1/2" and 5-1/2"
  - 3. Facing: Unfaced
- D. Tape: Self-adhering type as recommended by the manufacturer, mesh reinforced, 2 inches wide.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify site conditions.
- B. Verify that substrate, adjacent materials, and insulation are dry and ready to be installed.

##### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install insulation and vapor retarder in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Trim insulation neatly to fit spaces. Insulate miscellaneous gaps and voids.
- C. Fit insulation tight in spaces and tight to exterior side of mechanical and electrical services within the plane of insulation.



- D. Install with applied vapor retarder membrane facing warm side of building spaces. Lap ends and side flanges of membrane, caulk or tape.
- E. Tape seal butt ends, lapped flanges, and tears or cuts in membrane.

- F. Place loose-fill insulation into spaces and onto surfaces as shown, either by pouring or by machine blowing to comply with ASTM C 1015. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
1. For cellulosic loose-fill insulation, comply with the Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association's Special Report #3, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."
  2. IECC 2015 installation requirements, follow all requirements and recommendations.

END OF SECTION 07213

SECTION 074213.23  
ALUMINUM COMPOSITE MATERIAL  
(ACM) SYSTEM SPECIFICATION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Design Based on - Omega-Lite material manufactured by Laminators Inc. – [www.laminatorsinc.com](http://www.laminatorsinc.com)**

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. An Aluminum Composite Material (ACM) Panel System includes ACM panels, joints, attachment system components and miscellaneous materials as appropriate for the design of the project to provide a weather-resistant exterior veneer system.
  - 2. A “Field-Fabricated” ACM Panel System is designed with components that permit the complete fabrication and installation of the system, in a single process in the field, without compromise to the overall quality and performance.
  - 3. “Back-Drained and Ventilated” (BD&V) performance is achieved with supporting sub-framing that prevents the collection of water, facilitates drainage, and promotes air flow behind the ACM Panel System of the exterior wall envelope.
- B. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior installation and performance of ACM panels and BD&V ACM Panel System components.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 03 – Concrete: Cast-In-Place Concrete
  - 2. Division 04 – Masonry: Unit Masonry
  - 3. Division 06 – Wood, Plastics, and Composites: Sheathing
  - 4. Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection: Thermal Insulation
  - 5. Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection: Weather Barriers
  - 6. Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection: Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
  - 7. Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection: Joint Sealants

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. General: Standards listed by reference, including revisions by issuing authority, form a part of this specification section to the extent indicated. Standards listed have either been identified by the International Building Code (IBC) or local building code or are specific requirements for this building construction type.
- B. Aluminum Association (AA):
  - 1. Aluminum Design Manual (ADM)
  - 2. AA-M12C23A31: Anodized – Clear Coating
  - 3. AA-M12C23A34: Anodized – Color Coating
- C. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
  - 1. AAMA 501.1 Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Using Dynamic Pressure
  - 2. AAMA 509 Voluntary Test and Classification Method for Drained and Back Ventilated Rain Screen Wall Cladding Systems
  - 3. AAMA 609 & 610 Cleaning and Maintenance Guide for Architecturally Finished Aluminum

#### 1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Performance Requirements:
  - 1. Provide installed BD&V ACM Panel System designed to withstand project-specific design loads while maintaining System Requirements; Deflection and Thermal Movement; and Fire Performance without defects, damage, or failure as defined by the Manufacturer and required by this section.
- B. System Requirements:
  - 1. AAMA 509 Voluntary Test and Classification Method for Drained and Back Ventilated Rain Screen Wall Cladding Systems
    - a. ASTM E283 Standard Test Method for Determining the Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen – The air flow measurement across the BD&V ACM Panel System (excluding jamb conditions) shall be measured to determine the V-axis classification on Chart 1b from AAMA 509.
- C. Deflection and Thermal Movement: Provide installed BD&V ACM Panel System that has been designed to resist to the project-specific wind loads, acting both inward and outward:
  - 1. Perimeter Framing Deflection: Deflection of the panel perimeter framing member shall not exceed  $L/175$  normal to plane of the wall, where L is the unsupported span of the perimeter framing member between fastener locations.
  - 2. Panel Deflection: Deflection of the panel face shall not exceed  $L/60$  normal to plane of the wall, where L is the unsupported span of the panel between load transfer locations.
  - 3. At 150% pressure, no permanent deformation exceeding  $L/1000$  or failure to structural members is permitted.
  - 4. Thermal Movements: Allow for free and noiseless horizontal and vertical thermal movement due to expansion and contraction of component parts over a temperature range of  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$  to  $+180^{\circ}\text{F}$  at the material surface.
    - a. Buckling, opening of joints, undue stress on fasteners, failure of sealants, or any other detrimental effects of thermal movement are not permitted.
    - b. Field-fabrication and installation procedures shall take into account the ambient temperature range at the time of the respective operation.
- D. Fire Performance: Wall assemblies containing BD&V ACM Panel System shall meet the requirements of NFPA 285 using the Intermediate-Scale Multi-Story Test Apparatus (ISMA), where required by code based on the design of this project.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Provide submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures Section as follows:
- B. Product Data: Submit material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of BD&V ACM Panel System.
- C. BD&V ACM Panel System:
  - 1. Submit system-specific design details including, but not limited to, ACM panel, molding, clip, adhesive, BD&V sub-framing, fastener, and sealant components.
  - 2. Submit design data including, but not limited to, material properties, section properties, and capacities for each BD&V ACM Panel System component. Design data shall be supported by a qualified Design Professional licensed in the state of primary research and development, design, and manufacturing of the BD&V ACM Panel System.
  - 3. Submit system guide information.
  - 4. Submit Shop Drawings indicating, but not limited to, elevations and reflected ceiling plans with joint locations and panel sizes; sections with thicknesses and dimensions of components; edge conditions; interfaces with dissimilar materials; corners and transitions; flashings, trims, venting, fasteners, sealants, caulks, and adhesives; accessories; and/or colors.

D. Samples:

1. Selected Samples: Submit Manufacturer's color charts or chips illustrating full range of colors, finishes, patterns, and textures available for ACM panels with factory-applied finishes. Custom color selection requires color sample to be submitted for approval. Approval signature(s) are required by **Architect**.
2. Verification Samples:
  - a. BD&V ACM Panel System assembly: Submit 11 inches x 11 inches, or size as required, demonstrating system assembly. Samples to be provided in thickness specified, including ACM panel, molding, clip, adhesive, BD&V sub-framing, fastener, and sealant components. Panel sample need not be provided in the specified color.
  - b. Submit two samples of each color or finish selected that measure approximately 3 inches x 4 inches, minimum.
  - c. Custom color samples may contain drawdown lines. Sizes for custom color samples may vary.

E. Quality Assurance Submittals:

1. BD&V ACM Panel System Certification: Submit an official written statement from the Manufacturer documenting that the BD&V ACM Panel System complies with specified Performance Requirements indicated in this specification. Certification shall be backed by test reports.

F. Closeout Submittals:

1. Warranty: Submit Manufacturer and Installer warranty documents as specified within the Warranty section of this specification.
2. Maintenance: Submit Manufacturer's recommendations document for Cleaning and Maintenance of the BD&V ACM Panel System.

## 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company with a minimum of 20 years of continuous experience manufacturing ACM panels in the United States of America of the type specified:
  - a. Able to provide specified warranty on finish.
  - b. Able to provide a list of other projects of similar size including approximate date of installation for each.
2. Installer Qualifications:
  - a. The Installer shall have:
    - i. Been in business of a similar trade and under the present company name for at least five (5) years prior to the start of this project, and
    - ii. Experience with similar sized ACM Panel System projects, and
    - iii. Installed at least three (3) successful projects of the specified ACM Panel System within the last five (5) years
      - 1) Acceptable, varying combinations of successful projects and/or years of experience shall be determined at the discretion of the Manufacturer.
  - b. The Installer must be capable of providing field service representation during installation.

B. Mock-Ups: Install a mock-up at the project jobsite using acceptable products and Manufacturer-approved details. Obtain **Owner & Architect's** acceptance of finish color (drawdown samples to be used for color approval of nonstandard coil coated colors), texture and pattern, and workmanship standard. Comply with Division 01 Quality Control, Mock-Up Requirements Section.

1. Mock-Up Size: Provide as detailed in the construction documents if a stand-alone Mock-Up is required.
2. Maintenance: Maintain mock-up during construction for workmanship comparison; remove and legally dispose of mock-up when no longer required.

C. Pre-installation Meeting: Conduct pre-installation meeting to verify project requirements, substrate conditions, and Manufacturer's installation details.

## 1.07 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Upon receipt, perform visual inspection of ACM panels and inventory to identify any damages that may have occurred during shipping or any missing panels.
- B. Storage:
  - 1. Store ACM panels horizontally on pallets in a dry, well-ventilated environment under the protection of a temporary or permanent structure. If required to be stored in an exterior area, ACM panels must be placed under a well-ventilated, waterproof covering.
  - 2. Store ACM panels a minimum of 4" above ground level to avoid contact with standing moisture (e.g. water, snow, etc.).
  - 3. Store ACM panels in an area protected from other construction activities and associated debris.
  - 4. Storage temperatures are not to exceed 120°F. Protect ACM panels from moisture and direct sunlight while on the job-site.
  - 5. Do not stack more than 1500 pounds of ACM panels on one pallet. Other materials shall not be stacked on, or placed in contact with, ACM panels to prevent staining, denting, or other damages.

## 1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Substrate Tolerances: The General Contractor is responsible for providing an acceptable substrate per Manufacturer's requirements including:
  - 1. Adjacent substrate faces out-of-plane offset: +/- 1/8 inch, and
  - 2. Level, plumb, and location control lines as indicated: 1/4 inch in any 20 feet, and
  - 3. Any building elevation direction deviation: +/- 1/2 inch
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of wall framing members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements prior to the field-fabrication of the BD&V ACM Panel System. Field measurements to be taken once all substrate materials and adjacent materials are installed.

## 1.09 WARRANTY

- A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
- B. ACM Manufacturer's Material Warranty: Submit, to the Owner, the Manufacturer's standard warranty.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. Material and Product Integrity: Five (5) years against delamination at any manufactured bond line
    - b. Coil-Coated PVDF/Kynar 500 Painted Finish: Thirty (30) years against:
      - i. Chalking in excess of a numerical rating of eight (8) when measured in accordance with ASTM D4214, Method A
      - ii. Fading or change color in excess of five (5) E units (NBS) when calculated in accordance with ASTM D2244, paragraph 6.3
      - iii. Cracking, chipping, splitting, blistering, peeling, or loss of adhesion. Minute fracturing (i.e. crazing or cracking) as a result of routing and bending of the ACM panels shall be excluded.
    - c. Spray-Applied PVDF/Kynar 500 Painted Finish: Five to Twenty (5-20) years against:
      - i. Chalking in excess of a numerical rating of eight (8) when measured in accordance with ASTM D4214, Method A
      - ii. Fading or change color in excess of five (5) E units (NBS) when calculated in accordance with ASTM D2244, paragraph 6.3
      - iii. Cracking, chipping, splitting, blistering, peeling, or loss of adhesion. Minute fracturing (i.e. crazing or cracking) as a result of routing and bending of the ACM panels shall be excluded.
- C. Installation Warranty: Installer shall submit to the Owner a standard warranty document executed by an authorized company official. The warranty shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. Workmanship: **One (1) year** warranty period commencing on Date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.01 ACM MANUFACTURERS AND FIELD-FABRICATED BD&V ACM PANEL SYSTEM SUPPLIERS

#### A. ACM Manufacturers:

1. **Omega-Lite material manufactured by Laminators Inc. – [www.laminatorsinc.com](http://www.laminatorsinc.com)**
2. Other ACM manufacturer who meets the requirements of this specification]

#### B. Field-Fabricated BD&V ACM Panel System Suppliers:

1. Laminators Inc. – [www.laminatorsinc.com](http://www.laminatorsinc.com)
2. Other Field-Fabricated BD&V ACM Panel System supplier who meets the requirements of this specification]

### 2.02 ALUMINUM COMPOSITE MATERIAL (ACM)

#### A. ACM Panel Description

1. Construction:
  - a. Two sheets of aluminum bonded to a core of extruded thermoplastic manufactured in a laminated batch (i.e. discontinuous) process using adhesive(s) between dissimilar materials. The core material shall not contain foam plastic insulation.
2. Thickness: 0.236 inch (6 mm)
3. Sheets:
  - a. Face Thickness: 0.020 inch nominal or thicker
  - b. Backer Thickness: 0.0125 inch nominal or thicker
  - c. Combined Minimum Thickness: 0.0365 inch nominal (Face + Backer)
4. Product:
  - a. On Type III Construction to any height above grade in accordance with the provisions of IBC Section 1407.12.
5. Bond Integrity:
  - a. ASTM D1781 Climbing Drum Peel Strength: 22.5 in-lb/in minimum as manufactured
  - b. Chemically-bonded to the core material in a laminated batch process

### 2.03 FINISH

#### A. Exterior Finish: Finish shall meet the performance criteria of AAMA 2605.

1. **Color to be selected by Architect**

### 2.04 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- #### A. General: Provide Manufacturer's standard BD&V ACM Panel System-specific components, including, but not limited to, mountings, adhesives, connections, and fasteners for specific applications indicated on contract documents.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLER INSTRUCTIONS

- #### A. Compliance: Comply with Manufacturer's product data, including, but not limited to, installation guides, design details, product technical bulletins, supplemental technical instructions, and any other product packaging instructions.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- #### A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify that conditions of substrate previously installed under other sections are acceptable for the BD&V ACM Panel System installation. Documentation should be provided indicating any conditions detrimental to the performance of the BD&V ACM Panel System.

### 3.03 FIELD-FABRICATED INSTALLATION

- A. Field measurements of site conditions shall be coordinated with approved Shop Drawings prior to beginning installation of the BD&V sub-framing for locations of intermediate adhesive supports, joints, and edge locations.
- B. Install BD&V ACM Panel System sub-framing according to Manufacturer's written instructions and drawings. Field-coordinate placement of BD&V sub-framing relative to substrate prior to placement of **moldings, joints**.
- C. Field-coordinate placement of **moldings, joints** relative to BD&V sub-framing prior to field-fabrication of panels.
- D. Field-fabricate panels to sizes and joint configurations indicated on approved Shop Drawings.
- E. Fabricate panels with sharply cut edges and no displacement of face or backer sheets or protrusion of core. Form panel angles, breaks, corners, lines, and returns to be sharp, true, and free of buckle and/or warp.
- F. Fabrication Tolerances:
  - 1. Width: +/- 1/16 inch
  - 2. Length: +/- 1/16 inch
  - 3. Squareness: +/- 1/16 inch
- G. Panel Installation:
  - 1. Handling:
    - a. Protective masking should be left on the field of each ACM panel during installation to minimize potential damages from construction activities. Note that all masking must be removed within 2 weeks of installation.
    - b. Handle ACM panels with clean work gloves to avoid hand injury from any sharp edges and to prevent staining of surfaces with contaminants.
    - c. When removing individual ACM panels from stacks, always lift one panel completely off the next to prevent surface scratches from construction debris. Do not slide one ACM panel across another. Glazing suction cups are recommended to handle ACM panels whenever possible.
  - 2. Install the BD&V ACM Panel System plumb, level, and true in accordance with Manufacturer's Installation Requirements and approved Shop Drawings.
  - 3. Comply with Manufacturer's instructions for installation of concealed fasteners; provisions of Section 079200; and recommendations for installation of joint sealants.
  - 4. Installation Tolerances:
    - a. Adjacent vertical or horizontal **molding, panel** out-of-plane offset: +/- 1/16 inch
    - b. **Panel edge shall not be exposed short of the finished face of molding. Vertical or horizontal joint width: +/- 1/16 inch**
    - c. Adjacent vertical or horizontal **molding, panel** edge alignment: +/- 1/16 inch
    - d. Adjacent vertical or horizontal joint intersection deviation: +/- 1/16 inch
    - e. Maximum vertical or horizontal joint intersection deviation: 1/4 inch in any 20 feet
  - 5. Do not cut, trim, weld, or braze BD&V ACM Panel System-specific components during installation in a manner which would damage the finish, decrease strength, or result in visual imperfection or a failure in performance.
  - 6. Separate contact of dissimilar metals with approved methods as defined by the Manufacturer in order to eliminate the possibility of corrosive or electrolytic action between metals.
- H. Related Products Installation Requirements: Refer to other sections in Related Sections paragraph herein for installation of related products.

### 3.05 FIELD QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Field Quality Control: When required, mock-up shall be constructed and tested at the direction of the **Owner & Architect**. Water-spray testing on the mock-up of the BD&V ACM Panel System shall be in accordance with AAMA 501.2.



### 3.06 REMEDIATION AND CLEANING

#### A. Remediation:

1. Remove and replace BD&V ACM Panel System-specific components damaged as a direct result of activities in the Panel Installation section.
2. Remove protective masking immediately after installation of BD&V ACM Panel System. Masking intentionally left in place after Panel Installation on an elevation at the direction of the General Contractor shall become the responsibility of the General Contractor.
3. Panel Installation completion shall be agreed-upon between the Installer and the General Contractor.
4. Following Panel Installation completion, any determination of repair or replacement of BD&V ACM Panel System-specific components is at the discretion of the Architect. Such repair or replacement shall become the responsibility of the General Contractor.
  - a. At the discretion of the Architect, repair damaged BD&V ACM Panel System components such that repairs are not discernible at a distance of 10 feet from the surface at a 90° angle per AAMA 2605.
5. Removal and replacement of BD&V ACM Panel System-specific components damaged by other trades shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.
6. If required after Panel Installation, any additional protection of the BD&V ACM Panel System shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.
7. Remove from project site damaged BD&V ACM Panel System-specific components, protective masking, and other debris attributable to work of this section.

#### B. Cleaning:

1. Final Cleaning shall not be part of the work of this section.
2. Cleaning and Maintenance of the BD&V ACM Panel System shall be performed at least once a year in accordance with AAMA 609 & 610.

END OF SECTION 074213.23



## SECTION 074243

### COMPOSITE WALL PANELS

#### Part I - General

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:

- A. Exterior, panelized fiber cement cladding system and accessories to complete a drained and back-ventilated rainscreen.
- B. Interior fiber cement panelized cladding system and accessories.

##### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 05 41 00 - Structural Metal Stud Framing
- B. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry
- C. Section 06 16 00 - Sheathing
- D. Section 07 20 00 - Thermal Protection
- E. Section 07 25 00 - Weather Barriers
- F. Section 07 60 00 - Flashing and Sheet Metal
- G. Section 07 90 00 - Joint Protection

##### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
  - 1. AAMA 509-14 – Voluntary Test and Classification Method of Drained and Back Ventilated Rain Screen Wall Cladding Systems
- B. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM C 518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.
  - 2. ASTM C 1185 - Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Non-Asbestos Fiber Cement.
    - a. ASTM C 1186 – Standard Specification for Flat Fiber-Cement Sheets.
  - 3. ASTM E-84 - Standard Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 4. ASTM E 119 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.
  - 5. ASTM E 228 - Standard Test Method for Linear Thermal Expansion of Solid Materials with a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer.
  - 6. ASTM E 330 - Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
  - 7. ASTM E 331 - Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.
- C. Florida Building Code - Test Protocol HVHZ
  - 1. Testing Application Standard (TAS) 202, 203 – HVHZ Test Procedures
- D. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
  - 1. NFPA 285 - Fire Test Method for Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Material.
  - 2. NFPA 268 – Ignition Resistance of Exterior Wall Assemblies.
- E. Standards Council of Canada & Underwriters Laboratories Canada (ULC):
  - 1. CAN/ULC S-102 – Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics.
  - 2. CAN/ULC S-134 – Standard Method of Fire Test of Exterior Wall Assembly.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 33 00.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product description, storage and handling requirements, and installation instructions.

C. Product Test Reports and Code Compliance: Documents demonstrating product compliance with local building code, such as test reports or Evaluation Reports from qualified, independent testing agencies.

D. LEED Credits: Provide documentation of LEED Credits for project certification under USGBC LEED 2009 (Version 3.0) or 2012 v.4.

E. Manufacturer's Details: Submit drawings (pdf format), including plans, sections, showing installation details that demonstrate product dimensions, edge/termination conditions/treatments, compression and control joints, corners, openings, and penetrations.

F. Samples: Submit samples of each product type proposed for use.

## **1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. All fiber cement panels specified in this section must be supplied by a manufacturer with a minimum of 10 years of experience in fabricating and supplying fiber cement cladding systems.

a. Products covered under this section are to be manufactured in an ISO 9001 certified facility.

2. Provide technical and design support as needed regarding installation requirements and warranty compliance provisions.

B. Installer Qualifications: All products listed in this section are to be installed by a single installer trained by manufacturer or representative.

C. Mock-Up Wall: Provide a mock-up wall as evaluation tool for product and installation workmanship.

D. Pre-Installation Meetings: Prior to beginning installation, conduct conference to verify and discuss substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions and warranty requirements, and project requirements.

## **1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

A. Panels must be stored flat and kept dry before installation. A waterproof cover over panels and accessories should be used at all times prior to installation. Do not stack pallets more than two high. Refer to the information included on each pallet.

B. If panels are exposed to water or water vapor prior to installation, allow to completely dry before installing. Failure to do so may result in panel shrinkage at ship lap joints, and such action may void warranty.

C. Panels MUST be carried on edge. Do not carry or lift panels flat. Improper handling may cause cracking or panel damage.

D. Direct contact between the panels and the ground should be avoided at all times. It is necessary to keep panels clean during installation process.

## **1.7 WARRANTY**

A. Provide manufacturer's 15-year warranty against manufactured defects in fiber cement panels. Additional 5-year extension available when refinished in year 14-15.

B. Provide manufacturer's 15-year warranty against manufactured defects in panel finish.

C. Warranty provides for the original purchaser. See warranty for detailed information on terms, conditions and limitations.

## **PART II: PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Nichiha Corporation, 18-19 Nishiki 2-chome Naka-ku, Nagoya, Aichi 460-8610, Japan.

B. Acceptable Manufacturer's Representative: Nichiha USA, Inc., 6465 E. Johns Crossing, Suite 250, Johns Creek, GA 30097. Toll free: 1.866.424.4421, Office: 770.805.9466, Fax: 770.805.9467, [www.nichiha.com](http://www.nichiha.com).

1. Basis of Design Product: Nichiha VintageWood.

- a. Profile colors: Bark, Cedar, Redwood, Ash, and Spruce. **To be selected by Architect**
- b. Profiles: Wood plank texture with three, 3/8" grooves running lengthwise, spaced 5-5/8" apart.
- c. Accessory/Component Options:
  - i. Manufactured Corners with 3-1/2" returns for each profile color.
  - ii. Aluminum trim options: Corner Key, Open Outside Corner, H-Mold, J-Mold, Compression Joint, Inside Corner
    - 1. Finish: Bark, Cedar, Clear Anodized, or Primed.
  - iii. Essential Flashing System: Starter, Overhang.
    - 1. Finish: Matte black.
- d. Dimensions:
  - 1. AWP-1818: 455mm (17-7/8") (h) x 1,818 mm (71-9/16") (l).
  - 2. AWP-3030: 455mm (17-7/8") (h) x 3,030 mm (119-5/16") (l).
- e. Panel Thickness: 16 mm (5/8").
- f. Weight: AWP-1818: 35.27 lbs. per panel, AWP-3030: 57.32 lbs. per panel.
- g. Coverage: 8.88 sq. ft. per panel (1818), 14.81 sq. ft. per panel (3030).
- h. Factory sealed on six [6] sides.

C. Substitutions: Not permitted

D. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 01 00.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Fiber cement panels manufactured from a pressed, stamped, and autoclaved mix of Portland cement, fly ash, silica, recycled rejects, and wood fiber bundles.
- B. Panel surface pre-finished and machine applied.
- C. Panels profiled along 3030mm edges so that the long joints between the installed panels are ship-lapped.
- D. Factory-applied sealant gasket added to top panel edge; all 3030mm edge joints contain a factory sealant.

## 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Fiber Cement Cladding – Must comply with ASTM C-1186, Type A, Grade II requirements:
  - 1. Wet Flexural Strength: Result: 1418 psi, Lower Limit: 1015 psi.
  - 2. Water Tightness: No water droplets observed on any specimen.
  - 3. Freeze-thaw: No damage or defects observed.
  - 4. Warm Water: No evidence of cracking, delamination, swelling, or other defects observed.
  - 5. Heat-Rain: No crazing, cracking, or other deleterious effects, surface or joint changes observed in any specimen.
- B. Mean Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion (ASTM E-228): Max  $1.0 \times 10^{-5}$  in./in. F.
- C. Surface Burning (CAN-ULC S102/ASTM E-84): Flame Spread: 0, Smoke Developed: 0.
- D. Wind Load (ASTM E-330): Contact manufacturer for ultimate test pressure data corresponding to framing type, dimensions, fastener type, and attachment clips. Project engineer(s) must determine Zone 4 and 5 design pressures based on project specifics.
  - 1. Minimum lateral deflection: L/120.
- E. Water Penetration (ASTM E-331): No water leakage observed into wall cavity.
- F. Steady-State Heat Flux and Thermal Transmission Properties Test (ASTM C-518): 16mm thick panel thermal resistance R Value of 0.47.
- G. Fire Resistant (ASTM E-119): The wall assembly must successfully endure 60-minute fire exposure without developing excessive unexposed surface temperature or allowing flaming on the unexposed side of the assembly.

H. Ignition Resistance (NFPA 268): No sustained flaming of panels, assembly when subjected to a minimum radiant heat flux of 12.5 kW/m<sup>2</sup> ± 5% in the presence of a pilot ignition source for a 20-minute period.

I. Fire Propagation (NFPA 285): Wall assembly of Nichiha AWP, Ultimate Clips and Starter Track, Tyvek Commercial Wrap, ½” Densglass Gold Sheathing, 16” o.c. 18 gauge steel studs, mineral wool in-cavity insulation, and interior 5/8” Type X gypsum met the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285.

J. Fire Propagation (CAN/ULC S-134): Wall assembly of Nichiha AWP, Ultimate Clips and Starter Track, Tyvek Housewrap, 5/8” FRT plywood, 16” o.c. 2x wood studs, fiberglass in-cavity insulation, and interior 5/8” Type X gypsum met the acceptance criteria of CAN/ULC S-134.

K. Drained and Back Ventilated Rainscreen (AAMA 509-14): System classifications: W1, V1.

L. Florida Building Code - Test Protocol HVHZ (TAS 202, 203): Horizontal Application Design Pressure: 95 psf, Vertical Application Design Pressure: 85 psf.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION COMPONENTS

A. Ultimate Clip System:

1. Starter Track:

- a. Horizontal Panel Installations - FA 700 – 3,030mm (l) galvalume coated steel.
- b. Vertical Panel Installations (AWP-3030 only) – FA 710T – 3,030mm (l) galvalume coated steel.

2. Panel Clips: JEL 778 “Ultimate Clip II” (10mm rainscreen for 16mm AWP) – Zinc-Aluminum-Magnesium alloy coated steel.

- a. Joint Tab Attachments (included) – used at all AWP-1818 panel to panel vertical joints, NOT used with AWP-3030 installations.

3. Corner Clips: JE 777C (10mm rainscreen for 5/8” AWP Manufactured Corners) -- Zinc-Aluminum-Magnesium alloy coated steel.

4. Single Flange Sealant Backer – FHK 1015 R (10mm) – 6.5’ (l) fluorine coated galvalume.

5. Double Flange Sealant Backer – FH 1015 R (10mm) – 10’ (l) fluorine coated galvalume.

6. Corrugated Spacer – FS 1005 (5mm), FS 1010 (10mm) – 4’ (l).

B. Aluminum Trim (optional): Paint primed trim as specified in finish schedule.

C. Essential Flashing System (optional):

1. Starter – main segments (3,030mm), inside corners, outside corners

2. Overhang – main segments (3,030mm), inside corners, outside corners, joint clips

D. Fasteners: Corrosion resistant fasteners, such as hot-dipped galvanized screws appropriate to local building codes and practices must be used. Use Stainless Steel fasteners in high humidity and high-moisture regions. Panel manufacturer is not liable for corrosion resistance of fasteners. Do not use aluminum fasteners, staples or fasteners that are not rated or designed for intended use. See manufacturer’s instructions for appropriate fasteners for construction method used.

E. Flashing: Flash all areas specified in manufacturer’s instructions. Do not use raw aluminum flashing. Flashing must be galvanized, anodized, or PVC coated.

F. Sealant: Sealant shall comply with ASTM C920, Class 35.

## PART III: EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions:

1. Fiber cement panels can be installed over braced wood, steel studs and sheathing including plywood, OSB, plastic foam (1” or less) or fiberboard sheathing. Fiber cement panels can also be installed over Structural Insulated Panels (SIP’s), Concrete Masonry Units (CMU’s) and Concrete

Block Structures (CBS's) with furring strips, and Pre-Engineered Metal Construction. Insulated Concrete Forms (ICFs) require added measures. Consult with Nichiha Technical Services.

2. Allowable stud spacing: 16" o.c. maximum.

3. A weather resistive barrier is required when installing fiber cement panels. Use an approved weather resistive barrier (WRB) as defined by the 2015 IBC or IRC. Refer to local building codes.

4. Appropriate metal flashing should be used to prevent moisture penetration around all doors, windows, wall bottoms, material transitions, and penetrations. Refer to local building codes for best practices.

B. Examine site to ensure substrate conditions are within alignment tolerances for proper installation.

C. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

D. Do not install panels or components that appear to be damaged or defective. Do not install wet panels.

### 3.2 TOLERANCE

A. Wall surface plane must be plumb and level within +/- ¼ inch in 20 feet in any direction.

1. One layer of Nichiha 5mm (~3/16") Spacer may be used as shim.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install products in accordance with the latest installation guidelines of the manufacturer and all applicable building codes and other laws, rules, regulations and ordinances. Review all manufacturer installation, maintenance instructions, and other applicable documents before installation.

1. Consult with your local dealer or Nichiha Technical Department before installing any Nichiha fiber cement product on a building higher than 45 feet or three stories or for conditions not matching prescribed standard installation guide requirements and methods. A **Technical Design Review (TDR)** process is available to evaluate project feasibility.

2. **Vertical Control/Expansion Joints** are required with AWP-1818, for walls wider than 30 feet, within 2-12 feet of outside corners finished with metal trim *and* approximately every 30 feet thereafter.

A. **Vertical Control/Expansion Joints** are required at each AWP-3030 vertical joint, or H-Mold trim may be used instead.

3. **Horizontal/Compression Joints** are required for multi-story installations of AWP. Locate joints at floor lines. Joints are flashed minimum ½" breaks. Do not caulk. Refer to installation guide(s).

A. Wood framed buildings of three or more floors require a compression joint at each floor.

B. Steel framed buildings (including reinforced concrete core with LGMF exterior walls) of more than three floors (or 45 feet) require a compression joint every 25 feet at a floor line.

B. Panel Cutting

1. Always cut fiber cement panels outside or in a well ventilated area. Do not cut the products in an enclosed area.

2. Always wear safety glasses and NIOSH/OSHA approved respirator whenever cutting, drilling, sawing, sanding or abrading the products. Refer to manufacturer SDS for more information.

3. Use a dust-reducing circular saw with a diamond-tipped or carbide-tipped blade.

a. Recommended circular saw: Makita 7-1/4" Circular Saw with Dust Collector (#5057KB).

b. Recommended blade: Tenryu Board-Pro Plus PCD Blade (#BP-18505).

c. Shears (electric or pneumatic) or jig saw can be used for complicated cuttings, such as service openings, curves, radii and scrollwork.

4. **Silica Dust Warning:** Fiber cement products may contain some amounts of crystalline silica, a naturally occurring, potentially hazardous mineral when airborne in dust form. Consult product SDS or visit <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/topics/silicacrystalline/>.
5. Immediately clean dust from cut panels as it may bind to the finish.

### **3.4 CLEANING AND MAINTENANCE**

- A. Review manufacturer guidelines for detailed care instructions.

END OF SECTION 074243



## SECTION 07533

### ELASTOMERIC SHEET ROOFING MECHANICALLY ATTACHED

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Membrane Roofing system 20-year warranty, complete with flashings and terminations
- B. Insulation and cover board, mechanically attached approved by manufacturer.
- C. Expansion joints, cant strips, and counter flashings.
- D. Roof system shall meet UL 90 and FM I90 requirements for 90 mph uplift.

##### 1.02 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 06114 - Wood Blocking and Curbing: Wood nailers and cant strips.
- B. Section 07620 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Counter flashing.

##### 1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C177 - Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate.
- B. Factory Mutual (FM) Engineering Corporation - Roof Assembly Classifications.
- C. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA) - Roofing and Waterproofing Manual.
- D. Underwriters Laboratories (UL) - Fire Hazard Classifications.

##### 1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION.

- A. Elastomeric Sheet Membrane Conventional Roofing System: One ply mechanically attached membrane system, slip sheet, 1/2" min. Dens Deck, XPS foam rigid insulation (min. R-25), structural deck. System shall comply with UL 90 requirements. **Installation & Warranty shall be as required for a 20-year manufacturer's weather tightness warranty covering material and workmanship.**

##### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate setting plan for flat and tapered insulation, joint or termination detail conditions.
- C. Product Data: Provide characteristics on membrane materials, flashing materials, insulation.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special precautions required for seaming the membrane.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- F. Samples: Submit two membrane samples, 3-1/2" x 3-1/2" in size, illustrating color and material.

##### 1.06 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with five years documented experience.
- B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with five years experience and approved by system manufacturer.
- C. Work of this section to conform to manufacturer's instructions.

##### 1.07 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): UL 90, Class A minimum Fire Hazard Classification.
- B. Factory Mutual Engineering Corporation (FM): Roof Assembly Classification, of Class 1 Construction, wind uplift requirement of I90.

##### 1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Deliver products in manufacturer's original containers, dry, undamaged, seals and labels intact.
- C. Store products in weather protected environment, clear of ground and moisture.

1.09 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not apply roofing membrane during inclement weather, ambient temperatures below 45 degrees F.
- B. Do not apply roofing membrane to damp or frozen deck surface.
- C. Do not expose materials vulnerable to water or sun damage in quantities greater than can be weatherproofed during same day.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the work with the installation of associated metal flashings, as the work of this section proceeds.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Provide roofer's Two-year warranty covering all materials (including insulation and flashings) and workmanship.
  - 1. Provide **Manufacturer's 20-year warranty**. The roofing system shall be approved and installed to provide manufacturer's twenty-year total system warranty, covering materials and workmanship, and weather tightness. **Warranty shall be Non-Prorated, No Limit type.**

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS - MEMBRANE MATERIAL

- A. DURO-LAST ROOFING, INC. 60 mil Duro-Last membrane.
- B. I/B Roof Systems. 60 mil membrane

2.02 MEMBRANE AND ASSOCIATED MATERIALS

- A. Membrane: FVC; .06 inch thick, color - white.
- B. Seaming Materials: As required or recommended by membrane manufacturer.

2.03 SUBSTRATE COVERING MATERIALS

- A. Membrane manufacturers: Conforming to UL requirements, fire resistant sheet vapor retarder.
- B. Dens Deck, 5/8" installed and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Cover board, 1/2" installed and approved by manufacturer.
- D. Vapor Barrier, 15 mil., installed and approved by manufacturer.

2.04 MANUFACTURERS - INSULATION

- A. Polyisocyanurate Foam – Duro-Last or roofing manufacturer approved. Minimum 1.5 lb density.
- B. Substitutions under provisions of the General Requirements.

2.05 INSULATION

- A. Insulation: GAF Polyisocyanurate foam Roof Insulation; extruded polystyrene board to ASTM C578, Type IV, rigid, closed cell type, with integral high-density skin.

Board Size:	Maximum 48 x 96 inch, Flat & Tapered as indicated or required.
Board Thickness:	<b>4.5" min thickness</b> , 2 layer minimum. Two boards with staggered joints, <b>minimum R value (25), 5.6</b> per inch of thickness min.
Density:	<b>25 psi.</b>
Thermal Conductivity:	<b>R-Value of 5.6 per inch, Min R-25.</b>
Board Edges:	Square
Water Absorption:	ASTM C209, less than .7% volume

2.06 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Pre-Coated Galvanized Steel: ASTM A446, Grade A, G90 zinc coating; 24 gage core steel, exposed flashings shall be shop prefinished with KYNAR coating of color as selected.

2.07 FLASHINGS

- A. Flexible Flashings: Same material as membrane, Duro-Last, color to be selected.
- B. Counterflashings: Galvanized metal, as specified in Section 07620. Kynar finish.
- C. Edge Drip Flashing: Aluminum or galvanized / prefinished to match existing.

## 2.08 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fiber Cant and Tapered Edge Strips: Asphalt impregnated wood fiberboard, preformed to 45 degree angle, tapered edge strip, configuration as detailed.
- B. Tapered Insulation. Expanded polystyrene, tapered ¼ inch per foot.
- C. Insulation Fasteners: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- D. Insulation Joint Tape: Asphalt treated glass fiber reinforced; 6 inches wide; self adhering, or as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- E. Roofing Fasteners: Galvanized, hot dipped or non-ferrous type, size as required to suit application as recommended by manufacturer.
- F. Sealants: As recommended by membrane manufacturer.
- G. Strip Bar Devices: Galvanized steel; maximum possible lengths per location, with attachment flanges. Attachments shall be secured to building @ minimum 6" o.c.
- H. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer. Adhesives must be tested and approved for use in U.L. and F.M. uplift assemblies.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and site conditions are ready to receive work and all existing roofing materials have been properly removed and cleaned.
- B. Verify flashings, anchors, attachments, caulk, roofing mastic, etc., have been proper removed cleaned and ready for new roof assembly.
- C. Verify deck is supported and secure, any loose, damaged or rotted decking has been replaced.
- D. Verify deck is clean and smooth, free of depressions, waves, or projections.
- E. Verify deck surfaces are dry and free of snow or ice. Confirm dry deck by moisture meter with 12 percent moisture maximum.
- F. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, and vents through roof are solidly set, and cant strips and wood nailers are in place.

### 3.02 INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Ensure deck is clean and dry.
- B. Insulation and substrate must be as recommended and approved by roofing manufacturer.
- C. All insulation must be independently attached to the approved substrate using manufacturer approved adhesives, fasteners and plates, as per manufacturer's specifications.
- D. Install Cover board and slip sheet as approved and recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.03 MEMBRANE APPLICATION

- A. Apply membrane in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Roll out membrane, free from wrinkles or tears. Place sheet into place without stretching.
- C. Bond sheet to substrate.
- D. Overlap edges and ends and seal by contact adhesive, minimum 5 inches. Seal permanently waterproof. Apply uniform bead of sealant to joint edge.
- E. Shingle joints on sloped substrate in direction of drainage. Apply joint tape and seal.
- F. Extend membrane up cant strips and minimum of 6 inches onto vertical surfaces.
- G. Seal membrane around roof penetrations.
- H. Apply double layer of membrane at splash areas from high roofs and condensate drains.

### 3.04 FLASHINGS AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Apply flexible flashings to seal membrane to vertical elements.
- B. Secure to nailing strips at 4 inches oc.
- C. Fabricate roofing control and expansion joints to isolate roof into areas as indicated.
- D. Coordinate installation of roof drains, sumps, related flashings and roof curbing.
- E. Seal flashings and flanges of items penetrating membrane.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Correct identified defects or irregularities.
- B. Require site attendance of roofing manufacturer's representatives during completion of the Work, as required to meet manufacturer's warranty requirements.

3.06 CLEANING

- A. In areas where finished surfaces are soiled by Work of this section, consult manufacturer of surfaces for cleaning advice and conform to their instructions.
- B. Repair or replace defaced or disfigured finishes caused by Work of this section.

3.07 PROTECTION

- A. Protect building surfaces against damage from roofing work.
- B. Where traffic must continue over finished roof membrane, protect surfaces.

END OF SECTION 07533

## SECTION 07620

### SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cap and sill flashings.
- B. Gutters, Scupperboxes, leader head and downspouts.
- C. Counterflashings at roof mounted equipment and vent stacks.
- D. Miscellaneous flashings and closure pieces.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate material profile, jointing pattern, jointing details, fastening methods, flashings, terminations, and installation details.

##### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with SMACNA standard details and requirements.

##### 1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Fabricator and Installer: Company specializing in sheet metal flashing work with three years documented experience.

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Stack preformed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion, and to provide ventilation. Slope metal sheets to ensure drainage.
- C. Prevent contact with materials which may cause discoloration or staining.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Pre-Coated Galvanized Steel: ASTM A446, Grade A, G90 zinc coating; 24 gage core steel, exposed flashings shall be shop prefinished with KYNAR coating of color as selected.

##### 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners: Galvanized steel with soft neoprene washers.
- B. Underlayment: ASTM D2178, No. 30 asphalt saturated roofing felt.
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin sized building paper.
- D. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
- E. Sealant: Polyurethane type, specified in Section 07900.
- F. Bedding Compound: Rubber-asphalt type.
- G. Plastic Cement: ASTM D4586, Type II.
- H. Reglets: Recessed type, galvanized steel; face and ends covered with plastic tape.
- I. Gutter and Downspout Anchorage Devices: SMACNA requirements. Type recommended by fabricator.

##### 2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Scupper box, leader head and associated flanges, flashing, fascia, etc.
- B. Downspouts: Rectangular profile.
- C. Accessories: Profiled to suit scuppers and downspouts.
- D. Downspout Boots: Flexible plastic or metal.

##### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Form sections true to shape, accurate in size, square, and free from distortion or defects.
- B. Fabricate cleats of metal, same material as sheet, interlockable with sheet.
- C. Form pieces in longest possible lengths. Hem exposed edges on underside 1/2 inch; miter and seam corners.
- D. Form material with flat lock seams.
- E. Fabricate corners from one piece with minimum 18 inch long legs; seam and/or solder for rigidity, seal with sealant.
- F. Fabricate vertical faces with bottom edge formed outward 1/4 inch and hemmed to form drip.

G. Fabricate flashings to allow toe to extend 2 inches over roofing. Return and brake edges.

2.05 FINISH

A. Exposed metal shall pre-finished with Kynar finish color to be selected.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify roof openings, curbs, pipes, sleeves, ducts, or vents through roof are solidly set, reglets in place, and nailing strips located.
- B. Verify roofing termination and base flashings are in place, sealed, and secure.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Install starter and edge strips, and cleats before starting installation.
- B. Install surface mounted reglets true to lines and levels. Seal top of reglets with sealant.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Conform to drawing details included in the SMACNA manual unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
- B. Insert flashings into reglets to form tight fit. Secure in place with lead wedges. Pack remaining spaces with lead wool. Seal flashings into reglets with sealant.
- C. Apply plastic cement compound between metal flashings and felt flashings.
- D. Fit flashings tight in place. Make corners square, surfaces true and straight in planes, and lines accurate to profiles.
- E. Seal metal joints watertight. Secure gutters and downspouts in place using fasteners. Set splash pans under downspouts. Seal metal joints watertight.

END OF SECTION 07620

SECTION 07760  
HYBRID PEDESTAL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 Summary

- A. Furnish and install a complete Architectural Pavers and Adjustable Pedestals deck support system with a maximum cavity height of up to 22 inches.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
  1. ASTM D 638 - Tensile Properties of Plastics
  2. ASTM D 790 - Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics Insulating
  3. ASTM D 1525 - Vicat Softening Temperature of Plastics

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.  
Samples:
  1. Architectural Pavers: Submit samples for type, color, and texture required.
  2. Pedestals: Submit sample of each pedestal component.
  3. PVC Pipe: Submit 12-inch long sample of PVC pipe.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submitted by contractor showing all components required for the paver & pedestal requirements. Shop drawings shall include plan drawings showing layout of all paver areas and detail drawings showing how the various components of the system fit together. Include manufacturer's literature completely describing all components of the paver pedestal systems and giving detailed installation recommendations and instructions. Also included detailed installation drawings for all precast pavers.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: All products covered under this Section shall be produced by a single manufacturer unless otherwise specified with a minimum of fifteen (15) years proven production experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer shall have a minimum of three (3) years proven construction experience and be capable of estimating & building from blueprint plans and details, determining elevations, in addition to proper material handling. All Work must comply with Tile Tech Inc installation application procedures for pedestal mounted pavers as specified herein.
- C. Special Consideration: The installer and or subcontractor must assume the responsibility for and take into consideration (1) the structural capability and adequacy of the structure to carry the dead and live load weight(s) involved, and (2) that the density of any insulation is satisfactory to resist crushing and damaging the waterproofing membrane.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. In accordance with provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Protect Concrete Pavers and Pedestal System during shipment, storage, and construction against damage. Store a minimum of 4 inches off the ground in a dry location and cover with polyethylene to protect from contact with materials which would cause staining or discoloration.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Tile Tech Pedestal System specified are to be used with pedestrian traffic only & all four (4) sides of a deck system must restrain and contain the decking panels with perimeter blocking or walls. Decking panels must not be allowed to move laterally.
- B. All membrane waterproofing and protection board surfaces to receive pedestals must be broom clean, frost free, and free of dirt, oil or any rough foreign matter, which may impair the waterproofing / roofing manufacturers guarantee or protection requirements.
- C. The substrate that is to receive pedestals must have slope and provide positive and adequate drainage in accordance with good building practice and applicable building codes.
- D. Decks over Roofing and Waterproofing;
  - 1. If high density closed cell extruded 60psi polystyrene insulation is installed on top of the membrane in a protected membrane system, Tile Tech Pedestals may be installed directly on top of this type of insulation.
  - 2. Do not use Tile Tech Pedestals over any insulation less than 60psi or with low density polystyrene (bead board) insulation.

## 1.8 WARRANTIES / GUARANTEES

- A. Tile Tech Pedestal System (pavers and pedestals) shall remain free from defects for a period of ten (10) years. The contractor shall warrant that his work will remain free from defects of labor and materials used in conjunction with his work in accordance with the general conditions for this project or a maximum of three (3) years.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The Paver Pedestal Systems specified herein are based upon products manufactured by:  
Tile Tech Inc., 888-380-5575 Phone: (213) 380-5560 Fax: (213) 380-5561  
E-mail: [sales@tiletechpavers.com](mailto:sales@tiletechpavers.com) Website: [www.tiletechpavers.com](http://www.tiletechpavers.com)
- B. Paver Pedestal Systems equal in appearance and function and meeting these specifications, will be acceptable when the specified submittals are approved in writing by the Architect prior to bid.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. CONCRETE PAVERS:
  - 1. Type: Stone Series.
  - 2. Color: Sandstone Porcelain Pavers as manufactured by Tile Tech Inc.
  - 3. Size: 24"x 24"x 3/4" .
  - 4. Finish: low-maintenance, slip-resistant, outdoor applications.
  - 5. Weight: 9 lbs per square foot depending on paver size & thickness.
- B. PEDESTALS:
  - 1. Stak-Cap™ Pedestals: PVC Pipe & Stack Adjustable
    - a. Stack or use SDR35 PVC pipe to accommodate various HEIGHT adjust ½" to 2".
    - b. Each cap provides maximum of ½" of HEIGHT and 1% SLOPE. Rotate and stack one cap relative to another to accommodate SLOPE adjustments from 0% to 5%.
    - c. Base diameter of 6-inch and top diameter of 5-¼-inch and is ½-inch high.
    - d. Made of high impact and flame resistant ABS plastic.
    - e. Use of Buffer Pads under Stak-Cap™ Pedestals is MANDATORY.
  - 2. Uni-Just™ Pedestals: PVC Pipe & Screw Adjustable
    - a. Assembly consist of 5 parts: Uni-Base™, Uni-Collar™, Uni-Insert™, Uni-Cap™ & Buffer Pads.
    - b. Use SDR35 PVC pipe to accommodate various HEIGHT adjustments from 2-½" to 24". Additional precise height adjustment of up to 1-½" with the use of Uni-Insert™ which can screw up or down while loaded. Additional heights beyond 24" can be accomplished subject to consultation with manufacturer and approval by manufacturer.



- c. Self-leveling and can tilt in any direction to a level plane to accommodate SLOPE adjustments from 0% to 6%.
  - d. Base diameter of 7.25-inch with bearing surface area of thirty eight (38) square inches.
  - e. Made of 100% recycled and flame resistant High Density Polypropylene.
  - f. Use of Buffer Pads under Uni-Just™ Pedestals is MANDATORY.
3. Uni-Shims™: 1/8-inch & 1/16-inch Thick
- a. Can be used whole or broken into halves or quarters and can be stacked up to 2 high.
  - b. Used on top or under Stak-Cap™ or Uni-Just™ Pedestals for fine leveling of pedestals and or individual pavers.
  - c. Made of high impact and flame resistant ABS plastic.
- C. OTHER COMPONENTS: INSTALLER OR USER SUPPLIED
1. Pedestal Pipe: 4-inch diameter SDR35 PVC Sewer Pipe
- a. Used with either Stak-Cap™ or Uni-Just™ Pedestals and is cut to required height.
  - b. Dimensions: 4.215-inch outside diameter & 3.890-inch inside diameter.
  - c. Meet ASTM D-3034 and F-679.
  - b. NOT supplied with pedestal components by Tile Tech Inc.
2. Protection Course:
- a. Protection board (required over insulated BUR systems, and when specified for use over bituminous asphalt-based waterproofing): W.R. Meadows “Vibraflex” or equal, minimum 3/8- inch thick asphaltic composition protection board.
  - b. Insulation (when specified): Dow Styrofoam “Highload 100” or equal, minimum compressive strength of 100psi recommended for foam plastic insulation placed beneath Pedestal System to prevent damage to the waterproofing membrane.
  - c. NOT supplied with pedestal components by Tile Tech Inc.

### 2.3 PERIMETER CONTAINMENT AND SUPPORT

- A. The complete assembly of insulation (if used), protection board (if used), drainage mat (if used), pedestals and pavers must be restrained at the perimeter of the deck area.
- B. Perimeter parapet walls, concrete dividers or other perimeter restraint must be capable of resisting lateral forces (including seismic and wind). Cumulative movement in excess of 1/8 inch will void the Tile Tech Inc Pedestal System warranty.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to starting work inspect the substrate to ensure that it has been properly prepared to accept the Tile Tech Pedestal System. The substrate and or surface shall be clean and free of any projections and debris which may impair the performance of the pedestal and or the deck system. Verify all elevations, required pedestal heights, and deck dimensions. Commencement of work shall imply acceptance of surfaces & deck conditions.
- B. If preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect in writing of deviations from manufacturer's recommended installation tolerances and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. The substrate surface that will receive the Pedestal System must be well compacted (on Grade) or structurally capable of carrying the dead and live loads anticipated.
  - 1. Insulation OVER the membrane: (Option 1) Insulation and/or protection board (if specified) must be applied over the waterproofing substrate and/or specified drainage mat. Install the system according to the membrane manufacturer’s recommendations and specifications.
  - 2. Insulation UNDER membrane: (Option 2) Insulation required to be installed within a roofing system below deck supports must meet the roofing membrane manufacturers’ specifications and must have a minimum core density of 60psi.

3. Protection Board: (for asphalt type systems used over waterproofing) Full coverage 1/8-inch asphaltic composition protection board is recommended. When protection is specified only under the pedestal cut protection board pads to extend beyond the outside perimeter of the pedestal system base or buffer pad by a minimum of TWO (2) inch.
4. Drainage Mat: (when desired or specified) Install drainage mat according to the manufacturers recommendations to avoid crushing.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with Tile Tech Inc. and other contributing manufacturer's instructions. Installation requirements vary for each individual project site. Decking paver or tile used, pattern, grid layout, starting point, and finished elevation should be shown on plan view shop drawings, which have been prepared and approved by the designer, installing contractor and/or owner.
- B. GRID LAYOUT AND ELEVATIONS:
  1. Once the starting point and the finished elevation of the deck surface have been determined, the "Top of Pedestal Elevation" (finished elevation less decking paver or tile thickness) is established and marked around the perimeter using a transit water level or laser leveling device.
  2. Precise measurements should be taken and deck area should be accurately defined. Mark off and 'square up' all outside edges with control lines using "snapped" chalk lines. Mark two (2) lines that are perpendicular to each other across the deck area. Continue to mark a grid of lines in both directions marking the location of each pedestal. Use the control lines as references to periodically check and assure a square layout during installation.
  3. Next, a pedestal must be placed where each measured grid line meets the perimeter. Remove two (2) spacer tabs in line with one another atop each pedestal system placed around the perimeter. Remove all four (4) spacer tabs at corners.
  4. Adjust each pedestal height to the "Top of Pedestal Elevation" marked on the perimeter. Position the pedestal as close to the edge of the perimeter as possible, with the two remaining spacer tabs aligned with the grid line. Using the elevation marked on the perimeter, stretch a mason's line along and slightly ahead of the second row of pedestals. A laser leveling device may also be used for this purpose.
  5. On larger decks, it is recommended that Tile Tech Pedestal System be pre-assembled and pre-set to the proper elevation and placed in position prior to the installation of decking paver or tile.
  6. As the pedestals located along the grid lines are loaded with pavers or tiles, fine vertical height adjustment can be made by inserting and rotating, from the top, a T-handle Hex Key in to the Uni-Insert™ of the Pedestal assembly. Clockwise rotation of the Uni-Insert™ will raise the bearing surface and the deck. Counter-clockwise rotation will lower the top bearing surface and deck.
  7. Always maintain adequate thread engagement. Tile Tech Pedestal Uni-Insert™ contains a locking tab that will not allow the screw to extend past its maximum extension. Never use if the locking tab is broken. If the height required goes beyond the Uni-Insert™ limit re-cut PVC pipe to the correct height and re-assemble the pedestal using the correct size pipe.
  8. Slight irregularities in decking paver or tile thickness can be compensated for by using one (1) to two (2) shim segments. Place on top of the pedestal, under the corner(s) of the decking paver or tile. Use no more than two (2) shims on top of the pedestal and always adhere quartered (1/4) wedges with construction adhesive.
  9. Stak-Cap™ Pedestal can be used for limited and or fixed height requirements. Complete deck and grid layout as instructed above. Stack no more than five (5) fixed height Stak-Cap™ Pedestals together and place in lieu of Uni-Just™ Pedestals where needed. Stak-Cap™ Pedestal can also be used with PVC pipe to reduce cost. Spacer tabs can be removed to accommodate perimeter and corner support locations.

C. SLOPE AND HEIGHT COMPENSATION:

1. Stak-Cap™ Pedestals can provide limited slope and height compensation to maintain a level decking surface over sloping substrates and is accomplished using a combination of the following:
  - a. Rotate and stack one cap in relation to another to change slope and add height. Each cap will add ½-inch of height and provide 1% slope. Stack no more than 5 caps.
  - b. Can also be used with PVC Pipe cut to required height of maximum of 6-inches.
2. Uni-Just™ Pedestals can provide both slope and height compensation to maintain a level decking surface over sloping substrates and is accomplished using a combination of the following:
  - a. PVC Pipe cut to varying lengths to compensate for GENERAL height requirements.
  - b. SCREW extension for PRECISE height adjustment.
  - c. Self-Leveling cap that pivots and tilts in any direction for slope compensation from 0% to 6%.
  - d. Additional slope adjustments is achieved by the use of the Base Slop Plates that provide 2% slope per plate and can be stacked to a maximum of 5 units to obtain 10% slope.
3. Tile Tech Pedestals are designed to be rotated for final precise adjustment when they are fully loaded. Pedestals should be leveled in each succeeding row as the installation proceeds. Final height adjustment or maintenance is easily made by simply using a T-handle Hex Key that allows you to adjust the pedestals without removing the pavers. T-handle Hex Key is inserted between the four paver corners to engage Uni-Insert™ portion and is adjusted clockwise or counter clockwise to level as needed.
4. Uni-Shims™ may be used in multiples, whole or quarters, and placed under the pedestal base or on top the pedestal cap to level pedestals. Use a small amount of construction adhesive to adhere sections of shims and/or whole shims to each other or to the pedestal. DO NOT use construction adhesive to adhere pedestal or shims to insulation, roofing, or waterproofing membrane. Additional sections of shims may be used and should be available for regular maintenance.

3.4 PERIMETER CONTAINMENT

- A. Any area of the pedestal deck that is not restrained by a parapet or foundation wall must be ‘boxed-in’ and contained. The deck panels will move if all sides are not adequately restrained. Perimeter framing and edging boards located at the outside of the deck perimeter must be installed to provide restraint. No movement should be allowed at the perimeter of the deck system greater than one tab width.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect often during installation to assure that grid spacer lines are being maintained in a straight and consistent pattern and that deck pavers or tiles are level and not rocking. Unless otherwise specified in writing to allow for expansion, inspect to assure that all paver spacing between tiles and at perimeter walls does not exceed a tab width. Particular attention should be made to assure that all pedestrian entry or access points to the deck are level and that the deck surface tiles are not randomly raised or uneven creating a tripping or safety hazard.

Confirm that deck pedestal height excess of sixteen (16) inches have been braced in accordance with Tile Tech Inc written instructions.

3.6 ROUTINE MAINTENANCE AND CARE

- A. The deck owner must perform routine maintenance of the deck. Check for rocking pavers and adjust using T-Handle Hex Key or shim immediately. Pedestals can settle and may have to be realigned. Failure to do so can cause a tripping hazard. Periodically check spacer tabs and immediately replace broken tabs to limit deck movement. Make sure the edge restraint stays intact and structurally sound.
- B. Extra Materials: Deliver supply of maintenance materials to the owner. Furnish not less than 1 percent maintenance materials from same lot as materials installed, and enclosed in protective packaging with appropriate identifying labels.

END OF SECTION 07760



## SECTION 07900

### JOINT SEALERS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Preparing substrate surfaces.
- B. Sealant and joint backing.

##### 1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with sealant manufacturer's requirements for preparation of surfaces and material installation instructions.
- B. Perform acoustical sealant application work in accordance with ASTM C919.

##### 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum years documented experience.

##### 1.04 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year warranty.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for installed sealants and accessories which fail to achieve air tight seal, water tight seal, and exhibit loss of adhesion or cohesion, or do not cure.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex (Interior Minor Movement): ASTM C920, Single component, non-staining, non-bleeding, non-sagging; white color paintable; manufactured by Pecora AC 20 + silicone.
- B. Butyl Sealant (Interior Minor Movement): ASTM C920 single component, solvent release, non-skinning, non-sagging, white, paintable; manufactured by Pecora BC 158.
- C. Silicone Sealant (Exterior, Interior Major Movement and Water Resistant Areas): Single component, solvent curing, non-sagging, non-staining, fungus resistant, non-bleeding; color as selected or to match adjacent materials; manufactured by Pecora 895 silicone.
- D. Bituminous Based (Paving): Single component, asphalt compound, elongation capability of 0 to 2 percent of joint width.

##### 2.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Primer: Non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.
- B. Joint Cleaner: Non-corrosive and non-staining type, recommended by sealant manufacturer; compatible with joint forming materials.
- C. Joint Backing: ASTM D1056; round, closed or open cell polyethylene foam rod; oversized 30 to 50 percent larger than joint width.
- D. Bond Breaker: Pressure sensitive tape recommended by sealant manufacturer to suit application.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that substrate surfaces and joint openings are ready to receive work.
- B. Verify that joint backing and release tapes are compatible with sealant.

##### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose materials and foreign matter which might impair adhesion of sealant.
- B. Clean and prime joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform preparation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Protect elements surrounding the work of this section from damage or disfiguration.

3.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sealant in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Measure joint dimensions and size materials to achieve required 2:1 width/depth ratios.
- C. Install joint backing to achieve a neck dimension no greater than 1/3 of the joint width.
- D. Install bond breaker where joint backing is not used.
- E. Install sealant free of air pockets, foreign embedded matter, ridges, and sags.
- F. Apply sealant within recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.

3.04 SCHEDULE

- A. Interior: Caulk around all frames, windows, doors, openings, trim, etc., as required to seal or fill gaps, cracks, to make material transitions watertight and/or visually tight and finished.
- B. Exterior: Caulk around all frames, windows, doors, openings, trim, material transitions etc., as required to seal or fill gaps, cracks, to make material transitions watertight and/or visually tight finished.
- C. Paving: Caulk as required to seal or fill gaps, expansion joints, and cracks to make transitions watertight and/or visually tight.

END OF SECTION 07900

## SECTION 08111

### STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Non-rated, fire rated and thermally insulated steel doors and frames.
- B. Interior and exterior glazed light frames.

##### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A117.1 - Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Accessible to and Usable by Physically Handicapped People.
- B. ANSI/SDI-100 - Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
- C. Door Hardware Institute (DHI) - The Installation of Commercial Steel Doors and Steel Frames, Insulated Steel Doors in Wood Frames and Builder's Hardware.
- D. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
- E. NFPA 252 - Fire Tests for Door Assemblies.
- F. UL 10B - Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate door and frame elevations, internal reinforcement, closure method, and cut-outs for glazing and finish.
- C. Product Data: Indicate door and frame configurations, anchor types and spacings, location of cut-outs for hardware reinforcement.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special installation instructions.

##### 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire Rated Door and Frame Construction: Conform to ASTM E152 and NFPA 252.
- B. Installed Door and Panel Assembly: Conform to NFPA 80 for fire rated class as scheduled.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site.
- B. Accept doors and frames on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage.

##### 1.6 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 DOOR MANUFACTURERS

- A. Ceco Door Products
- B. Steel Craft
- C. Curries Co.
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.2 DOORS

- A. Exterior Insulated Doors Thermally Broken: SDI-100 Grade III.
- B. Interior Doors (Non-rated and Fire Rated): SDI-100 Grade III.

##### 2.3 DOOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. Face: Steel sheet in accordance with ANSI/SDI-100.
- B. Core: Polystyrene foam.
- C. Thermal Insulated Door: Total insulation R value of 7.7, measured in accordance with ASTM C236.

- 2.4 FRAMES
  - A. Exterior Frames: 16 gage thick material, base metal thickness.
  - B. Interior Frames: 16 gage thick material, base metal thickness.
- 2.5 ACCESSORIES
  - A. Removable Stops: Rolled steel channel shape, mitered corners; prepared for countersink style screws.
  - B. Primer: Zinc chromate type.
  - C. Silencers: Resilient rubber, fitted into drilled hole.
- 2.6 FABRICATION
  - A. Astragals for Double Doors: Steel, T shaped, specifically for double doors.
  - B. Fabricate doors with hardware reinforcement welded in place.
  - C. Attach fire rated label to each door unit.
  - D. Close top and bottom edge of exterior doors with flush end closure. Seal joints watertight.
  - E. Configure exterior doors with special profile to receive recessed weatherstripping.
  - F. Fabricate frames as welded unit.
  - G. Mullions for Double Doors: Removable type, of same profiles as jambs.
  - H. Transom Bars for Glazed Lights: Fixed type, of same profiles as jamb and head.
  - I. Fabricate frames with hardware reinforcement plates welded in place. Provide mortar guard boxes.
  - J. Reinforce frames wider than 48 inches with roll formed steel channels fitted tightly into frame head, flush with top.
  - K. Prepare frame for silencers. Provide three single silencers for single doors and mullions of double doors on strike side. Provide two single silencers on frame head at double doors without mullions.
  - L. Configure exterior frames with special profile to receive recessed weather stripping.
  - M. Fabricate frames to suit masonry wall coursing with 4 or 2 inch head member.
- 2.7 FINISH
  - A. Steel Sheet: Galvanized to ASTM A525.
  - B. Primer: Baked.
  - C. Coat inside of frame profile with bituminous coating to a thickness of 1/16 inch.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
  - A. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
  - A. Install doors and frames in accordance with ANSI/SDI-100 and DHI.
  - B. Coordinate installation of glass and glazing.
  - C. Install door louvers, plumb and level.
  - D. Coordinate installation of doors and frames with installation of frames and hardware specified in Section 08710.
  - E. Coordinate with masonry and wallboard wall construction for anchor placement.
  - F. Install roll formed steel reinforcement channels between two abutting frames. Anchor to structure and floor.
- 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES
  - A. Maximum Diagonal Distortion: 1/16 inch measured with straight edge, corner to corner.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING
  - A. Adjust door for smooth and balanced door movement.

END OF SECTION 08111



## SECTION 08211

### PANEL MASONITE DOORS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Masonite Panel doors; Panel Masonite doors as indicated on the drawings; fire rated and non-rated.
- 1.03 QUALIFICATIONS
- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site
  - B. Accept doors on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage. Do not store in damp or wet areas; or in areas where sunlight might bleach veneer. Seal top and bottom edges if stored more than one week. Break seal on-site to permit ventilation.
- 1.05 FIELD MEASUREMENTS
- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.
- 1.06 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate the work with door opening construction, door frame and door hardware installation.
- 1.07 WARRANTY
- A. Provide warranty to the following term:
    - 1. Interior Doors: 1 year
  - B. Include coverage for delamination of veneer, warping beyond specified installation tolerances, defective materials, telegraphing core construction.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Masonite Int Corp
  - B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.
- 2.02 DOOR TYPES
- A. Panel Interior Doors: 1-3/4 inches thick
  - B. Type, Size and Style per construction drawings.
- 2.03 DOOR CONSTRUCTION
- A. Core (Solid, Non-Rated).
  - B. Core (Solid, Fire Rated).
- 2.04 ACCESSORIES
- A. Glazing Stops: Masonite, of same species as door facing Masonite with metal clips for rated doors, mitered corners; prepared for countersink style screws.
- 2.05 FABRICATION
- A. Fabricate non-rated doors in accordance with Standard requirements.
  - B. Fabricate fire rated doors in accordance with Standards and to UL requirements. Attach fire rating label to door.
  - D. Provide lock blocks at lock edge and top of door for closer hardware reinforcement.
  - F. Fit door edge trim to edge of stiles after applying veneer facing.
  - G. Bond edge banding to cores.
  - H. Factory machine doors for finish hardware in accordance with hardware requirements and dimensions. Do not machine for surface hardware. Provide solid blocking for through bolted hardware.
  - I. Factory pre-fit doors for frame opening dimensions identified on shop drawings.
  - J. Cut and configure exterior door edge to receive recessed weather stripping devices.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
- B. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fire rated and non-rated doors in accordance with Standards requirements.
- B. Trim non-rated door width by cutting equally on both jamb edges.
- C. Trim door height by cutting bottom edges to a maximum of 3/4 inch (19 mm). Trim fire door height at bottom edge only, in accordance with fire rating requirements.
- D. Pilot drill screw and bolt holes. Use threaded through bolts for half surface hinges.
- E. Machine cut for hardware. Core for handsets and cylinders.
- F. Coordinate installation of glass and glazing.

### 3.03 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Diagonal Distortion (Warp): 1/8 inch measured with straight edge or taught string, corner to corner, over an imaginary 36 x 84 inch surface area.
- B. Maximum Vertical Distortion (Bow): 1/8 inch measured with straight edge or taught string, top to bottom, over an imaginary 36 x 84 inch surface area.
- C. Maximum Width Distortion (Cup): 1/8 inch measured with straight edge or taught string, edge to edge, over an imaginary 36 x 84 inch surface area.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust door for smooth and balanced door movement.

END OF SECTION 08211

## SECTION 08331

### OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: [**Manually**] operated overhead coiling doors, operators, controls and accessories.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 5 Sections: Miscellaneous Metals for steel supports.
  - 2. Division 8 Sections: Hardware, Locks, Access Panels.
  - 3. Division 9 Sections: Finish Painting, Field Painting.

##### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. General: Standards listed by reference, including revisions by issuing authority, form a part of this specification section to the extent indicated. Standards listed are identified by issuing authority, authority abbreviation, designation number, title or other designation established by issuing authority. Standards subsequently referenced herein are referred to by issuing authority abbreviation and standard designation.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A 653/A 653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.

##### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance:
  - 1. Wind Loads: Uniform pressure of: **<20 psf.**

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedures Section.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Provide drawings indicating guide details, head and jamb conditions, clearances, anchorage, accessories, finish colors, patterns and textures, operator mounts and other related information.
- D. Quality Assurance Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Certificates: Submit manufacturer's certificate that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
  - 2. Certificates: Submit installer qualifications.
- E. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:
  - 1. Warranty documents available at [www.raynor.com](http://www.raynor.com) or from your authorized Raynor Dealer.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Utilize an installer having demonstrated experience on projects of similar size and complexity, and trained and authorized by the door dealer to perform the work of this section.
- B. Regulatory Requirements and Approvals: **<2012 International Building Code.>**
- C. Preinstallation Meetings: Verify project requirements, substrate conditions, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements. Comply with Division 1 Project Management and Coordination (Project Meetings) Section.

##### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.
- C. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- D. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the manufacturer.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under contract documents. **Warranty Period – 5 years from date of Substantial Completion**

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Manufacturer: Raynor Door (Basis of Design)
  - 1. Contact: Cheney Dr Salina 785-820-8366, Wichita 316-262-2098.
- B. Manufacturer Product Designation: DURACOIL STANDARD.
- C. Approved Manufacturers
  - 1. Overhead Door
  - 2. Cheney Door
  - 3. Cornell

### 2.2 DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Provide doors designed for **hand crank** operation.
  - 1. Drive Orientation: For hand-chain, hand-crank or electric motor operated doors, orient the drive from the left or right hand side when facing the reference side of the door (side with counterbalance or hood exposed) as appropriate to field conditions. Submit drawing with shop drawings indicating drive orientation for each location for review.

### 2.3 CURTAIN

- A. Material: Interlocking steel slats, **22 gauge (0.030 inch minimum thickness)**, roll-formed from commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized (G-90) steel in compliance with ASTM A-653.
  - 1. Slat Type: **Flat Slat with back cover, Non-insulated.**
    - a. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate with R-value 6.24 and U-value 0.160.
    - b. Back Covers: Galvanized steel, **22 gauge (0.030 inch)** minimum thickness.
- B. Mounting: **Face Mounting; fasten to face of wall on each side of door opening.**
- C. Color and Finish: One finish coat of [**ArmorBrite™ Powdercoat (color to be selected)**] applied over one coat of white epoxy primer.
- D. Endlocks: Lateral movement of the slats to be contained by means of zinc-plated malleable endlocks fastened with two zinc-plated steel rivets.
- E. Bottom Bar and Seal: Two roll-formed galvanized steel angles, minimum 1-1/2 inches by 1-1/2 inches by 1/8 inch (38.1 mm x 38.1 mm x 3.2 mm) with single-contact type bottom astragal. Structural angle bottom bar to receive one coat of rust-inhibitive primer.
- F. Vision Panels: **None.**
- G. Curtain Wear Straps: **None**

### 2.4 GUIDES

- A. Guide Assemblies: To consist of three structural steel angles, minimum 3 inches by 2 inches by 3/16 inch (76 mm by 51 mm by 4.8 mm) and fitted with removable curtain stops. Steel guides to be provided with one coat of rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Jamb Construction: **Metal Stud, with bolt fasteners.**
- C. Weather Seal: **Snap-on vinyl seal.**

### 2.5 COUNTERBALANCE SYSTEM

- A. Headplates: 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) steel plate, attached to wall angle of guide assembly with 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) diameter class 5 case hardened bolts. Inside of drive bracket fitted with sealed ball bearing. Provide head plates with one coat of rust-inhibitive primer
- B. Barrel: Minimum 4-1/2 inches (114.3 mm) O.D. and 0.120 inch (3.1 mm) wall thickness structural steel pipe. Deflection of pipe under full load shall not exceed 0.03 inch (0.8 mm) per foot of span.

- C. Counterbalance: Provide torsion counterbalance mechanism as follows: **Torsion Spring: Oil-tempered, helical torsion springs, grease packed and mounted on a continuous steel torsion shaft**

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Hood: **Round Hood: 24 gauge steel, finish-painted to match curtain.**
- B. Hood Baffle: **With EPDM rubber seal to inhibit air infiltration through hood cavity.**

## 2.7 HARDWARE

- A. Locks: Furnish door system with: **Cylinder Lock available for use with manual, hand chain, and hand crank operated doors.** Coordinate Keying requirements with Owner during submittal phase

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Comply with instructions and recommendations of door manufacturer.

### 3.2 ACCEPTABLE INSTALLERS

- A. Installer with minimum of 5 years of experience in routinely installing similar systems.

### 3.3 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Verify through direct observation and field measurement that site conditions are acceptable for installation of doors, operators, controls and accessories. Ensure that openings square, flush and plumb.
- B. Do not proceed with installation of doors, operators, controls and accessories until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install door, guide and operating equipment complete with all necessary accessories and hardware according to shop drawings, manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Site Tolerances: Site conditions shall meet manufacturers' requirements for installing of overhead coiling door installation. Door installation shall be fully weather tight.
- C. Related Products Installation: Refer to Related Sections paragraph for related products installation.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: At Owner's request, provide manufacturer's field service consisting of product installation and use recommendations, and periodic site visits to observe and ensure product installation is done in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. General: Lubricate bearings and sliding parts and adjust doors for proper operation, balance, clearance and similar requirements.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas. Repair or replace installed products damaged prior to or during installation.
- B. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to Owner's acceptance. Remove and legally dispose of construction debris from project site.

END OF SECTION 08331



## SECTION 08375

### HYDRAULIC BI-FOLD VERTICAL DOORS (Crown Doors SST-II)

#### PART 1 – GENERAL

##### 1.01 DESCRIPTION

###### A. General

1. Furnish SST-II Hydraulic Bi-Fold System complete from one manufacturer. Provide all labor, materials, tools, and equipment to furnish the SST-II Hydraulic Bi-Fold System complete as herein specified.

##### 1.02 RELATED WORK BY OTHERS

- A. Preparation of opening including jambs and header will be by General Contractor. Any deviation of site conditions contrary to approved shop drawings must be called to the attention of the architect.
- B. All header, blocking, support structures and jambs as required.
- C. Paint or otherwise finishing all trim and other materials adjoining door.
- D. Provide hydraulic fluid in quantity necessary for proper system operation.

##### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

###### A. Product Data

1. Submit manufacturer's product data and roughing-in diagrams.
2. Complete shop drawings are to be provided prior to fabrication indicating construction and installation details.

##### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide each Hydraulic Bi-Fold System as a complete unit by one manufacturer, including frames, panels, brackets, guides, hardware, operators, and installation accessories to suit opening.
- B. Wind Loading: Design and reinforce Hydraulic Bi-Fold system to withstand a wind loading pressure to comply with state and federal code requirements.
- C. Preparation of the opening shall conform to current criteria set forth by the International and Standard Building Code.

##### 1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Proper storage of the system before installation and continued protection during and after installation will be the responsibility of the general contractor.

##### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. All materials and components, supplied by Crown, shall be guaranteed against defects in material and workmanship, for a period of one year from date of delivery.
- B. Materials and components supplied by other than Crown is not included in this warranty.
- C. Reference std. Crown warranties for further information.

#### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products which may be incorporated into the work, include, but are not limited to, the following:

Crown Doors, LLC  
135 McLeod Avenue South  
Plato, MN. 55370  
(320) 238-2616  
[www.crowndoors.com](http://www.crowndoors.com)  
[info@crowndoors.com](mailto:info@crowndoors.com)

- B. Upon compliance with all the criteria specified in this section, manufacturers wishing to bid products similar to the product specified must submit to the architect - 10 days prior to bidding - complete data in support of compliance. The submitting manufacturer guarantees the proposed substituted product complies with the product specified and as detailed on the drawings.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Product to be SST-II Hydraulic Bi-Fold System as furnished by Crown Doors, LLC
1. Construct operable panel and frame sections with structural steel (of ASTM-A500 grade minimum) framing to comply with applied wind code.
  2. Operable panels and frame shall be constructed of structural steel tubing and other structural steel shapes, and shall be designed to the same loading requirements for live, dead and wind loads as the surrounding construction.
  3. System shall be designed so that no center “cane bolt” is required in the floor.
  4. Operable panels and frame shall be factory-welded at all joints and connections, with smooth welds not to exceed 1/4” [6] thickness.
  5. Inside-Sash (infill) glass retainer system shall be factory pre-installed and seam-sealed, and necessary setting blocks, spacers, butyl and foam tape shall be supplied.
  6. System frame, operable panels, and factory pre-installed, inside-sash glass retainer shall be primed with gray-zinc, powder-based, epoxy primer, and finished with manufacturer’s standard powdercoat.
  7. Factory-Supplied neoprene seals/weather stripping will be shipped loose for field-install to protect against damage during transport.
- B. Bi-fold System shall be operated by hydraulic cylinders that are mechanically fastened to the panel frame.
1. Cylinders are to be located on the top half of the door, only. Cylinders will be designed to carry the required loads during operation, open position, and closed position. Internal stops will be installed so as not to allow over-extension of the cylinders, therefore restricting the system from opening or closing beyond its limit.
  2. Lift straps or cables, horizontal top and bottom drive shafts, pulleys, and strap or cable “kick outs” are unacceptable.
  3. System shall be locked closed by means of the hydraulic cylinders providing a minimum of 1,000 lbs. of closing force.
- C. Power Operator - Standard voltage is 220-240v, single phase.
1. Constant contact push-button or key-switch controls for separate mounting.
  2. Power unit to power (2) hydraulic cylinders which open and close the system. Power unit to be prewired and factory tested.
  3. “Open-Close” control units will be wired for constant-hold operation.
  4. Incoming electrical source to hydraulic power unit to be supplied by others (manufacturer’s standard).
  5. Each door operator shall have thermal overload protection for the motor.



- D. Finishes
  - 1. Entire system frame, operable panels, and factory pre-installed, inside-sash glass retainer shall be primed with gray-zinc, powder-based, epoxy primer, and finished with manufacturer's standard powder-coat.
    - Optional Finishes
      - Color to be Dark Bronze - Satin
      - RAL powder-coat color
- E. Accessories to be provided
  - 1. Photoelectric or lead-edge pressure sensor that stops (or stops and reverses) the downward movement of the door/window.
  - 2. Warning horn/Strobe light assembly
  - 3. Remote receiver w/transmitter
  - 4. 3-Phase option
  - 5. External, weather-resistant, "open-close" control wired for constant-hold 6. Front-Set (Curtainwall) glass retainer system

### 2.03 OPERATION

- A. The Hydraulic Bi-Fold System shall be extended/retracted in the opening using a constant-contact pushbutton or key switch, operating hydraulic cylinders mounted to the system frame.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.01 SAFETY

- A. Hydraulic power unit to have a manual emergency let-down valve for closing the system in case of a power outage.
- B. SST-II Hydraulic Bi-Fold System to incorporate pressure compensated orifice valves
- C. Photoelectric or lead-edge pressure sensor optional.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of the Hydraulic Bi-Fold System shall be by a contractor familiar with this type of installation and be in strict accordance with the approved build drawings and manufacturers standard printed specifications, instructions, and recommendations. All moving parts will be left in good operating condition.
- B. Permanent or temporary electric wiring shall be brought to the power unit location before installation. After the Hydraulic Bi-Fold System is installed, the general contractor assumes the responsibility of any damage to the system or system components during construction until the building is turned over to the owner.
- C. Fill reservoir with hydraulic fluid (provided by others). Use ATF for cold weather applications or #32 hydraulic fluid for all other applications.

### 3.03 CLEANING

- A. All surfaces shall be wiped clean and free of handprints, grease, and oil.

### 3.04 TRAINING

- A. Installer shall demonstrate proper operation and maintenance procedures to owner's representative.
- B. Operating keys and owner's manual shall be provided to owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 08375



## SECTION 08410

### ALUMINUM ENTRANCES, STOREFRONT, & WINDOWS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Aluminum doors and frames.
- B. Vision glass and glass
- C. Door hardware
- D. **IECC 2009 energy requirements apply**
- E. Integral air and vapor barrier.
- F. Perimeter sealant.

##### 1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Aluminum entrances, storefront system and curtain wall system includes tubular aluminum sections with supplementary internal support framing, shop fabricated, factory prefinished, vision glass, related flashings, anchorage and attachment devices.

##### 1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design and size components to withstand dead and live loads caused by positive and negative wind pressure acting normal to plane of wall as calculated in accordance with codes.
- B. Limit mullion deflection to flexure limit of glass; with full recovery of glazing materials.
- C. System to accommodate, without damage to components or deterioration of seals, movement within system, movement between system and peripheral construction, dynamic loading and release of loads, deflection of structural support framing.
- D. Limit air leakage through assembly to 0.06 cfm/min/sq. ft. of wall area, measured at a reference differential pressure across assembly of psf as measured in accordance with AAMA 501.
- E. Water Leakage: None, when measured in accordance with AAMA 501 with a test pressure difference of 2.86 lbs/sq. ft.
- F. Maintain continuous air and vapor barrier throughout assembly, primarily in line with inside pane of glass and heel bead of glazing compound.
- G. System to provide for expansion and contraction within system components caused by a cycling temperature range of 170 degrees F over a 12 hour period without causing detrimental affect to system components.
- H. Drain water entering joints, condensation occurring in glazing channels, or migrating moisture occurring within system, to the exterior by a weep drainage network.

##### 1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate system dimensions, framed opening requirements and tolerances, affected related Work and expansion and contraction joint location and details.

##### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site.
- B. Protect pre-finished aluminum surfaces. Do not use adhesive papers or sprayed coatings which bond when exposed to sunlight or weather.

##### 1.06 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install sealants when ambient temperature is less than 40 degrees F during and 48 hours after installation.
- B. Exterior aluminum entrances and storefront systems to follow the **2009 International Energy Conservation Code (IECC)**.
  - **Fixed windows (and sidelights) shall have a U-value not less than 0.50 and an SHGC of not less than 0.40**
  - **Entrance doors shall have a U-value of not less than 0.85 and SHGC of not less than 0.40.**

##### 1.07 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

##### 1.08 WARRANTY

- A. Provide three year warranty.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for complete system for failure to meet specified requirements.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Storefront System
  - 1. Manko – **2450 series, Door series 150i Thermal Door**. All windows to have sub-sill, head and jamb receptors.
  - 2. Other acceptable manufacturers offering equivalent Products.
    - a. Kawneer.
    - b. Amarlite.
    - c. EFCO.
  - 3. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Extruded Aluminum: ANSI/ASTM B221; 6063 alloy, T5 temper. Color: **Dark Bronze**.
- B. Steel Sections: ANSI/ASTM A36; shaped to suit mullion sections.
- C. Fasteners: Galvanized steel.

### 2.03 COMPONENTS

- A. Storefront Frame: 4 1/2 x 2 inch nominal dimension; glazing stops; drainage holes; internal weep drainage system. **Subsill with end dams are required.**
- C. Doors: 2 inches thick, 5-inch wide top rail, 5-inch wide vertical stiles, 10-inch wide bottom rail; square glazing stops.
- D. Flashings: Aluminum, finish to match mullion sections where exposed.

### 2.04 GLASS AND GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Glass and Glazing Materials: As specified in Section 08800 of types described below:
  - 1. Glass at Exterior and several Interior Lights (reference drawings): 1-inch insulated type (outer pane of 1/4 inch tinted at exterior, inner pane of 1/4 inch clear). Tempered where required. Tinted, Low-E coating, third surface.
  - 2. **Reference Section 1.04 ENERGY REQUIREMENTS in this specification for the required U-value and SHGC minimums.**
  - 3. Glass at some Interior Lights (reference drawings): 1/4 inch clear. Tempered where required.

### 2.05 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant and Backing Materials: As specified in Section 07900.

### 2.06 HARDWARE

- A. Weather Stripping, Sill Sweep Strips, Thresholds, Hinges, Tubular Pull Handles, Panic Device, Closer: Manufacturers' standard type to suit application, and finish, all provided by storefront manufacturer / supplier.

### 2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate components with minimum clearances and shim spacing around perimeter of assembly, yet enabling installation and dynamic movement of perimeter seal.
- B. Accurately fit and secure joints and corners. Make joints flush, hairline, and weatherproof.
- C. Prepare components to receive anchor devices. Fabricate anchors.
- D. Arrange fasteners and attachments to conceal from view.
- E. Prepare components with internal reinforcement for door hardware and door operator hinge hardware.
- F. Reinforce framing members for imposed loads.

### 2.08 FINISHES

- A. Finish coatings to conform to AAMA
- B. **Exposed Aluminum Surfaces: Dark Bronze. (Baked Kynar-type finish)**

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify site opening conditions.
- B. Verify dimensions, tolerances, and method of attachment with other work.
- C. Verify wall openings and adjoining air and vapor seal materials are ready to receive work of this Section.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and AAMA - Metal Curtain Wall, Window, Store Front and Entrance - Guide Specifications Manual.
- B. Attach to structure to permit sufficient adjustment to accommodate construction tolerances and other irregularities.
- C. Provide alignment attachments and shims to permanently fasten system to building structure.
- D. Align assembly plumb and level, free of warp or twist. Maintain assembly dimensional tolerances, aligning with adjacent work.
- E. Provide thermal isolation where components penetrate or disrupt building insulation.
- F. Install sill flashings and manufacturer's standard subsill, head and jamb systems.
- G. Coordinate attachment and seal of perimeter air and vapor barrier materials.
- H. Pack fibrous insulation in shim spaces at perimeter of assembly to maintain continuity of thermal barrier.
- I. Set thresholds in bed of mastic and secure.
- J. Install hardware using templates provided.
- K. Install glass in accordance with Section 08800, to glazing method required to achieve performance criteria.
- L. Install perimeter sealant to method required to achieve performance criteria, backing materials, and installation criteria in accordance with Section 07900.

### 3.03 TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 0.06 inches every 3 ft non-cumulative or 1/16 inches per 10 feet, whichever is less.
- B. Maximum Misalignment of Two Adjoining Members Abutting in Plane: 1/32 inch.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operating hardware and sash for smooth operation.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective material from prefinished aluminum surfaces.
- B. Wash down surfaces with a solution of mild detergent in warm water, applied with soft, clean wiping cloths. Take care to remove dirt from corners. Wipe surfaces clean.
- C. Remove excess sealant by method acceptable to sealant manufacturer.

### 3.06 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work from damage.

END OF SECTION 08410



## SECTION 085210

### ALUMINUM WINDOWS Manko Window Systems Inc. 3135xpt SERIES (Single Hung)

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

###### A. Section Includes:

1. All exterior windows furnished and installed as shown on drawings, specified in this section and designated in AAMA 101/I.S.2..
2. All labor, materials, tools, equipment and services needed to furnish and install Architectural Performance Class Windows.
3. Components furnished with installed windows.
4. Installation accessories furnished and installed.
5. Single Source Requirement
  - a. All products listed in Section 08400; 08500; 08800; and 08900 shall be by the same manufacturer.

##### 1.02 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

###### A. Design Wind Loads

1. The design wind pressure for the project will be:
  - c. Per local building codes
2. All structural components, including meeting rails, mullions and anchors shall be designed accordingly, complying with deflection and stress requirements of Paragraph 1.02 B.

###### B. Air, Water and Structural Performance Requirements

1. When tested in accordance with cited test procedures, windows shall meet or exceed the following performance criteria, as well as those indicated in AAMA 101 and 101/I.S.2 for Architectural (AW) Performance Class windows, Performance Grade 60 (AW60) and Heavy Commercial (HC) Performance Class windows, Performance Grade 80 (HC80) unless otherwise noted herein.
2. Air Test Performance Requirements
  - a. Air infiltration maximum 0.3 cfm per square foot at 6.24 psf pressure differential when tested in accordance with ASTM E283.
3. Water Test Performance Requirements
  - a. No uncontrolled water leakage at 12.00 psf static pressure differential, with water application rate of 5 gallons/hr/sq ft when tested in accordance with ASTM E331.
4. Structural Test Performance Requirements
  - a. Uniform Load Deflection Test
    - i. No deflection of any unsupported span L of test unit (framing rails, muntins, mullions, etc.) in excess of L/175 at both a positive and negative load of 80 psf (design test pressure) when tested in accordance with ASTM E330.
    - ii. Structural reinforcing that is not standard on units being furnished is not allowed.
  - b. Uniform Load Structural Test
    - i. Unit to be tested at 1.5 x design test pressure (120 psf), both positive and negative, acting normal to plane of wall in accordance with ASTM E330.
    - ii. No glass breakage; permanent damage to fasteners, hardware parts, or anchors; damage to make windows inoperable; or permanent deformation of any main frame or ventilator member in excess of 0.2% of its clear span.

- C. Life Cycle Testing:
  - 1. When tested in accordance with AAMA 910-93, there is to be no damage to fasteners, hardware parts, support arms, activating mechanisms or any other damage that would cause the window to be inoperable at the conclusion of testing. Air infiltration and water resistance tests shall meet the primary performance requirements specified.
- D. Condensation Resistance and Thermal Transmittance Performance Requirements
  - 1. Perform thermal tests in accordance with the configuration specified in AAMA 1503.1.
    - a. Thermal Transmittance ("U" Factor) shall not exceed 0.50 BTU/hr/sf/deg F at 15 mph exterior wind.
    - b. Condensation Resistance Factor (CRF) requirements: CRF minimum 45 (Frame) and CRF minimum 45 (specimen).
- E. **IECC 2009 energy requirements.** (Reference Table 502.3 for additional information). Saline County, Kansas is allocated as a Climate Zone 4A.
  - 1. **U-factor of 0.40 or better**
  - 2. **SHGC of 0.40 or better**

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. General Requirements
  - 1. Provide all submittals in a timely manner to meet the required construction completion schedule.
- B. Shop Drawings
  - 1. Shop drawings must be prepared wholly by the window manufacturer, or a qualified engineering services firm under the direction of the manufacturer. Shop drawings for pre-engineered configurations may be prepared by installers authorized per 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE.
  - 2. Provide design details along with bid proposals to define system aesthetic and functional characteristics.
  - 3. Provide three photocopied sets of shop drawings, including half size details of all necessary conditions.
- C. Samples
  - 1. Components: Submit samples of anchors, fasteners, hardware, assembled corner sections and other materials and components as requested by Architect.
  - 2. Finish: Submit color samples for Architect's approval as requested.
- D. Test Reports and Calculations
  - 1. Submit certified independent laboratory test reports verifying compliance with all test requirements of 1.02 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS as requested by Architect.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications
  - 1. Upon request, the window manufacturer will provide written confirmation that the installer is authorized to install window products to be used on this project.

### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Packing, Shipping, Handling and Unloading
  - 1. Materials will be packed, loaded, shipped, unloaded, stored and protected in accordance with AAMA CW-10.

### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Aluminum Window Warranty
  - 1. Products: Submit a written warranty, executed by the window manufacturer, for a period of 2 years (10 years for insulated glass seal failure) from the date of manufacture, against defective materials or workmanship, including substantial non-compliance with applicable specification requirements and industry standards, which results in premature failure of the windows, finish, factory-glazed glass, or parts, outside of normal wear.



- a. In the event that windows or components are found defective, manufacturer will repair or provide replacements without charge at manufacturer's option.
  - b. Warranty for all components must be direct from the manufacturer (non-pass through) and non-prorated for the entire term. Warranty must be assignable to the non-residential owner, and transferable to subsequent owners through its length.
2. Installation: Submit a written warranty, executed by the window installer, for a period of 2 years from the date of substantial completion, against defective materials or workmanship, including substantial non-compliance with applicable specification requirements, which result in premature failure.
- a. In the event that installation of windows or components is found to be defective, installer will repair or provide replacements without charge at the installer's option.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

#### A. Acceptable Manufacturer

- 1. Drawings and specifications are based on:
  - a. **Manko Window Systems, Inc. 3135xpt Single Hung Windows.**
    - i. Base bid will be Manko Window Systems, Inc.

#### B. Substitutions

- 1. Other manufacturers' products that meet or exceed specified design requirements may be considered. Submit the following information with request for substitutions at least ten (10) working days prior to bid date.
  - a. Test reports specified in 1.02 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
  - b. Full proposal details and samples specified in 1.03 SUBMITTALS
  - c. Copy of manufacturer's warranty specified in 1.06 WARRANTY
  - d. Other information as requested for evaluation
- 2. Substitute products not pre-approved by the Architect via addenda will not be considered.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

#### A. Aluminum Members

- 1. Extruded aluminum prime billet 6063-T5 or 6063-T6 alloy for primary components; 6063-T5, 6063-T6, or 6061-T6 for structural components; all meeting the requirements of ASTM B221.
- 2. Aluminum sheet alloy 5005 H 32 (for anodic finish), meeting the requirements of ASTM B209 or alloy 3003 H 14 (for painted or unfinished sheet).

### 2.03 MANUFACTURED UNITS

#### A. Materials

- 1. Principal window frame members will be a minimum 0.080" in thickness except at frame sills, which will be 0.093" minimum thickness.
- 2. Extruded or formed trim components will be a minimum 0.062" in thickness.

#### B. Fabrication

- 1. Frame depth 3-1/2" minimum.
- 2. Sill must allow for drainage to the exterior and function under both negative and positive pressure.
- 3. Frame-to-sash interface shall be designated for sweep seals, to prevent loss of weather-strip contact under positive pressure.
- 4. Sash must be tubular and be removable to the interior for maintenance.
- 5. Frames are designed for self-mulling (stacking).
- 6. Screen frame must not protrude from exterior of window frame.

#### C. Glazing

- 1. Stop glazed with interior removable stop and gasket.
- 2. Standard cavity for 1" infill.
- 3. Glass or panel set in structural silicone and heal bead.

## 2.04 COMPONENTS

- A. All steel components including attachment fasteners to be 300 series stainless steel except as noted.
- B. Extruded aluminum components 6063-T5 or 6063-T6.
- C. Locking handles, cases and strikes to be die cast or stainless steel.
- D. Thermoplastic or thermo-set plastic caps, housings and other components to be injection-molded nylon, extruded PVC, or other suitable compound.
- E. Hardware:
  - 1. Balances
    - a. Balances must provide a positive lifting force through the full range of sash travel. Sash travel must be limited on oversize units.
    - b. When properly adjusted, balances must hold the sash stationary at any open position.
      - i. Spiral balance or Block and tackle balance
  - 2. Locks
    - a. White Bronze cam action sweep latches; one per meeting rail.
    - b. Provide stainless steel, Occupant-operated sweep latches.
  - 3. Lift Handles
    - a. Provide integral continuous lift handles on sash.
  - 4. Limit Stops
    - a. Provide jamb-mounted limit stops, to comply with Child safety codes.
- F. Sealants
  - 1. All sealants shall comply with applicable provisions of AAMA 800 and/or Federal Specifications FS-TT-001 and 002 Series.
  - 2. Frame joinery sealants shall be suitable for application specified and as tested and approved by window manufacturer.
- G. Glass
  - 1. Provide in accordance with Section 08800.
  - 2. Sealed insulated glass shall meet ASTM E774 Class A.
- H. Glazing
  - 1. Provide in general accordance with Section 08800.
  - 2. Glazing method shall be in general accordance with the FGMA Glazing Manual for specified glass type, or as approved by the glass fabricator.
- I. Glazing Materials
  - 1. Setting Blocks/Edge Blocking: Provide in sizes and locations recommended by FGMA Glazing Manual.
  - 2. Back-bedding tapes, expanded cellular glazing tapes, toe beads, heel beads and cap beads shall meet the requirements of applicable specifications cited in AAMA 800.
  - 3. Glazing gaskets shall be non-shrinking, weather-resistant, and compatible with all materials in contact.
  - 4. Structural silicone sealant where used shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 1184.
  - 5. Spacer tape in continuous contact with structural silicone shall be tested for compatibility and approved by the sealant manufacturer for the intended application. Gaskets in continuous contact with structural silicone shall be extruded silicone or compatible material.
- J. Steel Components
  - 1. Provide steel reinforcements as necessary to meet the system performance requirements of 1.02.
  - 2. Concealed steel anchors and reinforcing shall be factory painted after fabrication with rust-inhibitive primer complying with Federal Specification TT-P-645.

K. Thermal Break Construction:

1. Frame and sash members must include a thermal break applied in the manufacturer’s facility, using concealed low conductance poured-in-place polyurethane in a pre-treated cavity.
2. After proper curing, the aluminum bridge section must be removed to provide a 1/4” separation between exterior and interior metal surfaces.

L. Weather Stripping:

1. Dual durometer PVC, neoprene, EPDM or other suitable material as tested and approved by the window manufacturer.
2. Bulb type at exterior vent members.
3. Securely stake and join at corners. Provide drainage to exterior as necessary.
4. Weather-stripping shall provide an effective pressure-equalization seal at the interior face of the sash ventilator.

O. Receptors/Sill Starter:

1. Provide extruded aluminum receptors to receive windows, as shown on architectural drawings.
2. Finish to match window frames.

P. Insect Screens:

1. Tubular extruded aluminum frames shall meet the requirements of ANSI/SMA 1004. Finish to match window frames.
2. Aluminum cloth shall comply with GSA-FS-RR-W-365 and USDC-CS-138 with 18 X 16 mesh. Cloth color shall be charcoal grey

2.05 FABRICATION

A. General:

1. Finish, fabricate and shop assemble frame and sash members into complete windows under the responsibility of one manufacturer.
2. No bolts, screws or fastenings to bridge thermal barrier or impair independent frame movement.
3. Fabricate to allow for thermal movement of materials when subjected to a temperature differential from -30 degrees F to +180 degrees F.

B. Frames:

1. Cope and mechanically fasten each corner leaving only hairline joinery, then seal weather tight.

C. Operating Sash Ventilator

1. Cope and mechanically fasten each corner leaving only hairline joinery, then seal weather tight.

D. Glass Drainage: (field glazed units only)

1. Provision shall be made to insure that water will not accumulate and remain in contact with the perimeter area of sealed insulated glass.

E. Tolerances

1. Reference to tolerances for wall thickness and other cross-sectional dimensions of entrance members are nominal and in compliance with the Aluminum Standards and Data.

**Exposed Aluminum Surfaces: Dark Bronze.**

2.06 FINISHES

A. Finish of Aluminum Components

1. Finish of all exposed areas of aluminum windows and components shall be done in accordance with the appropriate AAMA Voluntary Guide Specification shown (select from below).

Designation	Description	Standard	Color
AAM12C21A44	Electrolytically Deposited – Class I	AAMA 611	Dark Bronze, Black

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions

1. Verify that building substrates permit installation of windows according to the manufacturer's instructions, approved shop drawings, calculations and contract documents.

2. Do not install windows until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

#### A. Erection of Aluminum Windows

1. Install windows with skilled tradesman in exact accordance with approved shop drawings, installation instructions, specifications, and AAMA 101/I.S.2.
2. Windows must be installed plumb, square and level for proper weathering and operation. Jambs must not be “sprung”, bowed or warped during installation.
3. Aluminum that is not organically coated shall be insulated from direct contact with steel, masonry, concrete or other dissimilar metals by bituminous paint, zinc chromate primer, nonconductive shims or other suitable insulating material.

END OF SECTION 085210

SECTION 08710  
DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Hardware for wood, hollow steel, metal insulated and aluminum doors.
- B. Thresholds.
- C. Weatherstripping, seals and door gaskets.

1.03 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A117.1 - Specifications for Making Buildings and Facilities Accessible to and Usable by Physically Handicapped People.

1.04 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Maintenance Data: Include data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.

1.05 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum 3 years' documented experience.
- B. Hardware Supplier: Company specializing in supplying commercial door hardware with 3 years' documented experience approved by manufacturer.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site.
- B. Package hardware items individually; label and identify each package with door opening code to match hardware schedule.
- C. Deliver keys to Owner by security shipment direct from hardware supplier.

1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five-year warranty.

1.08 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

- A. Provide special wrenches and tools applicable to each different or special hardware component.
- B. Provide maintenance tools and accessories supplied by hardware component manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 KEYING

- A. Door Locks:
  - 1. Coordinate quantity, type, location and final keying needs with owner.

2.02 HNGES

- A. Butts and Hinges: BHMA A156.1.
- B. Template Hinge Dimensions: BHMA A156.7.
- C. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Baldwin Hardware Corporation (BH).
  - 2. Bommer Industries, Inc. (BI).
  - 3. Cal-Royal Products, Inc. (CRP).
  - 4. Hager Companies (HAG).
  - 5. Lawrence Brothers, Inc. (LB).
  - 6. McKinney Products Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (MCK).
  - 7. PBB, Inc. (PBB).
  - 8. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works (STH).

2.03 LOCKS AND LATCHES, GENERAL

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)." ANSI A117.1. FED-STD- 795, "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards."

1. Provide operating devices that do not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist and that operate with a force of not more than 5 lbf (22 N).
  - B. Latches and Locks for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Latches shall not require more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch. Locks shall not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- 2.04 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES
- A. Lock Functions: Function numbers and descriptions indicated in door hardware sets comply with the following:
    1. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2.
    2. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13.
    3. Interconnected Locks: BHMA A156.12.
  - B. Bored Locks:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Best Access Systems; Div. of The Stanley Works (BAS).
      - b. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (CR).
      - c. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (SGT).
      - d. Schlage Commercial Lock Division; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (SCH).
      - e. Yale Commercial Locks and Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (YAL).
- 2.05 KEYING
- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, Appendix A. Incorporate decisions made in keying conference, and as follows:
    1. Master Key System: Cylinders are operated by a change key and a master key.
  - B. Keys: Nickel silver.
    1. Quantity: Reference above Section 201.A
- 2.06 CLOSERS
- A. Accessibility Requirements: Where handles, pulls, latches, locks, and other operating devices are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with [the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG).", ANSI A117.1., FED-STD-795, "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards."
    1. Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements:
      - a. Interior, Non-Fire-Rated Hinged Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied perpendicular to door.
      - b. Sliding or Folding Doors: 5 lbf (22.2 N) applied parallel to door at latch.
      - c. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Door Closers for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Door closers shall not require more than 30 lbf (133 N) to set door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to open door to minimum required width.
  - C. Hold-Open Closers/Detectors: Coordinate and interface integral smoke detector and closer device with fire alarm system.
  - D. Flush Floor Plates: Provide finish cover plates for floor closers unless thresholds are indicated. Match door hardware finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  - E. Recessed Floor Plates: Provide recessed floor plates with insert of floor finish material for floor closers unless thresholds are indicated. Provide extended closer spindle to accommodate thickness of floor finish.
  - F. Power-Assist Closers: As specified in Division 8 Section "Automatic Door Operators" for access doors for people with disabilities or where listed in the door hardware sets.
  - G. Size of Units: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for size of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide factory-sized closers, adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
  - H. Surface Closers: Provide type of arm required for closer to be located on non-public side of door, unless otherwise indicated.
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (CR).
      - b. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (LCN).
      - c. Norton Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (NDC).
      - d. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (SGT).
      - e. Yale Commercial Locks and Hardware; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (YAL).
  - I. Concealed Closers:
    1. Manufacturers:
      - a. LCN Closers; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (LCN).
      - b. Norton Door Controls; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (NDC).

c. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (SGT).

## 2.07 STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Stops and Bumpers:
  - 1. Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are scheduled or indicated. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall stops are not appropriate, provide overhead holders.
- B. Silencers for Wood Door Frames: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1; neoprene or rubber, minimum 5/8 by 3/4 inch (16 by 19 mm); fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.
- C. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1; neoprene or rubber, minimum diameter 1/2 inch (13 mm); fabricated for drilled-in application to frame.
- D. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Baldwin Hardware Corporation (BH).
  - 2. Cal-Royal Products, Inc. (CRP).
  - 3. Glynn-Johnson; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (GJ).
  - 4. Hager Companies (HAG).
  - 5. Hiawatha, Inc. (HIA).
  - 6. IVES Hardware; an Ingersoll-Rand Company (IVS).
  - 7. Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).
  - 8. SARGENT Manufacturing Company; an ASSA ABLOY Group company (SGT).
  - 9. Stanley Commercial Hardware; Div. of The Stanley Works (STH).

## 2.08 DOOR GASKETING

- A. General: Provide continuous weather-strip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated or scheduled. Provide noncorrosive fasteners for exterior applications and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
  - 2. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
  - 3. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.
- B. Air Leakage: Not to exceed 0.50 cfm per foot (0.000774 cu. m/s per m) of crack length for gasketing other than for smoke control, as tested according to ASTM E 283.
- C. Smoke-Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke-control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.
  - 1. Provide smoke-labeled gasketing on 20-minute-rated doors and on smoke-labeled doors.
- D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1408.
- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- F. Gasketing Materials: ASTM D 2000 and AAMA 701/702.
- G. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hager Companies (HAG).
  - 2. National Guard Products (NGP).
  - 3. Pemko Manufacturing Co. (PEM).
  - 4. Zero International (ZRO).

## 2.09 THRESHOLDS

- A. Accessibility Requirements: Where thresholds are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with [the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG).", ANSI A117.1., FED-STD-795, "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards."]
- B. Thresholds for Means of Egress Doors: Comply with NFPA 101. Maximum 1/2 inch (13 mm) high.
- C. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hager Companies (HAG).
  - 2. National Guard Products (NGP).
  - 3. Pemko Manufacturing Co. (PEM).
  - 4. Zero International (ZRO).

## 2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Base Metals: Produce door hardware units of base metal, fabricated by forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness. Furnish metals of a quality equal

to or greater than that of specified door hardware units and BHMA A156.18. Do not furnish manufacturer's standard materials or forming methods if different from specified standard.

- B. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to commercially recognized industry standards for application intended, except aluminum fasteners are not permitted. Provide Phillips flat-head screws with finished heads to match surface of door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Concealed Fasteners: For door hardware units that are exposed when door is closed, except for units already specified with concealed fasteners. Do not use through bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed unless it is the only means of securely attaching the door hardware. Where through bolts are used on hollow door and frame construction, provide sleeves for each through bolt.
  2. Steel Machine or Wood Screws: For the following fire-rated applications:
    - a. Mortise hinges to doors.
    - b. Strike plates to frames.
    - c. Closers to doors and frames.
  3. Steel Through Bolts: For the following fire-rated applications unless door blocking is provided:
    - a. Surface hinges to doors.
    - b. Closers to doors and frames.
    - c. Surface-mounted exit devices.
  4. Spacers or Hex Bolts: For through bolting of hollow-metal doors.
  5. Fasteners for Wood Doors: Comply with requirements in DHI WDHS.2, "Recommended Fasteners for Wood Doors."

#### 2.11 FINISHES

- A. Standard: BHMA A156.18, as indicated in door hardware sets.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that doors and frames are ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that electric power is available to power operated devices and of the correct characteristics.
- C. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- D. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.
- C. Mounting heights for hardware from finished floor to center line of hardware item:
  1. Locksets: 40"
  2. Push/Pulls: 45"
  3. Dead Locks: 54"
  4. Exit Devices: 42"
- D. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.



- E. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.03.1 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door is allowed to close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.
  2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
  3. Door Closers: Unless otherwise required by authorities having jurisdiction, adjust sweep period so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point **3 inches (75 mm)** from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door. Requirements in paragraph below increase cost but are recommended as a good investment on substantial projects even though they may be difficult to monitor.

Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust, including adjusting operating forces, each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

END OF SECTION 08710



## SECTION 08800

### GLAZING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Glass and glazing for Sections referencing this Section for products and installation.

##### 1.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Glass and glazing materials of this Section shall provide continuity of building enclosure vapor and air barrier:
  - 1. To utilize the inner pane of multiple pane sealed units for the continuity of the air and vapor seal.
  - 2. Maintain continuous air and vapor barrier throughout glazed assembly from glass pane to heel bead of glazing sealant.
- B. Size glass to withstand dead loads and positive and negative live loads acting normal to plane of glass as calculated in accordance with UBC 91 code.
- C. Limit glass deflection to 1/200 flexure limit of glass with full recovery of glazing materials, whichever is less.

##### 1.03 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install glazing when ambient temperature is less than 50 degrees F.
- B. Maintain minimum ambient temperature before, during and 24 hours after installation of glazing compounds.

##### 1.04 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings.

##### 1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the Work with glazing frames, wall openings, and perimeter air and vapor seal to adjacent Work.

##### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five-year manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Warranty: Include coverage for sealed glass units from seal failure, inter-pane dusting or misting, reflective coating on mirrors, delamination of laminated glass and replacement of same.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 FLAT GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Float Glass (Type FG): Clear, 1/4-inch-thick minimum. (interior)
- B. Safety Glass (Type SG): Clear, fully tempered with horizontal tempering, 1/4-inch-thick minimum at all locations where glass is less than 18 inches above finished floor and all doors with glazing not specified to be fire-rated. (interior)
- C. Mirror Glass (Type MG): Clear with copper and silver coating, organic overcoating, beveled edges, 1/4-inch-thick minimum, sizes as indicated on drawings.
- D. Fire Rated Glass: Clear, thickness and assembly to meet required rating as listed on the drawings and schedules.

##### 2.02 SEALED INSULATING GLASS MATERIALS

- A. Insulated Glass Units (Type IG): ASTM E774 and E773; 1" and 1/2" total thickness as detailed and noted, double pane with edge seal; outer pane of 1/4 inch glass at exterior, inner pane of 1/4 inch glass.
  - 1. All exterior glazing is to be **Clear, Low-E** per *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*.
  - 2. Products: Guardian Superneutral 68 or approved equal

2.03 GLAZING COMPOUNDS

- A. Exterior windows not shop installed shall be glazed with vinyl or neoprene gaskets, extruded elastic polybutene tape sealant, a combination of polysulphide base compound and elastic glazing compound, or a combination of extruded polysulphide tape, polysulphide base compound elastic glazing compound.
- B. Doors and interior stopped -in glass shall be glazed using putty or elastic glazing compound and stop beads.
- C. Exterior glazing of steel sash shall be DAP Metal Glaze. Interior glazing of steel sash shall be DAP Steel Sash Putty.

2.04 GLAZING ACCESSORIES

- A. Setting Blocks: Neoprene or Silicone, 80 - 90 Shore A durometer hardness, length of 0.1 inch for each square foot of glazing or minimum 4-inch x width of glazing rabbet space minus 1/16-inch x height to suit glazing method and pane weight and area.
- B. Spacer Shims: Neoprene or Silicone, 50 - 60 Shore A durometer hardness, minimum 3-inch-long x one half the height of the glazing stop x thickness to suit application, self adhesive on one face.
- C. Glazing Tape: Preformed butyl compound with integral resilient tube spacing device; 10 - 15 Shore A durometer hardness; coiled on release paper.
- D. Glazing Clips: Manufacturer's standard type.
- E. Mirror Attachment Accessories: Mirror adhesive, chemically compatible with mirror coating and wall substrate.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that openings for glazing are correctly sized and within tolerance.
- B. Verify that surfaces of glazing channels or recesses are clean, free of obstructions, and ready to receive glazing.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Clean contact surfaces with solvent and wipe dry.
- B. Seal porous glazing channels or recesses with substrate compatible primer or sealer.
- C. Prime surfaces scheduled to receive sealant.
- D. Install glazing in accordance with Flat Jobbers Association Glazing Manual.

3.03 INSTALLATION - MIRRORS

- A. Set mirrors with adhesive, applied in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Place plumb and level.

3.04 CLEANING

- A. Remove glazing materials from finish surfaces. Remove labels after work is complete. Clean glass and mirrors.

3.05 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. After installation, mark pane with an "X" by using removable plastic tape or paste. Do not mark heat absorbing or reflective glass units.

END OF SECTION 08800

## SECTION 092400

### CEMENT PLASTERING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- G. Section Includes:
  1. Exterior vertical plasterwork (stucco).
  2. Exterior horizontal and nonvertical plasterwork (stucco).

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- G. Product Data: For each type of product.
- H. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- I. Samples: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- G. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide cement plaster assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance according to ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency.

##### 2.2 METAL LATH

- G. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C 847, cold-rolled carbon-steel sheet with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  1. Diamond-Mesh Lath Self-furring, size as required to match and blend at each area and/or repair. 2.5 lb/sq. yd. (1.4 kg/sq. m), 3/8-Inch (10-mm) Rib Lath: 3.4 lb/sq. yd. (1.8 kg/sq. m)

##### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- G. General: Comply with ASTM C 1063, and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.
- H. Metal Accessories:
  1. Foundation Weep Screenshot: Fabricated from hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
  2. Cornerite: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  3. External- (Outside-) Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
  4. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc.
    - a. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges; use unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Smallnose cornerbead with perforated flanges; use on curved corners.
    - c. Smallnose cornerbead with expanded flanges reinforced by perforated stiffening rib; use on columns and for finishing unit masonry corners.
    - d. Bullnose cornerbead, radius 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum, with expanded flanges; use at locations indicated on Drawings.
  5. Casing Beads: Fabricated from [zinc]; square-edged style; with expanded flanges.
  6. Control Joints: Fabricated from [zinc]; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.

7. Expansion Joints: Fabricated from [**zinc**]; folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with expanded flanges.
  8. Two-Piece Expansion Joints: Fabricated from [**zinc**]; formed to produce slip-joint and square-edged reveal that is adjustable from **1/4 to 5/8 inch (6 to 16 mm)** wide; with perforated flanges.
- I. Plastic Accessories: Manufactured from high-impact PVC.
- 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- G. Water for Mixing and Finishing Plaster: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
  - H. Fiber for Base Coat: Alkaline-resistant glass or polypropylene fibers, **1/2 inch (13 mm)** long, free of contaminants, manufactured for use in cement plaster.
  - I. Bonding Compound: ASTM C 932
  - J. Fasteners for Attaching Metal Lath to Substrates: ASTM C 1063.
  - K. Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, not less than **0.0475-inch (1.21-mm)** diameter unless otherwise indicated.
  - L. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
    1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- 2.5 PLASTER MATERIALS
- G. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I, Type II.
    1. Color for Finish Coats: White or Gray to match existing.
  - B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91, Type N.
    1. Color for Finish Coats: White or Gray to match existing.
  - C. Plastic Cement: ASTM C 1328.
  - D. Colorants for Job-Mixed Finish Coats: Colorfast mineral pigments that produce finish plaster color to as selected or to match Existing.
  - E. Lime: ASTM C 206, Type S; or ASTM C 207, Type S.
  - F. Sand Aggregate: ASTM C 897.
  - G. Perlite Aggregate: ASTM C 35.
  - H. Ready-Mixed Finish-Coat Plaster: Mill-mixed portland cement, aggregates, coloring agents, and proprietary ingredients.
    1. Color: as selected or to Match Existing.
  - I. Acrylic-Based Finish Coatings: Factory-mixed acrylic-emulsion coating systems formulated with colorfast mineral pigments and fine aggregates; for use over cement plaster base coats. Include manufacturer's recommended primers and sealing topcoats for acrylic-based finishes.
    1. Color: as selected or to Match Existing
- 2.6 PLASTER MIXES
- G. General: Comply with ASTM C 926 for applications indicated.
    1. Fiber Content: Add fiber to base-coat mixes after ingredients have mixed at least two minutes. Comply with fiber manufacturer's written instructions for fiber quantities in mixes, but do not exceed 1 lb of fiber/cu. yd. (0.6 kg of fiber/cu. m) of cementitious materials.
  - B. Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: Scratch and brown coats for three-coat plasterwork as follows:
    1. Portland Cement Mixes:
      - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and [0 to 3/4] [3/4 to 1-1/2] parts lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.

- b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and [0 to 3/4] [3/4 to 1-1/2] parts lime. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material, but not less than volume of aggregate used in scratch coat.
  - 2. Masonry Cement Mixes:
    - a. Scratch Coat: Mix 1 part masonry cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
    - b. Brown Coat: Mix 1 part masonry cement and 3 to 5 parts aggregate, but not less than volume of aggregate used in scratch coat.
  - 3. Portland and Masonry Cement Mixes:
    - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
    - b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material, but not less than volume of aggregate used in scratch coat.
  - 4. Plastic Cement Mixes:
    - a. Scratch Coat: Mix 1 part plastic cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
    - b. Brown Coat: Mix 1 part plastic cement and 3 to 5 parts aggregate, but not less than volume of aggregate used in scratch coat.
  - 5. Portland and Plastic Cement Mixes:
    - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part plastic cement and 1 part portland cement. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
    - b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part plastic cement and 1 part portland cement. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material, but not less than volume of aggregate used in scratch coat.
- C. Base-Coat Mixes for Use over [Unit Masonry] [and] [Concrete]: Single base (scratch) coat for two-coat plasterwork on low-absorption plaster bases as follows:
  - 1. Portland Cement Mix: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 0 to 3/4 part lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
  - 2. Portland and Masonry Cement Mix: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
  - 3. Plastic Cement Mix: Use 1 part plastic cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
- D. Base-Coat Mixes for Use over [Unit Masonry] [and] [Concrete]: Single base (scratch) coat for two-coat plasterwork on high-absorption plaster bases as follows:
  - 1. Portland Cement Mix: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 3/4 to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
  - 2. Masonry Cement Mix: Use 1 part masonry cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
  - 3. Portland and Masonry Cement Mix: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
  - 4. Plastic Cement Mix: Use 1 part plastic cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
- E. Job-Mixed Finish-Coat Mixes:
  - 1. Portland Cement Mix: For cementitious materials, mix 1 part portland cement and [3/4 to 1-1/2] [1-1/2 to 2] parts lime. Use 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
  - 2. Masonry Cement Mix: Use 1 part masonry cement and 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate.
  - 3. Portland and Masonry Cement Mix: For cementitious materials, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material.
  - 4. Plastic Cement Mix: Use 1 part plastic cement and 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate.
- F. Factory-Prepared Finish-Coat Mixes: For ready-mixed finish-coat plasters, acrylic-based finish coatings, comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- G. Prepare smooth, solid substrates for plaster according to ASTM C 926.
- H. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Install components according to requirements for design designations from listing organization and publication indicated on Drawings.
- I. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: Where required, install blankets before installing lath unless blankets are readily installed after lath has been installed on one side.

### 3.2 INSTALLING METAL LATH

- G. Metal Lath: Install according to ASTM C 1063.

### 3.3 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

- G. Install according to ASTM C 1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.
- H. Reinforcement for External (Outside) Corners:
  - 1. Install lath-type, external-corner reinforcement at exterior locations.
  - 2. Install cornerbead at interior locations.
- C. Control Joints: Locate as indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 PLASTER APPLICATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926.
- B. Bonding Compound: Apply on unit masonry and concrete substrates for direct application of plaster.
- C. Walls; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork with **3/4-inch (19-mm)** total thickness, as follows:
  - 1. Portland cement mixes.
  - 2. Masonry cement mixes.
  - 3. Portland and masonry cement mixes.
  - 4. Plastic cement mixes.
  - 5. Portland and plastic cement mixes.
- D. Walls; Base-Coat Mix: For base (scratch) coat, for two-coat plasterwork and having [**3/8-inch (10-mm)** thickness on masonry] [**1/4-inch (6-mm)** thickness on concrete], as follows:
  - 1. Portland cement mix.
  - 2. Masonry cement mix.
  - 3. Portland and masonry cement mix.
  - 4. Plastic cement mix.
  - 5. Portland and plastic cement mix.
- E. Plaster Finish Coats: Apply to provide finish to match Existing.
- F. Acrylic-Based Finish Coatings: Apply coating system, including primers, finish coats, and sealing topcoats, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Concealed Exterior Plasterwork: Where plaster application is used as a base for adhered finishes, omit finish coat.
- H. Concealed Interior Plasterwork:
  - 1. Where plaster application is concealed behind built-in cabinets, similar furnishings, and equipment, apply finish coat.
  - 2. Where plaster application is concealed above suspended ceilings and in similar locations, omit finish coat.
  - 3. Where plaster application is used as a base for adhesive application of tile and similar finishes, omit finish coat.



3.5 PLASTER REPAIRS

- A. Repair or replace work to eliminate cracks, dents, blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.

END OF SECTION 092400



## SECTION 09241

### GYPSUM VENEER PLASTERING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Gypsum veneer plaster and gypsum base for interior veneer plaster.
  - 2. Gypsum veneer plaster over interior cementitious backer units.
  - 3. Gypsum veneer plaster over interior masonry surfaces.
  - 4. Gypsum veneer plaster over interior monolithic concrete surfaces.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1.
  - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-load-bearing steel framing.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations, fabrication, and installation of control joints, reveals, and trim; include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each trim accessory and textured finish on rigid backing.

##### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Provide mockups of **ceilings and partitions** in sizes of at least **100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m)**.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

##### 2.2 GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER

- A. One-Component Gypsum Veneer Plaster: ASTM C 587, ready-mixed, smooth, finish-coat veneer plaster formulated for application directly over substrate without use of separate base-coat material.
- B. High-Strength, One-Component Gypsum Veneer Plaster: ASTM C 587, ready-mixed, smooth, finish-coat veneer plaster containing mill-mixed, fine silica sand; with a compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)** when tested according to ASTM C 472; and formulated for application directly over substrate without use of separate base-coat material.
- C. Two-Component Gypsum Veneer Plaster: ASTM C 587, with separate formulations; one for base-coat application and one for finish-coat application over substrates.
  - 1. Base Coat:
  - 2. Smooth Finish Coat:
  - 3. Textured Finish Coat:

- D. High-Strength, Two-Component Gypsum Veneer Plaster: ASTM C 587, ready-mixed, base-coat plaster and smooth finish-coat veneer plaster containing mill-mixed, fine silica sand; with a compressive strength of **3000 psi (20 MPa)** when tested according to ASTM C 472.

### 2.3 PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Gypsum Base for Veneer Plaster: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: **To match existing**.
- B. Gypsum Base for Veneer Plaster, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: **To match existing**.
- C. Gypsum Base for Veneer Plaster, Type C: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to have increased fire-resistive capability.
  - 1. Thickness: **[1/2 inch (12.7 mm)] [As indicated] <Insert dimension>**.
- D. Glass-Mat Interior Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1658/C 1658M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core; **[non-rated] [fire-resistive rated]**; glass-mat facing on both sides of panel.
  - 1. Core: **[1/2 inch (12.7 mm), regular type] [1/2 inch (12.7 mm), Type X] [5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X]**.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- E. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 and approved by backer unit manufacturer for use as veneer plaster substrate.
  - 1. Thickness: **[1/2 inch (12.7 mm)] [As indicated] <Insert dimension>**.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
- F. Backing Panels for Multilayer Applications: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M gypsum base or gypsum board, as recommended by gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer, for application method and thicknesses indicated.
  - 1. Core: Matching face layer unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Thickness: Matching face layer unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.4 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Standard Trim: ASTM C 1047, approved for use in gypsum veneer plaster applications indicated.
  - 1. Material: **[Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-coated steel sheet; rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet] [Galvanized-steel sheet, aluminum-coated steel sheet, or rolled zinc] [Plastic] [Paper-faced, galvanized-steel sheet]**.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.

### 2.5 JOINT-REINFORCING MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with joint strength requirements in ASTM C 587 and with gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer's written recommendations for each application indicated.
- B. Joint Tape: **[As recommended by gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer for applications indicated] [Paper] [Open-mesh, glass fiber]**.
- C. Embedding Material for Joint Tape: As recommended by gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer for use with joint-tape material and gypsum veneer plaster applications indicated.

### 2.6 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 631 polyvinyl acetate.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended by manufacturer for directly adhering gypsum-base, face-layer panels to backing-layer panels in multilayer construction.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** thick.
- D. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

- E. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I; Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- F. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant, complying with ASTM C 834.
- G. Patching Mortar: Dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a **No. 16 (1.18-mm)** sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Gypsum Base for Veneer Plaster: Apply according to ASTM C 844 unless manufacturer's written recommendations are more stringent.
  - 1. Erection Tolerance: No more than **1/16-inch (1.6-mm)** offsets between planes of gypsum base panels, and **1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m)** noncumulative, for level, plumb, warp, and bow.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum base for veneer plaster.
- D. Cementitious Backer Units: Install according to ANSI A108.11.
  - 1. Where cementitious backer units abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.
- E. Trim: Install trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, and attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Control Joints: Install as required and recommended by Plaster Standards.
- G. Gypsum Base: Reinforce interior angles and flat joints with joint tape and embedding material to comply with ASTM C 843 and with gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer's written recommendations.
- H. Abuse-Resistant Base: Reinforce joints between abuse-resistant panels with joint tape and embedding material according to panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
- I. Glass-Mat Interior Gypsum Board: Reinforce joints between moisture- and mold-resistant panels with joint tape and embedding material according to panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

#### 3.2 GYPSUM VENEER PLASTERING

- A. Bonding Agent: Apply bonding agent on dry according to gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Mixing: Mechanically mix gypsum veneer plaster materials to comply with ASTM C 843 and with gypsum veneer plaster manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Application: Comply with ASTM C 843 and with veneer plaster manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - 1. One-Component Gypsum Veneer Plaster: Trowel apply plaster over substrate to uniform thickness. Fill all voids and imperfections. Immediately double back with same mixer batch of plaster to a uniform total thickness of **1/16 to 3/32 inch (1.6 to 2.4 mm)**.
  - 2. Two-Component Gypsum Veneer Plaster:
    - a. Base Coat: Hand trowel or machine apply base coat over substrate to a uniform thickness of **1/16 to 3/32 inch (1.6 to 2.4 mm)**. Fill voids and imperfections.
    - b. Finish Coat: Trowel apply finish-coat plaster over base-coat plaster to a uniform thickness of **1/16 to 3/32 inch (1.6 to 2.4 mm)**.
  - 3. Where gypsum veneer plaster abuts metal, including doorframes, windows and other units, groove finish coat to eliminate spalling.

4. Do not apply veneer plaster to gypsum base if paper facing has degraded from exposure to sunlight. Before applying veneer plaster, use remedial methods to restore bonding capability to degraded paper facing according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
- D. Concealed Surfaces: Do not omit gypsum veneer plaster behind cabinets, furniture, furnishings, and similar removable items. Omit veneer plaster in the following areas where it will be concealed from view in the completed Work unless otherwise indicated or required to maintain fire-resistance and STC ratings:
1. Above suspended ceilings.
  2. Behind wood paneling.
- E. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Finish: To match existing.

END OF SECTION 092613

## SECTION 092900

### GYPSUM BOARD

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
  - 2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
  - 3. Tile backing panels.
  - 4. Texture finishes.

##### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Samples: For each texture finish indicated on same backing indicated for Work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

##### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

##### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm)**.
  - 2. Long Edges: **Tapered**.
- B. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
  - 1. Thickness: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X**.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

##### 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C 1178/C 1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Core: **5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X**.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or ASTM C 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Thickness: **1/4 inch (6.4 mm)**.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: [**Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet**] [**Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc**] [**Plastic**] [**Paper-faced galvanized-steel sheet**].
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. Bullnose bead.
    - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - f. Expansion (control) joint.
    - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: **Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc**.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
  - 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  - 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Prefilling: At open joints, **rounded or beveled panel edges**, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use **setting-type taping** compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  - 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use **setting-type, sandable topping** compound.
  - 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use **setting-type, sandable topping** compound.
  - 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use **setting-type, sandable topping compound**.
- D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
  - 1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  - 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.
- E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.



## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm)** thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072600 "Vapor Retarders."

## 2.8 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Polystyrene Aggregate Ceiling Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, polystyrene aggregate finish with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
  - 1. Texture: **Light spatter.**
  - 2. Aggregate Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, aggregated, drying-type texture finish for spray application.
  - 3. Texture: **Light spatter.**
- C. Non-Aggregate Finish: Premixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Texture: **Light Spatter.**

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS

- A. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- B. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- C. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-)** wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- D. For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Prefill open joints[, **rounded or beveled edges,**] and damaged surface areas.
- F. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- G. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: **Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas.**
  - 2. Level 2: **Panels that are substrate for tile.**

**3. Level 4: Panels exposed to view specifically & critical at surfaces perpendicular to Windows.**

H. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 APPLYING TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 092900

## SECTION 09306

### FLOOR AND WALL TILE

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tile floor finish using the thinset application method.
- B. Tile wall finish using the thinset application method.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Product Data: Provide instructions for using adhesives and grouts.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples illustrating pattern, color variations, and grout color.

##### 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site.
- B. Protect adhesives from freezing or overheating in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not install adhesives in an unventilated environment.
- B. Maintain 50 degrees F during installation of mortar materials.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 TILE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Exterior Wall Tile: Ceramic or Porcelain Tile – **See Section 2.02A Below**
- B. Interior Floor & Wall Tile: Ceramic or Porcelain Tile – **See Section 2.02B/2.02C Below**
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements as equal or better.

##### 2.02 TILE MATERIALS

- A. EXTERIOR WALL TILE: Ceramic or Porcelain: ANSI A137.1
  - 1. **Daltile, Indoterra, Color: Volcanic Ash Rectangle V2**
  - 2. Size: 12x24
  - 3. Finish: Matte
  - 4. Location: 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor window infills, first floor storefront alcoves. Reference Elevations.
- B. INTERIOR FLOOR TILE: Ceramic or Porcelain: ANSI A137.1
  - 1. *To be selected by Owner/Interior Designer.*
- C. INTERIOR WALL TILE: Ceramic or Porcelain
  - 1. *To be selected by Owner/Interior Designer.*

##### 2.03 ADHESIVE MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: thinset bond type as recommended and/or manufactured by the tile manufacturer.

##### 2.04 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Mortar Materials: Portland cement, sand, latex additive, and water as recommended and/or manufactured by the tile manufacturer, color to be selected.

##### 2.05 GROUT MIX

- A. Mix and proportion pre-mix grout materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. *Color to be selected by Owner/Interior Designer.*

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work.

- 3.02 PREPARATION
- A. Protect surrounding work from damage or disfiguration.
  - B. Vacuum clean surfaces and damp clean.
  - C. Seal substrate surface cracks with filler. Level existing substrate surfaces to acceptable flatness tolerances.
  - D. Apply sealer conditioner to substrate surfaces in accordance with adhesive manufacturer's instructions.
- 3.03 INSTALLATION - THINSET METHOD
- A. Install adhesive tile, thresholds, and grout in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and/or the TCA Handbook.
  - B. Lay tile to pattern indicated. Do not interrupt tile pattern through openings.
  - C. Place edge strips at exposed tile edges.
  - D. Cut and fit tile tight to penetrations through tile. Form corners and bases neatly. Align floor, base and wall joints.
  - E. Place tile joints uniform in width, subject to variance in tolerance allowed in tile size. Make joints watertight, without voids, cracks, excess mortar, or excess grout.
  - F. Sound tile after setting. Replace hollow sounding units.
  - G. Keep expansion, control joints free of adhesive or grout. Apply sealant to joints.
  - H. Allow tile to set for a minimum of 48 hours prior to grouting.
  - I. Grout tile joints.
  - J. Apply sealant to junction of tile and dissimilar materials and junction of dissimilar planes.
  - K. Install shower pan per manufacturer's instructions.
- 3.04 CLEANING
- A. Clean tile and grout surfaces.
- 3.05 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK
- A. Do not permit traffic over finished floor surface for 4 days after installation.

END OF SECTION 09306

SECTION 095110

ACOUSTICAL CEILINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Suspended metal grid ceiling system and perimeter trim.
- B. Acoustical Lay-in Tiles

1.02 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Installed System: Conform to Fed. Spec. SS-S-118B flame spread 25 or under UL Labeled for ceiling assembly.
- B. Suspension system to rigidly secure acoustical ceiling system including integral mechanical and electrical components with maximum deflection of 1/360.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on metal grid system components, and acoustical units.
- B. Samples: Submit two samples illustrating material and finish of acoustical units.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples each, of suspension system main runner, cross runner, and edge trim.

1.04 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Grid and Tile Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Conform to applicable code for combustibility requirements for materials.

1.05 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain uniform temperature of minimum 60 degrees F, and maximum humidity of 40 percent prior to, during, and after acoustical unit installation.

1.06 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide 40 sq. ft. of extra tile to Owner. (Each type.)

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS - SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Armstrong Contract Interiors:
  - 1. Type I (All Locations unless noted otherwise). Prelude XL 15/16" exposed tee grid, 2'x2', white.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

2.02 SUSPENSION SYSTEM MATERIALS

- A. Grid Materials: Commercial quality cold rolled steel with galvanized coating.
- B. Exposed Grid Surface Width: 15/16 inch and 9/16 inch.
- C. Accessories: Stabilizer bars, clips, splices, edge moldings, hold down clips, and light protection hoods required for rated suspended grid systems.
- D. Support Channels and Hangers: Galvanized steel; size and type to suit application and ceiling system flatness requirement specified.

2.03 MANUFACTURERS - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Armstrong Contract Interiors
  - 1. Type I (Occurs at all Acoustic Suspended Ceilings). 24"x24" Fine Fissured High NRC, Angled Tegular Edge, White. NRC 0.75.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Touch-up Paint: Type and color to match acoustical and grid units.
- B. Manufacturers accessories for complete and finished assembly.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that layout of hangers will not interfere with other work.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION - LAY-IN GRID SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Install suspension system in accordance with ASTM C636 and manufacturer's instructions and as supplemented in this section.
- B. Install system capable of supporting imposed loads to a deflection of 1/360 maximum.
- C. Lay out system to a balanced grid design with edge units no less than 50 percent of acoustical unit size.
- D. Locate system on room axis according to reflected plan.
- E. Install after major above ceiling work is complete. Coordinate the location of hangers with other work.
- F. Supply hangers or inserts for installation to Section with instructions for their correct placement.
- G. Hang suspension system independent of walls, columns, ducts, pipes and conduit. Where carrying members are spliced, avoid visible displacement of face plane of adjacent members.
- H. Where ducts or other equipment prevent the regular spacing of hangers, reinforce the nearest affected hangers and related carrying channels to span the extra distance.
- I. Do not support components on main runners or cross runners if weight causes total dead load to exceed deflection capability. Support fixture loads by supplementary hangers located within 6 inches of each corner; or support components independently.
- J. Do not eccentrically load system, or produce rotation of runners.
- K. Install edge molding at intersection of ceiling and vertical surfaces, using longest practical lengths. Miter corners. Provide edge moldings at junctions with other interruptions.
- L. Form expansion joints as required or detailed. Form to accommodate plus or minus 1 inch movement. Maintain visual closure.
- M. Install light fixture boxes constructed of gypsum board above light fixtures in accordance with UL assembly requirements.
- N. Install additional hangers at fire rated ceiling assemblies, per manufacturer's instruction or UL tested assembly.
- O. Coordinate installation of suspension system with (but not limited too): fire sprinkler heads, mechanical grilles/louvers, light fixtures.**

### 3.03 INSTALLATION - ACOUSTICAL UNITS

- A. Install acoustical units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Fit acoustical units in place, free from damaged edges or other defects detrimental to appearance and function.
- C. Lay directional patterned units one way with pattern parallel to shortest room axis. Fit border trim neatly against abutting surfaces.
- D. Install units after above ceiling work is complete.
- E. Install acoustical units level, in uniform plane, and free from twist, warp and dents.
- F. Cut tile to fit irregular grid and perimeter edge trim. Field rabbet tile edge. Double cut and field paint exposed edges of tegular units.
- G. Lay acoustical insulation for a distance of 48 inches either side of acoustical partitions.
- H. Install hold-down clips to retain panels tight to grid system as required for to meet ratings.
- I. Coordinate installation of acoustical units with (but not limited too): fire sprinkler heads, mechanical grilles/louvers, light fixtures.**

### 3.04 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from Flat and Level Surface: 1/8 inch in 10 feet.

END OF SECTION 095110

## SECTION 09650

### RESILIENT FLOORING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Vinyl sheet Flooring and Vinyl Plank Flooring

##### 1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of the General Requirements.
- B. Protect roll materials from damage.

##### 1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Store materials for three days prior to installation in area of installation to achieve temperature stability.
- B. Maintain ambient temperature required by adhesive manufacturer three days prior to, during, and 24 hours after installation of materials.

##### 1.05 MAINTENANCE DATA

- A. Maintenance Data: Include maintenance procedures, recommended maintenance materials, and suggested schedule for cleaning, stripping, and re-waxing.

##### 1.06 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide 60 sq ft of flooring, 10 lineal feet of base, and stair materials of each material specified.

##### 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. 3 year light commercial warranty

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MATERIALS – LUXURY VINYL TILE

- A. Luxury Vinyl Tile: **As Selected by Owner/Interior Designer**
  - 1. Tile Size: As Selected by Owner/Interior Designer
  - 2. Overall Thickness: 5 mm
  - 3. Wear Layer Thickness: 22 mil
  - 4. Installation Pattern: As Selected by Owner/Interior Designer
  - 2. Location: Reference Floors Plans on Sheet A10.0 and Schedule on A10.1
  - 3. Approved Manufacturers:
    - a) Tarkett, Armstrong, Patcraft, Shaw, J&J, Philadelphia, Mohawk
    - b) Or as approved equal.

##### 2.03 MATERIALS – RUBBER BASE

- A. Base: FS SS-W-40. Rubber; coved wall base; pre-molded external corners
  - 1. Approved **Manufacturers: Johnsonite, Tarkett, Roppe**
  - 2. Color: As Selected by Owner/Interior Designer
  - 3. Height: 4"
  - 4. Thickness: 1/8 inch thick
  - 5. Length: Roll (Strips are not acceptable.)

##### 2.04 ACCESSORIES

- A. Subfloor Filler: White premix latex; type recommended by adhesive material manufacturer.
- B. Primers and Adhesives: Waterproof; types recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- C. Edge Strips: Flooring material as approved.
- D. Sealer and Wax: Types recommended by flooring manufacturer.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify concrete floors are dry to a maximum moisture content of 7 percent, and exhibit negative alkalinity, carbonization, or dusting.
- B. Verify floor and lower wall surfaces are free of substances that may impair adhesion of new adhesive and finish materials.

- 3.02 PREPARATION
- A. Remove sub-floor ridges and bumps. Fill minor or local low spots, cracks, joints, holes, and other defects with sub-floor filler to achieve smooth, flat, hard surface.
  - B. Prohibit traffic until filler is cured.
  - C. Vacuum clean substrate.
  - D. Apply primer as recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.05 INSTALLATION – RESILIENT TILE FLOORING
- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
  - B. Spread only enough adhesive to permit installation of materials before initial set.
  - C. Set flooring in place, press with heavy roller to attain full adhesion.
  - D. Lay flooring with joints and seams parallel to building lines to produce symmetrical tile pattern.
  - E. Terminate flooring at centerline of door openings where adjacent floor finish is dissimilar.
  - F. Install resilient edge strips at unprotected or exposed edges, and where flooring terminates.
  - G. Scribe flooring to walls, columns, cabinets, floor outlets, and other appurtenances to produce tight joints.
- 3.06 INSTALLATION - BASE
- A. Fit joints tight and vertical. Maintain minimum measurement of 18 inches between joints.
  - B. Miter internal corners. At external corners, use pre-molded units or “V” cut back of base strip to 2/3 of its thickness and fold. At exposed ends, use pre-molded units.
  - C. Install base on solid backing. Bond tight to wall and floor surfaces.
  - D. Scribe and fit to door frames and other interruptions.
- 3.07 CLEANING
- A. Clean all work as described in the General Requirements.
  - B. Remove excess adhesive from floor, base, and wall surfaces without damage.
  - C. Clean, seal, and wax floor and base surfaces in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
- 3.08 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK
- A. Protect finished Work.
  - B. Prohibit traffic on floor finish for 48 hours after installation.

END OF SECTION 09650



SECTION 09900  
PAINTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surface preparation and field application of paints and coatings.

1.02 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Applicator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum years documented experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.03 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site.
- B. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.
- C. Container label to include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- D. Store paint materials at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.04 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- B. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is outside the humidity ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.
- C. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 45 degrees F for interiors; 50 degrees F for exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish and Finishes: 65 degrees F for interior or exterior, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Provide lighting level of 80 foot candles measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer - Paint, Transparent Finishes, Stain, Primer Sealers, and Block Filler by SHERWIN-WILLIAMS or as approved equal.

2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Coatings: Ready mixed, except field catalyzed coatings. Process pigments to a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating; good flow and brushing properties; capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
- B. Accessory Materials: Linseed oil, shellac, turpentine, paint thinners and other materials not specifically indicated but required to achieve the finishes specified, of commercial quality.
- C. Patching Materials: Latex filler.
- D. Fastener Head Cover Materials: Latex filler.
- E. All interior paints and primers shall comply with Green Seal standards for low VOC limits.

2.03 FINISHES

- A. Refer to schedule at end of section for surface finish schedule.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and substrate conditions are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report any condition that may potentially affect proper application.
- C. Test shop applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Remove or mask electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- B. Correct defects and clean surfaces which affect work of this section. Remove existing coatings that exhibit loose surface defects.
- C. Seal with shellac and seal marks which may bleed through surface finishes.
- D. Impervious Surfaces: Remove mildew by scrubbing with solution of trisodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- E. **Decorative Pressed Metal, & Aluminum Surfaces Scheduled for Paint Finish:** Use approved abrasive cleaning with media approved for substrate - Remove existing paint, surface contamination, and caulking, by media blasting, steam or other approved methods. Apply etching primer or paint primer immediately following cleaning.
- F. Asphalt, Creosote, or Bituminous Surfaces Scheduled for Paint Finish: Remove foreign particles to permit adhesion of finishing materials. Apply compatible sealer or primer.
- G. Insulated Coverings: Remove dirt, grease, and oil from canvas and cotton.
- H. Concrete Floors: Remove contamination, acid etch, and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- I. Copper Surfaces Scheduled for a Paint Finish: Remove contamination by steam, high pressure water, or solvent washing. Apply vinyl etch primer immediately following cleaning.
- J. Copper Surfaces Scheduled for a Natural Oxidized Finish: Remove contamination by applying oxidizing solution of copper acetate and ammonium chloride in acetic acid. Rub on repeatedly for required effect. Once attained, rinse surfaces with clear water and allow to dry.
- K. Gypsum Board Surfaces: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.
- L. Galvanized Surfaces: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent. Apply coat of etching primer.
- M. **Concrete, Brick and Unit Masonry Surfaces Scheduled to Receive Paint or Sealer Finish:** Such as all interior Brick & masonry walls, Use approved abrasive cleaning with media approved for substrate - Remove dirt, loose mortar, scale, salt or alkali powder, and other foreign matter. Remove oil and grease with a solution of trisodium phosphate; rinse well and allow to dry. Remove stains caused by weathering of corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water. Allow to dry.
- N. **Plaster Surfaces:** Fill hairline cracks, small holes, and imperfections with latex patching plaster. Make smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Wash and neutralize high alkali surfaces.
- O. **Uncoated Steel and Iron Surfaces:** Such as existing exterior trusses, Use approved abrasive cleaning with media approved for substrate - Remove rust, paint, caulk, grease, mill scale, weld splatter, and dirt. Where heavy coatings of scale are evident, remove by hand, power tool wire brushing or sandblasting; clean by washing with solvent. Apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts, and nuts are similarly cleaned. Spot prime paint after repairs.
- P. Shop Primed Steel Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.
- Q. **Interior Wood Items Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish:** Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after primer has dried; sand between coats.
- R. Interior Wood Items Scheduled to Receive Transparent Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to sealing, seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after sealer has dried; sand lightly between coats.
- S. Exterior Wood Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior caulking compound after prime coat has been applied.
- T. Exterior Wood Scheduled to Receive Transparent Finish: Remove dust, grit, and foreign matter; seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes with tinted exterior caulking compound after sealer has been applied.
- U. Glue-Laminated Beams: Prior to finishing, wash surfaces with solvent, remove grease and dirt.
- V. Wood and Metal Doors Scheduled for Painting: Seal top and bottom edges with primer.

### 3.03 APPLICATION

- A. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry.
- C. Apply each coat to uniform finish.
- D. Apply each coat of paint slightly darker than preceding coat unless otherwise approved.
- E. Sand wood and metal lightly between coats to achieve required finish.
- F. Vacuum clean surfaces free of loose particles. Use tack cloth just prior to applying next coat.
- G. Allow applied coat to dry before next coat is applied.
- H. Where clear finishes are required, tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.
- I. Prime concealed surfaces of interior and exterior woodwork with primer paint.
- J. Prime concealed surfaces of interior woodwork scheduled to receive stain or varnish finish with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with mineral spirits.

### 3.04 FINISHING MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.
- B. Prime and paint insulated and exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, insulated and exposed ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports except where items are prefinished.
- C. Paint interior surfaces of air ducts, and convector and baseboard heating cabinets that are visible through grilles and louvers with one coat of flat black paint, to visible surfaces. Paint dampers exposed behind louvers, grilles, and convector and baseboard cabinets to match face panels.
- D. Paint exposed conduit and electrical equipment occurring in finished areas.
- E. Paint both sides and edges of plywood backboards for electrical and telephone equipment before installing equipment.
- F. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Collect waste material which may constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers and remove daily from site.

### 3.06 SCHEDULE

The following are for exterior and interior surfaces, and are all products of Sherwin-Williams.

#### EXTERIOR SURFACES

- 1. WOOD (Excluding Plywood)
  - A. Satin Finish/Latex Base
    - 1st Coat: Exterior Oil Based Wood Primer
    - 2nd Coat: Duration, Satin
    - 3rd Coat: Duration, Satin
- 2. PLYWOOD & SIDING
  - A. Satin Finish/Latex Base
    - 1st Coat: Exterior Oil Based Wood Primer
    - 2nd Coat: Duration, Satin
    - 3rd Coat: Duration, Satin
- 3. FERROUS METAL (Handrails, Existing Trusses)
  - A. Painted (Gloss Finish/Alkyd Base)
    - Primer: B66W1310 Pro-Cryl Acrylic Primer
    - 1st Coat: B66W01153 Pro Ind, DTM Acrylic
    - 2nd Coat: B66W01153 Pro Ind, DTM Acrylic
- 4. GALVANIZED METAL
  - A. Painted (Satin Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: Duration, Satin
    - 2nd Coat: Duration, Satin

5. ALUMINUM
  - A. Painted (Satin Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: Duration, Satin
    - 2nd Coat: Duration, Satin
6. CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS
  - A. Painted (Satin Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: Loxon Primer/Sealer
    - 2nd Coat: Duration, Satin
    - 3rd Coat: Duration, Satin
7. CONCRETE, STUCCO, BRICK
  - A. Painted (Satin Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: Loxon Primer/Sealer
    - 2nd Coat: Duration, Satin
    - 3rd Coat: Duration, Satin
8. TRAFFIC AND PARKING LINE MARKING
  - A. Painted (ProMar Traffic Marking Paint)
    - 1st Coat: B29W1-WHITE, or B29Y2-YELLOW

## INTERIOR SURFACES

1. WOOD AND PLYWOOD
  - A. Existing Wood Structure, (Beams, Columns, Floor Joists & Decking)
    - Primer: B51W00450 – Int/Ext Latex Primer
    - 2nd Coat: A75W00051 – Solo Int/Ext Acrylic Eg-Shel
    - 3rd Coat: A75W00051 – Solo Int/Ext Acrylic Eg-Shel
  - B. Other, Painted (Eg-Shel Finish/Alkyd Base)
    - 1st Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Primer, B49W2
    - 2nd Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Eg-Shel, B20W200
    - 3rd Coat: ProMar 200 Eg-Shel, B20W200
  - C. Stained and Varnished (Clear Finish) Opened Grained Wood
    - 1st Coat: Interior Wood Stain, A48
    - 2nd Coat: Sherwood 100 Fast Dri Semi-Paste Filler D70T1
    - 3rd Coat: Oil Base Gloss Varnish, A66V91
    - 4th Coat: Oil Base Gloss Varnish, A66V91 or Oil Base Satin Varnish, A66F90
2. CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS
  - A. Painted (Eg-Shel Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: ProMar Block Filler, B25W1
    - 2nd Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Eg-Shel, B20W200
    - 3rd Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Eg-Shel, B20W200
3. CONCRETE, MASONRY EPOXY SYSTEM (SOLVENT BASE)
  - A. Painted (Semi-Gloss Finish)
    - 1st Coat: Tile-Clad II Epoxy, B62W100 Series
    - 2nd Coat: Tile-Clad II Epoxy, B62W100 Series
    - Additional Coats to ensure consistent Sheen  
(9 mils wet, 4 mils dry per coat)
- 3B. BRICK, WALLS, EXISTING TO BE EXPOSED
  - A. Painted (Latex)
    - Primer: LX03W0100 – LXN Condition Wht
    - 1st Coat: B20w12651 – PROMAR 200, Interior Eg-Shell
    - 2nd Coat: B20w12651 – PROMAR 200, Interior Eg-Shell
  - B. Clear Seal (UltraPaver - Clear Sealer)
    - 1st Coat: 50.146054 UltraPaver, Clear
    - 2nd Coat: 50.146054 UltraPaver, Clear

4. GYPSUM WALLBOARD
  - A. Painted (Eg-Shel Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Wall Primer, B28W200
    - 2nd Coat: ProMar 200 Alkyd Eg-Shel Enamel, B33W200
    - 3rd Coat: ProMar 200 Alkyd Eg-Shel Enamel, B33W200
  
5. FERROUS METAL (Gloss, Handrails)
  - A. Painted (Gloss Finish/Alkyd Base)
    - Primer: B66W1310 Pro-Cryl Acrylic Primer
    - 1st Coat: B66W01153 Pro Ind, DTM Acrylic
    - 2nd Coat: B66W01153 Pro Ind, DTM Acrylic
  
6. GALVANIZED METAL
  - A. Painted (Flat Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Flat Wall Paint, B30W200
    - 2nd Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Flat Wall Paint, B30W200
  
7. DECORATIVE PRESSED METAL, EXISTING HISTORICAL
  - A. Painted (Flat Finish/Latex Base)
    - Primer: B66W1310 Pro-Cryl Acrylic Primer
    - 1st Coat: B66W01153 Pro Ind, DTM Acrylic
    - 2nd Coat: B66W01153 Pro Ind, DTM Acrylic
  
8. ALUMINUM
  - A. Painted (Flat Finish/Latex Base)
    - 1st Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Flat Wall Paint, B30W200
    - 2nd Coat: ProMar 200 Latex Flat Wall Paint, B30W200
  
9. CONCRETE FLOORS (SEALED)
  - A. Painted (Clear Acrylic Floor Finish)
    - 1st Coat: Concrete and Terrazzo Sealer B44V22 or W.R. Meadows – TIAH

END OF SECTION 09900



## SECTION 10160

### SOLID PHENOLIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. **Solid Phenolic Composite toilet compartments, floor mounted**
- B. **Urinal screens; wall mounted.**

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Indicate partition plan, elevation views, dimensions, details of wall, floor, and ceiling supports, door swings.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on panel construction, hardware, and accessories.
- C. Samples: Submit two samples illustrating panel finish, color, and sheen.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, perimeter conditions requiring special attention.

##### 1.03 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated on shop drawings and instructed by the manufacturer.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. GLOBAL PARTITIONS – Black-core phenolic, full range of colors.
- B. BRADLEY –Solid Phenolic, full range of colors.
- C. GENERAL PARTITIONS - Solid phenolic, full range of colors.
- D. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Sheet: High Pressure laminate bonded to solid phenolic core.
- B. Core Construction: Solid Phenolic core.
  - 1. ¾" thick pilasters.
  - 2. ¾" thick doors.
  - 3. ½" thick panels.

##### 2.03 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pilaster Shoe: Formed stainless steel with polished finish, 4 inches high, with adjustable screw jack.
- B. Attachments, Screws, and Bolts: Stainless steel; vandal resistant type, heavy duty extruded aluminum brackets. High-abuse industrial grade brackets and anchors shall be provided.
- C. Hardware: Non-Corrosive heavy duty, industrial grade components required:
  - 1. Pivot hinges, gravity type, adjustable for door close positioning.
  - 2. Nylon bearings.
  - 3. Thumb turn door latch with exterior emergency access feature. ADA compliant at handicap stalls.
  - 4. Door strike and keeper with rubber bumper.
  - 5. Coat hook with rubber bumper.
  - 6. Door pull for out swinging doors.
  - 7. **Full length aluminum angle mounting brackets with associated fasteners for panels and pilasters where intersect walls. Panels shall thru-bolt to brackets.**

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify correct spacing of and between plumbing fixtures.
- B. Verify correct location of built-in framing, anchorage, and bracing.
- C. Contractor shall install all overhead structure, wall blocking, reinforcing for complete and secure installation of overhead and floor mounted units.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install partitions secure, rigid, plumb, and level in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Maintain 3/8 to 1/2 inch space between wall and panels and between wall and end pilasters.
- C. Attach panel brackets securely to walls using anchor devices.
- D. Attach panels and pilasters to brackets with tamper proof through bolts and nuts. Locate head rail joints at pilaster center lines.
- E. Anchor urinal screen panels to walls with continuous panel brackets. All panels to be thru-bolted.
- F. Provide adjustment for floor variations with screw jack through steel saddles integral with pilaster. Conceal floor fastenings with pilaster shoes.
- G. Support pilasters from built-in framing using two adjustable hanging studs providing vertical leveling. Conceal ceiling fastenings with pilaster shoe.
- H. Equip each door with two hinges, one door latch, one coat hook and bumper; outswinging door with pull.
- I. Install door strike and keeper with door bumper on each pilaster in alignment with door latch.
- J. Replace damaged or scratched materials with new materials.

3.03 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation From True Position: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation From Plumb: 1/8 inch.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and align hardware to uniform clearance at vertical edge of doors, not exceeding 3/16 inch.
- B. Adjust hinges to position doors in open position (2"-4") when unlatched. Return outswinging doors to closed position. Confirm final adjustment and door location with owner in the field.
- C. Adjust adjacent components for consistency of line or plane.

END OF SECTION 10160



## SECTION 10431

### SIGNAGE

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Interior signage
  - 2. Exterior Signage – not included – *to be provided by owner*
- B. Contractor shall install and furnish Interior Signage: Apartments, Mechanical Rooms, Offices, Restrooms, etc. – (Tactile and Braille Signage)
- C. Signage design should be approved by architect/owner. Contractor to submit design options to Architect prior to Final Shop Drawing Submittal.
- D. All signs are to comply with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1. Including, but not limited to: installation height and location, size and tactile & braille requirements.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
  - 1. Show sign design
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
  - 3. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for the full range of color, texture, and sign material indicated, of sizes indicated:
  - 1. Plaque Casting: 6 inches (150 mm) square including border.
  - 2. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Samples of each type of dimensional character letter, number, and graphic element.
  - 3. Aluminum: For each form, finish, and color, on **6-inch- (150-mm-)** long sections of extrusions and squares of sheet at least **4 by 4 inches (100 by 100 mm)**.
- E. Maintenance Data: For signs to include maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this section.

##### 1.5 SIGN SCHEDULE

- 1. **Interior Signage:** Coordinate design, final numbering, and locations with architect. To include (but not limited to): Apartments; Offices; Restrooms; Party Rooms; Mechanical and Electrical Rooms; Storage Rooms; Stairwells and Required Exits; Maintenance Rooms; etc.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit installation of signs in exterior locations to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
  - B. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.
- 1.9 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
    - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - a. Deterioration of metal and polymer finishes beyond normal weathering.
      - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image colors and sign lamination.
    - 2. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M)**, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.
  - B. Interior Signage - Tactile and Braille Signage: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with domed or rounded shape.
    - 1. Panel Material: **Opaque acrylic sheet**.
    - 2. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than **1/32 inch (0.8 mm)**.
- 2.2 ACCESSORIES
- A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.
- 2.3 FABRICATION
- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
    - 1. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
    - 2. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
    - 3. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.
    - 4. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.
- 2.4 FINISHES, GENERAL
- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
  - C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.5 ACRYLIC SHEET FINISHES

- A. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy **and background** colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for **three** years for application intended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Verify that items, **including anchor inserts** are sized and located to accommodate signs.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within **3 inches (75 mm)** of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.

### 3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 10431



## SECTION 10522

### FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, CABINETS, AND ACCESSORIES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fire extinguishers; Reference drawings –
  1. Cabinets with Extinguishers (Fired-Rated and Non-Rated), where indicated on the floor plans.
  2. Wall Mounted Extinguishers, where indicated on floor plans.

##### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide extinguisher operational features, color and finish, and anchorage details.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special criteria and wall opening coordination requirements.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. LARSEN'S Architectural Series Fire Extinguisher Cabinets. Fire rated cabinets (FS) where indicated to be installed in fire rated assemblies, Ref. CFP sheet.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.

##### 2.02 EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Dry Chemical Type: Larsen's MP series MP5 (5 lb capacity), Cast steel tank, with pressure gage.

##### 2.03 CABINETS

- A. LARSEN'S - Architectural Series SS 2409-R3 & FS 2409-R3, Vertical Duo Door with Larsen-Loc. Fire rated cabinets (FS) where indicated to be installed in fire rated assemblies, Ref. CFP sheet.
- B. Interior Metal: Formed sheet steel, baked enamel box.
- C. Configuration: Semi-recessed type, exterior nominal dimensions of 27-1/2 inch high x 13 inch wide x 5 inch deep.
- D. Trim Type: Returned to wall surface, with 2-1/2 inch projection.
- E. Exterior Door and Trim: Stainless Steel, reinforced for flatness and rigidity; latch with vertical glass.
- F. Door Glazing: Glass, clear, 1/8 inch thick tempered.
- G. Cabinet Mounting Hardware: Appropriate to cabinet.

##### 2.04 FABRICATION

- A. Form cabinet enclosure with right angle inside corners and seams. Formed trim and door stiles.
- B. Pre-drill for anchors.
- C. Hinge doors for 180 degree opening with continuous piano hinge. Provide roller type catch.
- D. Weld, fill, and grind components smooth.
- E. Glaze doors with resilient channel gasket glazing.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify rough openings for cabinet are correctly sized and located.

##### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install cabinets plumb and level in wall openings, 24 inches from finished floor to inside bottom of cabinet.
- C. Secure rigidly in place.
- D. Place extinguishers in cabinets.
- E. Verify exact location with Architect.

END OF SECTION 10522



## SECTION 10800

### TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

- 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Toilet and washroom accessories.
  - B. Grab bars, Towel bars
  - C. Mirrors
  - D. Toilet Paper, Paper Towel
  - F. Attachment hardware

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

- 2.01 MANUFACTURERS
- A. BOBRICK WASHROOM EQUIPMENT INC., or BRADLEY CORPORATION.
  - B. Substitutions: Under provisions of the General Requirements.
- 2.02 FABRICATION
- A. Weld and grind joints of fabricated components, smooth.
  - B. Form exposed surfaces from single sheet of stock, free of joints. Form surfaces flat without distortion. Maintain surfaces without scratches or dents.
  - C. Fabricate grab bars of tubing, free of visible joints, return to wall with end attachment flanges. Form bar with 1 1/2 inches clear of wall surface. Knurl grip surfaces.
  - D. Shop assemble components and package complete with anchors and fittings.
  - E. Provide steel anchor plates, adapters, and anchor components for installation.
- 2.03 FINISHES
- A. Galvanizing: ASTM A123 to 1.25 oz./sq. yd. Galvanize ferrous metal and fastening devices.
  - B. Chrome/Nickel Plating: ASTM B456, satin finish.
  - C. Stainless Steel: No. 4 satin luster finish.
  - D. Back paint components where contact is made with building finishes to prevent electrolysis.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

- 3.01 EXAMINATION
- A. Verify that site conditions are ready to receive work and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings and instructed by the manufacturer.
  - B. Verify exact location of accessories for installation. Coordinate with ADA requirements.
- 3.02 PREPARATION
- A. Deliver inserts and rough-in frames to site for timely installation. Provide templates and rough-in measurements as required.
- 3.03 INSTALLATION
- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and Americans with Disabilities Act. Also reference ANSI A117.1.
  - B. Install plumb and level, securely and rigidly anchored to substrate.
- 3.04 SCHEDULE
- A. Reference drawings for all required accessories and submit for approval including but not limited to:
  - B. Toilet Tissue Holders: Bobrick. Color/finish/style to be selected by architect.
  - C. Towel Disp/Waste Recep.: Bobrick B-38034, at all public restrooms, ref drawings (Color: as selected by architect)
  - D. Towel Bar: 2 per Apartment bathroom, 18" & 24" with concealed wall bracket. Color/Style to be selected by architect
  - E. Grab Bars as indicated on the drawings, Bobrick.
    - a. At Public Restrooms #152, #153 and #161 – Color to be selected by architect
  - F. Shower Curtain Rod: 1 at each apartment shower, Stainless Steel Tube, 1 inch O.D., concealed attachment.
  - G. Mirrors: At Apartments, to be selected by architect/owner

END OF SECTION 10800





## SECTION 10850

### BUILDING SPECIALTIES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Building specialties shall be furnished and installed as shown and herein specified. Installation shall be in accordance with the respective manufacturer's instructions. Certain manufacturer's products have been selected as a basic standard, and reference to these products has been made. Other manufacturers' products of equal capacities and design characteristics may be used, if approved by the Architect prior to the Bidding. The Contractor shall submit for approval shop drawings or standard cuts and illustrations or a combination thereof showing all items he proposes to use.

##### 1.02 MAILBOXES

- A. Manufacturer – **Florence Manufacturing Company**, front loading horizontal mailboxes for recessed mounting with snap-on outer trim kit.
- B. Additional Features: Standard 5-pin cylinder tenant can lock with two keys. Engraved identification number for slots with color fill. Color: Black
- C. Quantity and Size: (1) section 4C11D-10 (with 10 mailboxes & 2 parcels) and (1) section 4C11D-4P (with 4 parcels). Reference Floor plans for location.
- D. Reference Manufacturer's installation guide for heights and mounting information.

##### 1.03 FIBERGLASS REINFORCED PLASTIC PANELING

- A. Product - Class A – Minimum .090 thickness panel. Include Manufacturer's vinyl molding at all corners, transitions, joints, and tops, bottoms, etc.
- B. Product shall be applied using manufacturer recommended adhesive and manufacturer recommended mechanical fasteners. Pre-drill rivet holes and silicone caulk prior to riveting.
- C. Locations: install behind mop sinks

END OF SECTION 10850



## SECTION 12356

### RESIDENTIAL KITCHEN & BATH CASEWORK

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Countertops, base and wall cabinets for Apartment Units
    - a. For casework relating to Public or Commercial Spaces, reference Section 06410 Custom Casework.
  - 2. Wood-faced kitchen cabinets.
  - 3. Wood-faced vanity cabinets.
  - 4. Plastic-laminate countertops.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 11 Section "Residential Appliances" for appliances mounted in kitchen casework.
  - 2. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for sink units mounted in countertops.

##### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces visible when doors and drawers are closed, including visible surfaces in open cabinets or behind glass doors.
- B. Semi-exposed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces behind opaque doors or drawer fronts, including interior faces of doors and interiors and sides of drawers. Bottoms of wall cabinets are defined as "semi-exposed."
- C. Concealed Surfaces of Casework: Surfaces not usually visible after installation, including sleepers, web frames, dust panels, bottoms of drawers, and ends of cabinets installed directly against and completely concealed by walls or other cabinets. Tops of wall cabinets and utility cabinets are defined as "concealed."

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:  
**Samples and Submittals must be approved by Owner/Developer prior to ordering or production.**
  - 1. Cabinets.
  - 2. Plastic-laminate countertops.
  - 3. Cabinet hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: For cabinets and countertops. Include plans, elevations, details, and attachments to other work. Show materials, finishes, filler panels, hardware, edge and backsplash profiles, cutouts for plumbing fixtures, and methods of joining countertops.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color samples consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following materials; in sets showing the full range of color, texture, and pattern variations expected:
  - 1. Wood-veneered panels with transparent finish, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each species.
  - 2. Solid wood with transparent finish, 50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm), for each species.
  - 3. Plastic laminate for countertops, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm).
  - 4. One unit of each type of exposed hardware.
- E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of casework certifying that products furnished comply with requirements. **Samples and Submittals must be approved by Owner/Developer prior to ordering or production.**

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Cabinets: Obtain cabinets through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Designations: Drawings indicate size, configurations, and finish material of casework by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers' casework of similar sizes, similar door and drawer configurations, same finish material, and complying with the Specifications may be considered. Refer to Division 1 Section "Substitutions."
- C. Quality Standards: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the following standards:
  - 1. Cabinets: KCMA A161.1.
    - a. KCMA Certification: Provide cabinets with KCMA's "Certified Cabinet" seal affixed in a semi exposed location of each unit and showing compliance with the above standard.
  - 2. Plastic-Laminate Countertops: KCMA A161.2.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install kitchen casework until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and will maintain temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where kitchen casework is indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where casework is to fit. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Provide fillers and scribes to allow for trimming and fitting.
- C. Field Measurements: Where kitchen casework is indicated to fit to existing construction, verify dimensions of existing construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Provide fillers and scribes if necessary.
- D. Field Measurements for Countertops: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1.7 COORDINATION

- F. Coordinate layout and installation of blocking and reinforcement in partitions for support of kitchen casework.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CABINETS:
    - a. **Mid America Cabinets**
      - 1) Finish: **To be Selected by architect/owner**
      - 2) Color: **To be Selected by architect/owner**
      - 3) Species: **To be Selected by architect/owner**
      - 4) Door style: **To be Selected by architect/owner**
    - b. As submitted and approved equal
  - 2. PLASTIC LAMINATE FOR COUNTERTOPS:
    - a. **Color: To be Selected by architect/owner**
      - 1) Edge Profile: Eased
      - 2) Finish: Matte
      - 3) Location: **All Apartment Kitchens**
    - b. **Color: To be Selected by architect/owner**
      - 1) Edge Profile: Eased
      - 2) Finish: Matte
      - 3) **Location: All Apartment Bathrooms**
- C. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **Mid America Cabinets or Equivalent.**

## 2.2 COLORS, TEXTURES, AND PATTERNS

- A. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: As listed, or selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range for these characteristics.

## 2.3 CABINET MATERIALS

- A. Exposed Materials: Comply with the following:

1. Exposed Wood Species: As follows. Do not use two adjacent exposed faces that are noticeably dissimilar in color, grain, figure, or natural character markings.
  - a. **Oak, or as selected by Owner/Developer**
2. Solid Wood: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated, free of defects, selected for compatible grain and color, and kiln dried to 7 percent moisture content.
3. Plywood: Hardwood plywood complying with HPVA HP-1 with face veneer of species indicated, selected for compatible color and grain with Grade A faces and Grade C backs of same species as faces.
  - a. Edge band exposed edges with minimum **1/8-inch- (3-mm-)** thick, solid-wood edging of same species as face veneer.

- B. Semi exposed Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:

1. Plywood: Hardwood plywood complying with HPVA HP-1 with Grade C faces stained to be compatible with exposed surfaces and Grade 3 backs of same species as faces.
2. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Medium-density particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2; with surface of thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.
  - b. Provide thermoset decorative overlay on both sides of shelves, dividers, drawer bodies, and other components with two semiexposed surfaces.
  - c. Provide PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 on components with semiexposed edges.
3. Vinyl-Faced Particleboard: Medium-density particleboard complying with ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2 with an embossed, wood-grain-patterned vinyl film adhesively bonded to particleboard.
  - d. Provide vinyl film on both sides of shelves, dividers, drawer bodies, and other components with two semi exposed surfaces and on semi exposed edges.

- C. Concealed Materials: Comply with the following:

1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
3. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2.
4. Hardboard: AHA A135.4, Class 1 Tempered.

## 2.4 COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Laminate: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with NEMA LD 3.

1. Grade: HGS.
2. Grade: HGP.
3. Provide through-color plastic laminate.
4. Grade for Backer Sheet: BKL.

- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.

- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

- D. Solid Wood Edges and Trim: Clear hardwood lumber of species indicated, free of defects, selected for compatible grain and color, and kiln dried.

## 2.5 CASEWORK HARDWARE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard units complying with BHMA A156.9, of type, material, size, and finish as selected from manufacturer's standard choices.

- B. Hinges: **Semi-concealed, self-closing hinges.**

- D. Drawer Guides: 100 lb. rated epoxy-coated-metal, self-closing drawer guides; designed to prevent rebound when drawers are closed; with nylon-tired, ball-bearing rollers; and complying with BHMA A156.9, Type B05091.

- E. Cabinet Pulls & Knobs: **To be selected by architect/owner.**

## 2.6 CABINET CONSTRUCTION

- A. Face Style: Reveal overlay; door and drawer faces partially cover cabinet body or face frames.

- B. Face Frames: 3/4-inch solid wood with glued mortise and tenon or doweled joints.

- C. Door and Drawer Fronts: 2 inch wide by 3/4 inch thick perimeter assembled around a 1/4 inch veneer panel.
  - D. Cabinet Ends: 1/2 inch industrial-grade particle board fastened to face frame with tongue-and-groove. Exposed end panels are finished with wood veneer to match face frame finish.
  - E. Cabinet Tops and Bottoms: Wall cabinets constructed of 1/4 inch hardboard dadoed into end panels and interlocked into hanging rails for strength. Base bottoms constructed similarly of 1/2 inch industrial-grade particle board.
  - F. Hanging Rails: 3/4 inch by 2-1/2 inch hardwood on upper cabinets. 3/4 inch by 1 inch hardwood on base cabinets.
  - G. Drawers: 7/16 inch industrial-grade particle board using full box construction with 1/8 inch hardboard bottoms. Drawer fronts constructed to match cabinet door material and style.
  - H. Shelves: 1/2 inch industrial-grade particle board. Wall shelving adjustable up to 24" wide. Base cabinets feature 11 inch deep half-shelf.
  - I. Toe Kick: 1/2 inch industrial-grade particle board fastened between end panels.
  - J. Joinery: Rabbet backs flush into end panels and secure with concealed mechanical fasteners. Connect tops and bottoms of wall cabinets and bottoms and stretchers of base cabinets to ends and dividers with mechanical fasteners. Rabbet tops, bottoms, and backs into end panels.
  - K. Factory Finishing: To greatest extent possible, finish casework at factory. Defer only final touchup until after installation.
- 2.7 PLASTIC-LAMINATE COUNTERTOPS
- A. Configuration: Provide countertops with the following front, cove (intersection of top with backsplash), backsplash, and end-splash style:
    1. Front: Eased Edge.
    2. Cove: Cove molding (one-piece postformed laminate supported at junction of top and backsplash by wood cove molding).
    3. Backsplash: Curved or waterfall shape with scribe.
  - B. Plastic-Laminate Substrate: Particleboard not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick.
    1. For countertops at sinks and lavatories, use phenolic-resin particleboard or exterior-grade plywood.
    2. Build up countertop thickness to 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) at front, back, and ends with additional layers of particleboard laminated to top.
  - C. Backer Sheet: Provide plastic-laminate backer sheet on underside of countertop substrate.
  - D. Paper Backing: Provide paper backing on underside of countertop substrate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install casework with no variations in flushness of adjoining surfaces; use concealed shims. Where casework abuts other finished work, scribe and cut for accurate fit. Provide filler strips, scribe strips, and moldings in finish to match casework face.
- B. Install casework without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are aligned. Complete installation of hardware and accessories as indicated.
- C. Install casework and countertop level and plumb to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet (3 mm in 2.4 m).
- D. Fasten cabinets to adjacent units and to backing.
  1. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not less than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch (25-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.
  2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not less than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., with toggle bolts through metal backing behind gypsum board.
- E. Fasten plastic-laminate countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Form seams using splines to align adjacent surfaces, and secure with glue and concealed clamping devices designed for this purpose.
- F. Fasten solid-surfacing-material countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Align adjacent surfaces, and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust casework and hardware so doors and drawers are centered in openings and operate smoothly without warp or bind. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Clean casework on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 12356





## SECTION 142123.16

### MACHINE ROOM-LESS ELECTRIC TRACTION PASSENGER ELEVATORS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Machine room-less electric traction passenger elevators as shown and specified. Elevator work includes:
1. Gearless electric traction passenger elevators.
  2. Elevator car enclosures, hoistway entrances and signal equipment.
  3. Operation and control systems.
  4. Accessibility provisions for physically disabled persons.
  5. Equipment, machines, controls, systems and devices as required for safely operating the specified elevators at their rated speed and capacity.
  6. Materials and accessories as required to complete the elevator installation.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 1 General Requirements: Meet or exceed all referenced sustainability requirements.
  2. Division 3 Concrete: Installing inserts, sleeves and anchors in concrete.
  3. Division 4 Masonry: Installing inserts, sleeves and anchors in masonry.
  4. Division 5 Metals:
    - a. Providing hoist beams, pit ladders, steel framing, auxiliary support steel and divider beams for supporting guide-rail brackets.
    - b. Providing steel angle sill supports and grouting hoistway entrance sills and frames.
  5. Division 9 Finishes: Providing elevator car finish flooring and field painting unfinished and shop primed ferrous materials.
  6. Division 16 Sections:
    - a. Providing electrical service to elevators, including fused disconnect switches where permitted. (Note: fused disconnect switch to be provided as part of elevator manufacture product)
    - b. Emergency power supply, transfer switch and auxiliary contacts.
    - c. Heat and smoke sensing devices.
    - d. Convenience outlets and illumination in control room (if applicable), hoistway and pit.
  7. Division 22 Plumbing
    - a. Sump pit
  8. Division 23 Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning
    - a. Heating and ventilating hoistways and/or control room.
- C. Work Not Included: General contractor shall provide the following in accordance with the requirements of the Model Building Code and ASME A17.1 Code. For specific rules, refer to ASME A17.1, Part 2 for traction elevators. State or local requirements must be used if more stringent. The cost of this work is not included in the TK Elevator's proposal since it is a part of the building construction.
1. A plumb and legal hoistway, properly framed and enclosed including a pit of proper depth, and a pit ladder for each elevator. Hoistway walls require a minimum two hours of fire rating. Hoistway should be clear and plumb with variations not to exceed 1/2" at any point. Drains, lights, access doors, waterproofing and hoistway ventilation, as required.
  2. Elevator controller space
    - a. Door jamb controller option - controller landing wall thickness must be a minimum of 8 1/2 inches thick. This is due to the controller being mounted on the top floor landing in the door frame on the return side of the door. For center opening doors, the controller is located on the right hand frame (from inside the elevator cab looking out). Provide telephone line, light fixture (200 lx / 19 fc), and convenience outlet in the hoistway at the landing where the elevator controller is located. Final location must be coordinated with

elevator contractor. These requirements must be coordinated between the general contractor and the elevator contractor.

- b. Control room option - provide a suitable control closet with access and ventilation in accordance with all applicable codes and regulations. The control closet shall be maintained at a temperature between 32 F (0 C) and 104 F (40 C). To be measured at 6 feet (1830 mm) above the floor and 1 foot (305 mm) out from the front center of the car controller(s). Relative humidity is not to exceed 95% non-condensing. Local codes may require tighter temperature ranges, and higher ventilation levels, please check with your local code authority for the exact requirements in your area. If your control closet temperatures exceed these requirements, contact your local TK Elevator sales representative for assistance. All telephone wiring to controller room control panel, and installation of telephone instrument or other communication equipment in elevator cab with all connections to elevator in controller room.
3. Hoistway must be maintained between 32°F (0°C) and 122°F (50°C) measured at the machine.
4. Adequate supports to carry the loads of all equipment, including overhead machine and machine beams located in hoistway including supports for guide rail brackets.
5. Complete 3 phase connections from the electric power mains to each controller, including necessary circuit breakers and fused mainline disconnect switches unless otherwise specified herein by elevator manufacture.
6. Electric power of the same characteristics as the permanent supply without charge for the construction, testing and adjusting.
7. Provide proper piping and conduit.
8. Divider beams for rail bracket support as required.
9. Cutting of walls floor, etc. and removal of such obstructions as may be necessary for proper installation of the elevator.
10. Grouting of door sills, hoistway frames, and signal fixtures after installation of the elevator equipment.
11. All painting, except as otherwise specified.
12. Provide hoistway walls designed and constructed in accordance with the required fire rating (including those places where elevator fixture boxes, rail bracket fastenings, and any other penetration into the hoistway walls).
13. Temporary enclosures, barricades and other protection from open hoistways and elevator work area during the time the elevator is being installed to meet all permanent installation safety codes. A temporary work platform to be provided at the top landing across the hoistway; if required, it should conform to all code and safety requirements.
14. Smoke detector /sensing devices and contacts wired to elevator control as required by local code. A means to automatically disconnect the main line power supply to the elevator prior to the application of water in the elevator controller room shall be furnished by the electrical contractor. This means shall not be self-resetting.
15. Before erection of rough walls and doors; erect hoistway sills, headers, and frames. After rough walls are finished; erect fascias and toe guards. Set sill level and slightly above finished floor at landings.
16. A standby power source, including necessary transfer switches and auxiliary contact, where elevator operation from an alternate power supply is required.
17. Adequate storage facilities for elevator equipment prior to and during installation at ground level within 150 feet of hoistway.
18. Setting of anchors and sleeves.
19. Install bevel guards at 75° on all recesses, projections or setbacks over 2" (4" for A17.1 2000 areas) except for loading or unloading.
20. For car light and fan: provide a feeder and branch wiring circuits to elevator control cabinet.
21. Locate a light fixture (200 lx / 19 fc) and convenience outlet in pit with switch located adjacent to the access door.

22. Where pit access is by means of the lowest hoistway entrance, a vertical ladder of non-combustible material extending 42" minimum, (48" minimum for A17.1-2019 areas) shall be provided at the same height, above sill of access door or handgrips.

#### 1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data: When requested, the elevator contractor shall provide standard cab, entrance and signal fixture data to describe product for approval.
- B. Shop drawings:
  1. Show equipment arrangement in the corridor, pit, and hoistway and/or optional control room. Provide plans, elevations, sections and details of assembly, erection, anchorage, and equipment location.
  2. Indicate elevator system capacities, sizes, performances, safety features, finishes and other pertinent information.
  3. Show floors served, travel distances, maximum loads imposed on the building structure at points of support and all similar considerations of the elevator work.
  4. Indicate electrical power requirements and branch circuit protection device recommendations.
- C. Paint selection: Submit manufacturer's standard selection charts for exposed finishes and materials.
- D. Integrated laminate selection: Submit manufacturer's standard selection charts for exposed finishes and materials.
- E. Metal Finishes: Upon request, standard metal samples provided.
- F. Operation and maintenance data. Include the following:
  1. Generic owner's manuals and no wiring diagrams.
  2. Parts list, with recommended parts inventory.

#### 1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: An approved manufacturer with minimum 15 years of experience in manufacturing, installing, and servicing elevators of the type required for the project.
  1. The manufacturer of machines, controllers, signal fixtures, door operators, cabs, entrances, and all other major parts of elevator operating equipment.
    - a. The major parts of the elevator equipment shall be manufactured by the installing company, and not be an assembled system.
  2. The manufacturer shall have a documented, on-going quality assurance program.
  3. ISO-9001:2000 Manufacturer Certified
  4. ISO-14001:2004 Environmental Management System Certified
  5. LEED Gold certified elevator manufacturing facility.
- B. Installer Qualifications: The manufacturer or an authorized agent of the manufacturer with not less than 15 years of satisfactory experience installing elevators equal in character and performance to the project elevators.
- C. Regulatory Requirements:
  1. ASME A17.1 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, latest edition or as required by the local building code.
  2. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
  3. NFPA 80 Fire Doors and Windows.
  4. Americans with Disabilities Act - Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG)
  5. Section 407 in ICC A117.1, when required by local authorities
  6. CAN/CSA C22.1 Canadian Electrical Code
  7. CAN/CSA B44 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.
- D. Fire-rated entrance assemblies: Opening protective assemblies including frames, hardware, and operation shall comply with ASTM E2074, CAN4-S104 (ULC-S104), UL10(b), and NFPA Standard 80. Provide entrance assembly units bearing Class B or 1 1/2 hour label by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (2 hour label in Canada).

- E. Inspection and testing:
  1. Elevator Installer shall obtain and pay for all required inspections, tests, permits and fees for elevator installation.
  2. Arrange for inspections and make required tests.
  3. Deliver to the Owner upon completion and acceptance of elevator work.
- F. Sustainable Product Qualifications:
  1. Environmental Product Declaration:
    - a. GOOD: If Product Category Rules (PCR) are not available, produce a publicly available, critically reviewed life-cycle assessment conforming to ISO 14044 that has at least a cradle to gate scope.
    - b. BEST: If Product Category Rules (PCR) are available, produce and publish an Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) based on a critically reviewed life-cycle assessment conforming to ISO 14044, with external verification recognized by the EPD program operator.
  2. Material Transparency:
    - a. GOOD: Provide Health Product Declaration at any level
    - b. BETTER: Provide Health Product Declaration (HPD v2 or later). Complete, published declaration with full disclosure of known hazards, prepared using the Health Product Declaration Collaborative's "HPD builder" on-line tool.
    - c. BEST: Cradle to Cradle Material Health Certificate v3, Bronze level or higher.
  3. LEED v4 – Provide documentation for all Building Product Disclosure AND Optimization credits in LEED v4 for product specified.

#### 1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Manufacturing shall deliver elevator materials, components and equipment and the contractor is responsible to provide secure and safe storage on job site.

#### 1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use: Elevators shall not be used for temporary service or for any other purpose during the construction period before Substantial Completion and acceptance by the purchaser unless agreed upon by Elevator Contractor and General Contractor with signed temporary agreement.

#### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Submit elevator manufacturer's standard written warranty agreeing to repair, restore or replace defects in elevator work materials and workmanship not due to ordinary wear and tear or improper use or care for 12 months after final acceptance.

#### 1.07 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish maintenance and call back service for a period of 12 months for each elevator after completion of installation or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier, during normal working hours excluding callbacks.
  1. Service shall consist of periodic examination of the equipment, adjustment, lubrication, cleaning, supplies and parts to keep the elevators in proper operation. Maintenance work, including emergency call back repair service, shall be performed by trained employees of the elevator contractor during regular working hours.
  2. Submit parts catalog and show evidence of local parts inventory with complete list of recommended spare parts. Parts shall be produced by manufacturer of original equipment.
  3. Manufacturer shall have a service office and full time service personnel within a 100 mile radius of the project site.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Design based around TK Elevator's EOX Self-Supported Machine Room-Less elevator.

### 2.02 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. All Elevator Cab materials including frame, buttons, lighting, wall and ceiling assembly, laminates and carpet shall have an EPD and an HPD.
- B. Colors, patterns, and finishes: As selected by the Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors, patterns, and finishes.
- C. Steel:
  - 1. Shapes and bars: Carbon.
  - 2. Sheet: Cold- and hot-rolled stainless steel sheet, galvanized.
  - 3. Finish: Factory-applied paint for structural parts, painted for architectural parts. Color selection must be based on elevator manufacture's standard selections.
- D. Integrated laminate: Decorative surface finishes, pressure sensitive, acrylic type, nominal 0.014" thickness. Laminate selection must be based on elevator manufacture's standard selections.
- E. Flooring by others.

### 2.03 HOISTWAY EQUIPMENT

- A. Platform: Fabricated frame of formed or structural steel shapes, gusseted and riveted/clined. The car platform shall be designed and fabricated to support one-piece loads weighing up to 25% of the rated capacity.
- B. Deflector Sheaves: None
- C. Guide Rails: Dry, non-lubricated steel, fastened to the building with steel brackets.
- D. Guides: Slide guides shall be mounted on top and bottom of the car.
- E. Buffers: Provide substantial buffers in the elevator pit. Mount buffers on continuous channels fastened to the elevator guide rail or securely anchored to the pit floor. Predefined buffer stands for 4' and 5' pit depths.
- F. Machine: The hoisting machine shall be a compact energy efficient permanent magnet Gearless traction type, consisting of PMAC motor, brake and driving sheave mounted on a rigid bedplate in the top of the hoistway. A large solid, forged shaft shall serve as a support for the motor rotor assembly and for the drive sheave and brake system. It shall be supported by roller bearings mounted in the machine housing.
- G. Drive System:
  - 1. The drive system shall be of the Variable Voltage Variable Frequency (VVVF) regenerative.
  - 2. The system shall be a vector controlled pulse-width modulated AC drive. The variable voltage variable frequency drive shall convert the AC power supply using a two-step process to a variable voltage variable frequency power supply for use by the hoist motor.
  - 3. The speed control shall be by means of vector control providing direct torque and field excitation automatically provided by permanent magnet. A digital absolute velocity encoder shall be provided giving feedback to the controller on armature position and motor speed.
  - 4. Dual solid state electronics (IGBT Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor) in series shall be used in place of mechanical contactors.
- H. Motor/Machine: The motor shall be PMAC, totally enclosed, non-ventilated with class "F" insulation. The motor armature shall be dynamically balanced and supported by roller bearings of ample capacity. The armature and driving sheave shall be properly balanced for smooth, high-speed elevator performance. The PM machine shall be mounted horizontally in the top of the hoistway in a unitized formed steel structure on bearing plates furnished by the elevator installer. The unitized formed steel structure shall be securely fastened to the supports supplied by other trades.

- I. Brake: The brake shall be a spring applied electric brake; held open by an electro-magnet actuated by a digital brake controller and designed to make smooth, positive stops. The Brake shall be designed to automatically apply in the event of interruption of power supply from any cause. Operation and control of the brake shall be all digital. The setting and lifting of the brake shall be software based and all electronic. All adjustments and setup of the brake shall be made using a PC interface. No contactors or resistors shall be used in the actuation of the brake.
- J. Suspension Belts and Governor Rope: Suspension belts shall be flat belts of polyurethane with an inner core of 14 steel cords with an FT1 fire rating such that hoistway sprinklers are not required by NFPA-13. Each belt shall have a suspension strength of 64 KN (14,388 pounds).
  - 1. Three belts.
  - 2. Suspension tension monitor shall detect differences in belt tension and for loss of tension. If fault is detected, the car shall stop at the nearest floor and an Out of Service call be registered.
  - 3. Trip criteria shall be monitored, and data shall be stored in redundant non-volatile locations. Belts shall be replaced prior to the end of service life. Messages shall be issued at 180, 90, and 30 days prior to the last day of service life.
  - 4. Governor ropes shall be of steel wire construction.
  - 5. Any special tools, devices, software or equipment required for monitoring the wear of suspension shall be included with the installation of the equipment and become the property of the owner at time of elevator completion. This includes special ongoing monitoring systems, special tools and instruction needed to monitor the suspension system.
- K. Counterweight: Counterbalance each elevator for smooth and economical operation by using steel and/or cement weights securely fastened in a steel counterweight frame. Counterweight shall equal the weight of the complete elevator car and approximately 50 percent of the specified capacity load.
- L. Safety and Governor: Car safety shall be mounted on the bottom members of the car frame and be operated by a centrifugal speed governor. The governor shall be designed to cut off power to the motor and apply the brake whenever the governor indicates the car has excessive speed. The governor shall function when the car over speeds.
- M. Emergency Terminal Limits: Place electric limit devices in the hoistway near the terminal landings. Limit switch(es) shall be designed to cut off the electric current and stop the car if it runs beyond either terminal landing.
- N. Automatic Self-Leveling: Provide each elevator car with a self-leveling feature to automatically bring the car to the floor landings and correct for over travel or under travel. Self-leveling shall, within its zone, be automatic and independent of the operating device. The car shall be maintained approximately level with the landing irrespective of its load.

## 2.04 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Doors and Frames: Provide complete hollow metal type hoistway entrances at each hoistway opening bolted\knock down construction.
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard entrance design consisting of hangers, doors, hanger supports, hanger covers, fascia plates (where required), sight guards, and necessary hardware.
  - 2. Hoistway design: Entrance jamb has a fixed depth so provisions must be made to finish the edge of the wall that may not be covered by the entrance.
  - 3. Communication failure indicator: A Communication failure is a jewel that is located in the jamb and lights up if the connection with the phone in the elevator becomes faulty. Communication failure is tested on the SIL3 rated devices by inspectors to ensure the car will not run or accept a car call when there is a loss of communication between the car and controller.
  - 4. Main landing door & frame finish: Factory powder coat finish.
  - 5. Typical door & frame finish: Factory powder coat finish entrance frame.
- B. Interlocks: Equip each hoistway entrance with an approved type of interlock, tested as required by code. Provide door restriction devices as required by code.

- C. Door Hanger and Tracks: Provide sheave type two-point suspension hangers and tracks for each hoistway horizontal sliding door.
  1. Sheaves: Polyurethane tires with ball bearings properly sealed to retain grease.
  2. Hangers: Provide an adjustable device beneath the track to limit the up thrust of the doors during operation.
  3. Tracks: Drawn steel shapes, smooth surface and shaped to conform to the hanger sheaves.
- D. Hoistway Sills: Extruded metal, with groove(s) in top surface. Provide mill finish on aluminum.

## 2.05 PASSENGER ELEVATOR CAR ENCLOSURE

- A. Car Enclosure:
  1. Walls: Cab type, stainless steel. Wall panels shall be constructed of steel with integrated laminate panels. Columns shall be factory powder coat.
  2. Canopy: Galvanized steel with chain rope exit.
  3. Ceiling: Stainless steel downlight type, metal pans with suspended LED downlights. Number of downlights shall be dependent on platform size with a minimum of four. The metal pans shall be finished with a stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish.
  4. Cab Fronts, Return, Transom, Soffit and Strike: Provide panels faced with brushed stainless steel.
  5. Doors: Horizontal sliding car doors reinforced with steel for panel rigidity. Hang doors on sheave type hangers with polyurethane tires that roll on a polished steel track and are guided at the bottom by non-metallic sliding guides.
    - a. Door Finish: Stainless steel.
    - b. Cab Sills: Extruded, aluminum mill finish.
  6. Handrail: Provide 1.5" (38 mm) diameter formed cylindrical metal bar on side and/or rear walls on front opening cars and side walls only on front and rear opening cars. Support rails shall have a stainless steel, no. 4 brushed finish.
  7. Ventilation: Manufacturer's standard exhaust fan, mounted on the car top.
  8. Protection pads: Not required
- B. Car Top Inspection: Provide a car top inspection station with an "Auto-Inspection" switch, an "emergency stop" switch, and constant pressure "up and down" direction and safety buttons to make the normal operating devices inoperative. The station shall give the inspector complete control of the elevator. The car top inspection station shall be mounted in the door operator assembly.

## 2.06 DOOR OPERATION

- A. Door Operation: Provide a direct or alternating current motor driven heavy duty operator designed to operate the car and hoistway doors simultaneously. The door control system shall be digital closed loop and the closed loop circuit shall give constant feedback on the position and velocity of the elevator door. The motor torque shall be constantly adjusted to maintain the correct door speed based on its position and load. All adjustments and setup shall be through the computer based service tool. Door movements shall follow a field programmable speed pattern with smooth acceleration and deceleration at the ends of travel. The mechanical door operating mechanism shall be arranged for manual operation in event of power failure. Doors shall automatically open when the car arrives at the landing and automatically close after an adjustable time interval or when the car is dispatched to another landing. AC controlled units with oil checks, or other deviations are not acceptable.
  1. No Un-Necessary Door Operation: The car door shall open only if the car is stopping for a car or hall call, answering a car or hall call at the present position or selected as a dispatch car.
  2. Door Open Time Saver: If a car is stopping in response to a car call assignment only (no coincident hall call), the current door hold open time is changed to a shorter field programmable time when the electronic door protection device is activated.

3. Double Door Operation: When a car stops at a landing with concurrent up and down hall calls, no car calls, and no other hall call assignments, the car door opens to answer the hall call in the direction of the car's current travel. If an onward car call is not registered before the door closes to within 6 inches of fully closed, the travel shall reverse and the door shall reopen to answer the other call.
  4. Nudging Operation: The doors shall remain open as long as the electronic detector senses the presence of a passenger or object in the door opening. If door closing is prevented for a field programmable time, a buzzer shall sound. When the obstruction is removed, the door shall begin to close at reduced speed. If the infra-red door protection system detects a person or object while closing on nudging, the doors shall stop and resume closing only after the obstruction has been removed.
  5. Door Reversal: If the doors are closing and the infra-red beam(s) is interrupted, the doors shall reverse and reopen. After the obstruction is cleared, the doors shall begin to close.
  6. Door Open Watchdog: If the doors are opening, but do not fully open after a field adjustable time, the doors shall recycle closed then attempt to open six times to try and correct the fault.
  7. Door Close Watchdog: If the doors are closing, but do not fully close after a field adjustable time, the doors shall recycle open then attempt to close six times to try and correct the fault.
  8. Door Close Assist: When the doors have failed to fully close and are in the recycle mode, the door drive motor shall have increased torque applied to possibly overcome mechanical resistance or differential air pressure and allow the door to close.
- B. Door Protection Device: Provide a door protection system using microprocessor controlled infra-red light beams supporting 2D or 3D light curtains per code. The beams shall project across the car opening detecting the presence of a passenger or object. If door movement is obstructed, the doors shall immediately reopen.

## 2.07 CAR OPERATING STATION

Car Operating Station, General: The main car control in each car shall contain the devices required for specific operation mounted in a surface-mounted panel requiring no applied faceplate. COP shall have a brushed stainless steel finish. The main car operating panel shall be mounted in the return and comply with handicap requirements. Pushbuttons that illuminate using long lasting LED's shall be included for each floor served, and emergency buttons and switches shall be provided per code. Switches for car light and accessories shall be provided. Visual highlight is the standard equipped, integrated multimedia display.

- A. Emergency Communications System: Integral phone system provided. For improved accessibility, there are visual and acoustic confirmation for button inputs as well as a voice synthesizer for travel and floor announcements.
- B. Column Mounted Car Riding Lantern: A car riding lantern shall be installed in the elevator cab and located in the entrance. The lantern, when illuminated, will indicate the intended direction of travel. The lantern will illuminate, and a signal will sound when the car arrives at a floor where it will stop. The lantern shall remain illuminated until the door(s) begin to close.
- C. Special Equipment: Not Applicable
- D. Digital Services: Cloud-based IoT monitoring system comes standard with these options:  
ADA Phone - Code Compliant Cellular Connectivity
- E. Digitally Native: Digital expansion for evolving ecosystem of digitally augmented services. DEP infotainment display comes standard.

## 2.08 CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Controller: The elevator control system shall be microprocessor based and software oriented. The system shall operate in real time, continuously analyzing the car(s) changing position, condition, and work load. All controller and operational circuits including the brake control and drive system shall be digital. Control of the elevator shall be automatic in operation by means of push buttons in the car numbered to correspond to floors served, for registering car stops, and by "up-down" push buttons at each intermediate landing and "call" push buttons at terminal landings.



1. Momentary pressing of one or more buttons shall dispatch the car to the designated landings in the order in which the landings are reached by the car, irrespective of the sequence in which the buttons are pressed. Each landing call shall be canceled when answered.
  2. When the car is traveling in the up direction, it shall stop at all floors for which car buttons or "up" hall buttons have been pressed. The car shall not stop at floors where "down" buttons have been pressed, unless the stop for that floor has been registered by a car button or unless the down call is at the highest floor for which any buttons have been pressed. Pressing the "up" button when the car is traveling in the down direction shall not intercept the travel unless the stop for that floor has been registered by a car button or unless the up call is the lowest for which any button has been pressed.
  3. When the car has responded to its highest or lowest stop, and stops are registered for the opposite direction, its direction of travel shall reverse automatically and it shall then answer the calls registered for that direction. If both up and down calls are registered at an intermediate floor, only the call corresponding to the direction of car travel shall be canceled upon the stopping of the car at the landing.
  4. A car that is stopping for the last hall call in the preference direction, and that hall call is for the opposite direction with no onward car calls, shall reverse preference when the selector position advances to the landing at which the car is committed to stop. A car that is stopping for the last hall call in the preference direction, and that hall call is for the same direction, shall hold its preference until the door is almost closed allowing time for a passenger to register an onward car call which shall maintain the preference. If no car call is registered before the door is almost closed, the car shall lose its preference and shall be available to accept calls in either direction.
- B. Operation: Selective Collective – ETA based. The system is optimized to get a car to the floor where a hall call has been registered, in the shortest time. The system receives input information from standard call pushbuttons located in the hall, car position and car load information from individual car loadweighers.
1. When group operation is required, the group supervisory operation shall be embedded within selected car controllers. No separate group controller shall be supplied. The microprocessor shall constantly scan the system for hall calls. When hall calls are registered, the control system shall immediately calculate the estimated time for arrival using such information as, number of floors to travel from the current position, the time it takes to travel one floor at top speed, calls assigned to a car, and car reversal time to respond to a call in the opposite direction of travel. When a car's status changes or additional hall calls are registered, the estimated time of arrival shall be recalculated and calls reassigned if necessary.
  2. Traffic Pattern: The microprocessor shall provide flexibility to meet well defined patterns of traffic, including up peak, down peak, and heavy interfloor demands, and adjust for indeterminate variations in these patterns which occur in buildings.
  3. Artificial Intelligence: Artificial Intelligence shall be an integral part of the group control system software. The enhanced artificial intelligence shall optimize the interfloor traffic performance. Inputs for the artificial intelligence shall include accurate passenger load from an electronic loadweigher, probable car calls generated from each hall call, type of building and observed traffic patterns.
- C. Load Weighing Device: Provide a load weighing device on each car which, when the particular car is filled to an adjustable percentage of the capacity load, shall cause the car to bypass landing calls but not car calls. The passed landing calls shall remain registered for the next following car.
1. The device shall be unaffected by the action of compensating chain or rope. The device shall detect a 50-pound (23 Kg.) load change under all conditions.
  2. The load sensor shall use a load cell to accurately measure the weight in the car. The information shall be transferred via a serial link to the elevator controller.

- D. Anti-Nuisance Call Control: The microprocessor control system shall evaluate the number of people on the car and compare that value to the number of car calls registered. If the number of car calls exceeds the number of people by a field programmable value, the car calls shall be canceled after the first call has been answered.
- E. Position Selector: The position selector shall be part of the microprocessor system. The car position in the hoistway shall be digitized through a primary position encoder. The microprocessor control system shall store the floor position and slow down points in memory.
- F. Motion Control: The drive control system shall be dual-loop feedback system based primarily on car position. The velocity profile shall be calculated by the microprocessor control system producing extremely smooth and accurate stops. The velocity encoder shall permit continuous comparison of machine speed to velocity profile and to actual car speed. This accurate position/velocity feedback shall permit a fast and accurate control of acceleration and retardation.
- G. Motor Pre-Torque: Current shall be applied to the elevator drive before the brake is released and the speed pattern is dictated to eliminate roll back and sling shot effects of unbalanced loads in the car. The electronic loadweigher shall determine the load on the car determining a pre-torque reference to send to the drive.
- H. Emergency Power Operation: In the event of power loss, this elevator(s) should be equipped with a battery powered automatic rescue operation device. This operation is designed to only move the car up or down to the nearest landing depending on the load in the car. It is NOT designed to lower the car to a specified landing such as Battery Lowering used for Hydraulic applications. An isolation transformer is required if the building voltage is NOT 480VAC. A single rescue unit is not capable of rescuing a group of cars --- this is a per car option. Maximum travel on rescue operation is 100 feet. Average time of operation for Rescue is 3 minutes. This feature is only available for jobs with 60HP and below. This battery automatic rescue operation is not allowed with the Green Drive.
- I. Automatic Light and Fan shut down: The control system shall evaluate the system activity and automatically turn off the cab lighting and ventilation fan during periods of inactivity. The settings shall be field programmable.
- J. Special Operation: Not Applicable
- K. Digital Services:  
 Cloud-based IoT Monitoring System (standard): Contractor shall provide a cloud-based IoT (internet of things) monitoring system capable of tracking door movements and timing, trips, power cycles, car calls, out-of-service events and modes. This observation will continue 24/7 and it shall be capable of providing service technicians a minimum of three recommended solutions for defined failure events and automatically dispatch service technicians in the event of failure(s) while sending notifications to end users of changes in their equipment's state via both email and mobile device. Access to IoT and related equipment data and status will be made available in both a web portal and mobile application secured by password and username with at least two-factor authentication. Finally, this system must be self-contained and not require internet provision by others.

Along with the monitoring system, options are available.

ADA Phone – Code Compliant Cellular Connectivity: Contractor shall provide a phone service through a self-contained cellular based VoIP system. This system shall meet code, include a backup battery capable of powering the emergency communication equipment for 4+ hours in the event of a power outage. The solution shall have remote monitoring capability to ensure continuous connectivity with a means of remote troubleshooting. Remote monitoring capability shall include, at a minimum, the ability to monitor connectivity and power supply. Remote monitoring shall be capable of providing local alerts to response personnel when on-site intervention is required.

- L. Digitally Native:  
EOX has all the components needed for digital expansion from day one. No additional technician dispatching. On-site installation or modernization is required to enable new digital services giving you confidence that your elevator will remain up to date for years to come. It is born digital, connected to TK Elevator's evolving ecosystem of digitally augmented services.

## 2.09 HALL STATIONS

- A. Hall Stations, General: Buttons shall illuminate to indicate call has been registered at that floor for the indicated direction.
  - 1. Provide one pushbutton riser with faceplates having a brushed stainless steel finish, surface-mounted in the entrance jamb.
    - a. Phase 1 firefighter's service key switch, with instructions, shall be incorporated into the entrance frame at the designated level.
- B. Floor Identification Pads: Provide door jamb pads at each floor. Jamb pads shall comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- C. Combo Hall Lantern and Position Indicator: An electronic position indicator shall be provided and mounted for optimal viewing. As the car travels, its position in the hoistway shall be indicated by the illumination of the alphanumeric character corresponding to the landing which the elevator is stopped or passing. Hall lantern is combined in the display with the directional arrow to indicate the travel direction in the same faceplate. Faceplates shall match the hall stations. Located at main level.
- D. Special Equipment: Limited access operation: Not Applicable

## 2.10 CONTROLLER LOCATION

- A. Location: Door Jamb Mounted integrally located with controller in the door jamb. Control power and cab light are provided by the elevator contractor and included with the integrated assembly. Main power disconnect is provided by others.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Before starting elevator installation, inspect hoistway, hoistway openings, pits and/or control room, as constructed, verify all critical dimensions, and examine supporting structures and all other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed. Do not proceed with elevator installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.
- B. Installation constitutes acceptance of existing conditions and responsibility for satisfactory performance.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install elevator systems components and coordinate installation of hoistway wall construction.
  - 1. Work shall be performed by competent elevator installation personnel in accordance with ASME A17.1, manufacturer's installation instructions and approved shop drawings.
  - 2. Comply with the National Electrical Code for electrical work required during installation.
- B. Perform work with competent, skilled workmen under the direct control and supervision of the elevator manufacturer's experienced foreman.
- C. Supply in ample time for installation by other trades, inserts, anchors, bearing plates, brackets, supports, and bracing including all setting templates and diagrams for placement.
- D. Welded construction: Provide welded connections for installation of elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment, inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS standards for workmanship and for qualification of welding operators.

- E. Coordination: Coordinate elevator work with the work of other trades, for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays. Use benchmarks, lines, and levels designated by the Contractor, to ensure dimensional coordination of the work.
- F. Install machinery, guides, controls, car and all equipment and accessories to provide a quiet, smoothly operating installation, free from side sway, oscillation or vibration.
- G. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with cars. Where possible, delay final adjustment of sills and doors until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum safe, workable dimensions at each landing.
- H. Erect hoistway sills, headers, and frames before erection of rough walls and doors; erect fascia and toe guards after rough walls finished. Set sill units accurately aligned and slightly above finish floor at landings.
- I. Lubricate operating parts of system, including ropes, as recommended by the manufacturer.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance testing: Upon completion of the elevator installation and before permitting use of elevator, perform acceptance tests as required and recommended by Code and governing regulations or agencies. Perform other tests, if any, as required by governing regulations or agencies.
- B. Advise Owner, Contractor, Architect, and governing authorities in advance of dates and times tests are to be performed on the elevator.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Make necessary adjustments of operating devices and equipment to ensure elevator operates smoothly and accurately.

### 3.05 CLEANING

- A. Before final acceptance, remove protection from finished surfaces and clean and polish surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for type of material and finish provided. Stainless steel shall be cleaned with soap and water and dried with a non-abrasive surface; it shall not be cleaned with bleach-based cleansers.
- B. At completion of elevator work, remove tools, equipment, and surplus materials from site. Clean equipment rooms and hoistway. Remove trash and debris.
  1. Use environmentally preferable and low VOC emitting cleaners for each application type. Cleaners that contain solvents, pine and/or citrus oils are not permitted.

### 3.06 PROTECTION

- A. At time of Substantial Completion of elevator work, or portion thereof, provide suitable protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other such methods or procedures to protect elevator work from damage or deterioration. Maintain protective measures throughout remainder of construction period.

### 3.07 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's personnel in proper use, operations, and daily maintenance of elevators. Review emergency provisions, including emergency access and procedures to be followed at time of failure in operation and other building emergencies. Train Owner's personnel in normal procedures to be followed in checking for sources of operational failures or malfunctions.
- B. Make a final check of each elevator operation, with Owner's personnel present, immediately before date of substantial completion. Determine that control systems and operating devices are functioning properly.

3.08 ELEVATOR SCHEDULE

A. Elevator Qty. 1

1. Elevator Model: EOX
2. Elevator Type: Gearless Traction Machine Room-Less, Passenger
3. Rated Capacity: 3500 lbs.
4. Rated Speed: 150 ft./min.
5. Operation System: EOX controller
6. Travel: 32'-10"
7. Landings: 4 total
8. Openings:
  - a. Front: 3
  - b. Rear: 1
9. Clear Car Inside: 6'-8" wide x 5'-5" deep
10. Inside clear height: 7'-4" standard
11. Door clear height: 7'-0" standard
12. Hoistway Entrance Size: 3'-6" wide x 7'-0" high
13. Door Type: One-speed | RH/LH Side opening
14. Power Characteristics: 208 volts, 3 Phase, 60 Hz.
  - a. Note: Isolation Transformer required for jobs with less than 460vac as well as 575vac, 3 Phase building power.
15. Seismic Requirements: No
16. Hoistway Dimensions: 8'-6" wide x 7'-6 3/8" deep
  - a. Note: Hoistway dimensions listed above are for Non-Seismic areas only. If you have chosen the option for seismic requirements, please consult your local TK Elevator Sales Representative for the proper hoistway dimensions.
17. Pit Depth: 5'-0"
18. Button & Fixture Style: EOX Signal Fixtures
19. Special Operations: None
20. Digital Services: ADA Phone - Code Compliant Cellular Connectivity
21. Digitally Native

3.09 SPECIAL CONDITIONS (Note: Add Special Conditions as Needed)

END OF SECTION 142123.16



SECTION 210500  
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pipe, fittings, valves, and connections for combination sprinkler and standpipe systems.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 078400 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 211200 - Fire-Suppression Standpipes: Standpipe design.
- C. Section 211300 - Fire-Suppression Sprinkler Systems: Sprinkler systems design.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings; 2012.
- B. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Qualifications; 2015.
- C. ASME B16.1 - Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250; 2010.
- D. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2011.
- E. ASME B16.4 - Gray Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 125 and 250; 2011.
- F. ASME B16.9 - Factory-Made Wrought Butt Welding Fittings; 2012.
- G. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- H. ASTM A269/A269M - Standard Specification for Seamless and Welded Austenitic Stainless Steel Tubing for General Service; 2015.
- I. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings; 1984 (Reapproved 2014).
- J. ASTM A795/A795M - Standard Specification for Black and Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe for Fire Protection Use; 2013.
- K. ASTM C592 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Insulation and Blanket-Type Pipe Insulation (Metal-Mesh Covered) (Industrial Type); 2013.
- L. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops; 2013a.
- M. ASTM F438 - Standard Specification for Socket-Type Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40; 2015.
- N. ASTM F439 - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80; 2013.
- O. ASTM F442/F442M - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR); 2013.
- P. ASTM F493 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- Q. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2015.
- R. AWWA C105/A21.5 - Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems; 2010.
- S. AWWA C110/A21.10 - Ductile-Iron and Gray-Iron Fittings; 2012.
- T. AWWA C111/A21.11 - Rubber-Gasket Joints for Ductile-Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings; 2012.
- U. AWWA C151/A21.51 - Ductile-Iron Pipe, Centrifugally Cast; 2009.
- V. AWWA C606 - Grooved and Shouldered Joints; 2011.
- W. NFPA 13 - Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems; 2016.
- X. NFPA 14 - Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems; 2013.

- Y. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.
- Z. UL 262 - Gate Valves for Fire-Protection Service; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- AA. UL 312 - Check Valves for Fire-Protection Service; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalogue information. Indicate valve data and ratings.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate pipe materials used, jointing methods, supports, floor and wall penetration seals. Indicate installation, layout, weights, mounting and support details, and piping connections.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components and tag numbering.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include installation instructions and spare parts lists.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the Products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- B. Valves: Bear UL label or marking. Provide manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body.
- C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store valves in shipping containers, with labeling in place.
- B. Provide temporary protective coating on cast iron and steel valves.
- C. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS

- A. Sprinkler Systems: Conform work to NFPA 13.
- B. Standpipe and Hose Systems: Conform to NFPA 14.
- C. Welding Materials and Procedures: Conform to ASME Code.

#### 2.2 BURIED PIPING

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 or ASTM A795 Standard Weight, black, with AWWA C105 polyethylene jacket, or double layer, half-lapped polyethylene tape.
  - 1. Steel Fittings: ASME B16.9, wrought steel, butt welded; with double layer, half-lapped polyethylene tape.
  - 2. Cast Iron Fittings: ASME B16.1, flanges and flanged fittings.
  - 3. Joints: Welded in accordance with AWS D1.1.
- B. Cast Iron Pipe: AWWA C151/A21.51.
  - 1. Fittings: AWWA C110, standard thickness.
  - 2. Joints: AWWA C111, rubber gasket.
  - 3. Mechanical Couplings: Shaped composition sealing gasket, steel bolts, nuts, and washers.

#### 2.3 ABOVE GROUND PIPING

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A795 Schedule 10 or ASTM A53 Schedule 40, black.
  - 1. Steel Fittings: ASME B16.9, wrought steel, butt welded.
  - 2. Cast Iron Fittings: ASME B16.1, flanges and flanged fittings and ASME B16.4, threaded fittings.
  - 3. Malleable Iron Fittings: ASME B16.3, threaded fittings.



4. Mechanical Grooved Couplings: Malleable iron housing clamps to engage and lock, "C" shaped elastomeric sealing gasket, steel bolts, nuts, and washers; galvanized for galvanized pipe.
  5. Mechanical Formed Fittings: Carbon steel housing with integral pipe stop and O-ring pocked and O-ring, uniformly compressed into permanent mechanical engagement onto pipe.
- B. CPVC Pipe: ASTM F442/F442M, SDR 13.5.
1. Fittings: ASTM F438 Schedule 40, or ASTM F439 schedule 80, CPVC.
  2. Joints: Solvent welded, using ASTM F493 cement.
- 2.4 PIPE SLEEVES
- A. Vertical Piping:
1. Sleeve Length: 1 inch above finished floor.
  2. Provide sealant for watertight joint.
- B. Pipe Passing Through Below Grade Exterior Walls:
1. Zinc coated or cast iron pipe.
  2. Provide watertight space with link rubber or modular seal between sleeve and pipe on both pipe ends.
- C. Not required for wall hydrants for fire department connections or in drywall construction.
- D. Clearances:
1. Wall, Floor, Floor, Partitions, and Beam Flanges: 1 inch greater than external; pipe diameter.
  2. All Rated Openings: Caulked tight with fire stopping material conforming to ASTM E814 in accordance with Firestopping section to prevent the spread of fire, smoke, and gases.
- 2.5 MANUFACTURED SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS
- A. Modular/Mechanical Seal:
1. Synthetic rubber interlocking links continuously fill annular space between pipe and wall/casing opening.
  2. Provide watertight seal between pipe and wall/casing opening.
  3. Elastomer element size and material in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. Glass reinforced plastic pressure end plates.
- 2.6 ESCUTCHEONS
- A. Material:
1. Fabricate from nonferrous metal.
  2. Chrome-plated except when 300 series, ASTM A269/A269M stainless steel is provided.
  3. Metals and Finish: Comply with ASME A112.18.
- B. Construction:
1. One-piece for mounting on chrome-plated tubing or pipe and one-piece or split-pattern type elsewhere.
  2. Internal spring tension devices or setscrews to maintain a fixed position against a surface.
- 2.7 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
- A. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 inch: Malleable iron, adjustable swivel, split ring.
- B. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
- C. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
- D. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 inches: Cast iron hook.
- E. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 inches and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
- F. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- G. Floor Support: Cast iron adjustable pipe saddle, lock nut, nipple, floor flange, and concrete pier or steel support.
- 2.8 MECHANICAL COUPLINGS
- A. Rigid Mechanical Couplings for Grooved Joints:

1. Dimensions and Testing: Comply with AWWA C606.
2. Minimum Working Pressure: 300 psig.
3. Housing Material: Fabricate of ductile iron conforming to ASTM A536.
4. Housing Coating: Factory applied orange enamel.
5. Gasket Material: EPDM suitable for operating temperature range from minus 30 degrees F to 230 degrees F.
6. Bolts and Nuts: Hot dipped galvanized or zinc electroplated steel

## 2.9 GATE VALVES

- A. Up to and including 2 inches:
  1. Bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, handwheel, solid wedge or disc, threaded ends.
- B. Over 2 inches:
  1. Iron body, bronze trim, rising stem pre-grooved for mounting tamper switch, handwheel, OS&Y, solid rubber covered bronze or cast iron wedge, flanged ends.
- C. Over 4 inches:
  1. Iron body, bronze trim, non-rising stem with bolted bonnet, solid bronze wedge, flanged ends, iron body indicator post assembly.

## 2.10 GLOBE OR ANGLE VALVES

- A. Up to and including 2 inches:
  1. Bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem and handwheel, inside screw, renewable rubber disc, threaded ends, with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
- B. Over 2 inches:
  1. Iron body, bronze trim, rising stem, handwheel, OS&Y, plug-type disc, flanged ends, renewable seat and disc.

## 2.11 BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Bronze Body:
  1. Stainless steel disc, resilient replaceable seat, threaded or grooved ends, extended neck, handwheel and gear drive and integral indicating device, and built-in tamper proof switch rated 10 amp at 115 volt AC.
- B. Cast or Ductile Iron Body
  1. Cast or ductile iron, chrome or nickel plated ductile iron or aluminum bronze disc, resilient replaceable EPDM seat, wafer, lug, or grooved ends, extended neck, handwheel and gear drive and integral indicating device, and internal tamper switch rated 10 amp at 115 volt AC.

## 2.12 CHECK VALVES

- A. Up to and including 2 inches:
  1. Bronze body and swing disc, rubber seat, threaded ends.
- B. Over 2 inches:
  1. Iron body, bronze trim, swing check with rubber disc, renewable disc and seat, flanged ends with automatic ball check.
- C. 4 inches and Over:
  1. Iron body, bronze disc, stainless steel spring, resilient seal, threaded, wafer, or flanged ends.

## 2.13 DRAIN VALVES

- A. Compression Stop:
  1. Bronze with hose thread nipple and cap.
- B. Ball Valve:
  1. Brass with cap and chain, 3/4 inch hose thread.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale and foreign material, from inside and outside, before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinkler system and service main piping, hangers, and supports in accordance with NFPA 13.
- B. The entire building shall be provided with a fire protection sprinkler system and Class I manual wet standpipe system.
- C. Prepare design documents including shop drawings and hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 and 14 and submit to Authority Having Jurisdiction for approval prior to installation. Design shall be performed by a licensed Professional Engineer.
- D. Install standpipe piping, hangers, and supports in accordance with NFPA 14.
- E. Route piping in orderly manner, plumb and parallel to building structure. Maintain gradient.
- F. Install piping to conserve building space, to not interfere with use of space and other work.
- G. Piping shall be concealed where routed in finished spaces.
- H. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- I. Sleeve pipes passing through partitions, walls, and floors.
- J. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- K. Inserts:
  - 1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
  - 2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
  - 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
  - 4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.
- L. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
  - 2. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
  - 3. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
  - 4. Support vertical piping at every other floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
  - 5. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
  - 6. Support piping from top chord of bar joists. Support from deck or bottom chord is not acceptable.
- M. Slope piping and arrange systems to drain at low points. Use eccentric reducers to maintain top of pipe level.
- N. Prepare pipe, fittings, supports, and accessories for finish painting. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welding.
- O. Do not penetrate building structural members unless indicated.
- P. Provide sleeves when penetrating footings, floors, and walls. Seal pipe and sleeve penetrations to achieve fire resistance equivalent to fire separation required.
  - 1. Underground Piping: Caulk pipe sleeve watertight with lead and oakum or mechanically expandable chloroprene inserts with bitumen sealed metal components.
  - 2. Aboveground Piping:

- a. Pack solid using mineral fiber conforming to ASTM C592.
- b. Fill space with an elastomer caulk to a depth of 0.50 inch where penetrations occur between conditioned and unconditioned spaces.
- 3. All Rated Openings: Caulk tight with fire stopping material conforming to ASTM E814 in accordance with Firestopping section to prevent the spread of fire, smoke, and gases.
- 4. Caulk exterior wall sleeves watertight with lead and oakum or mechanically expandable chloroprene inserts with mastic-sealed components.
- Q. Manufactured Sleeve-Seal Systems:
  - 1. Install manufactured sleeve-seal systems in sleeves located in grade slabs and exterior concrete walls at piping entrances into building.
  - 2. Provide sealing elements of the size, quantity, and type required for the piping and sleeve inner diameter or penetration diameter.
  - 3. Locate piping in center of sleeve or penetration.
  - 4. Install field assembled sleeve-seal system components in annular space between sleeve and piping.
  - 5. Tighten bolting for a water-tight seal.
  - 6. Install in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
- R. Escutcheons:
  - 1. Install and firmly attach escutcheons at piping penetrations into finished spaces.
  - 2. Provide escutcheons on both sides of partitions separating finished areas through which piping passes.
  - 3. Use chrome plated escutcheons in occupied spaces and to conceal openings in construction.
- S. When installing more than one piping system material, ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure the integrity of the system. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.
- T. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted. Remove protective coatings prior to installation.
- U. Provide gate valves for shut-off or isolating service.
- V. Provide drain valves at main shut-off valves, low points of piping and apparatus.

END OF SECTION 210500

## SECTION 210523

### GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR WATER-BASED FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
- B. Bronze butterfly valves with indicators.
- C. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
- D. Check valves.
- E. Bronze OS&Y gate valves.
- F. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
- G. NRS gate valves.
- H. Indicator posts.
- I. Trim and drain valves.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 210500 - Common Work Results for Fire Suppression: Pipe and fittings.
- B. Section 210553 - Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment.
- C. Section 211200 - Fire-Suppression Standpipes.
- D. Section 211300 - Fire Suppression Sprinklers.
- E. Section 283100 - Fire Detection and Alarm.

##### 1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene diene monomer.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- C. NRS: Non-rising stem.
- D. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- E. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
- F. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

##### 1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Qualifications; 2015.
- B. FM 1140 - Approval Standard for Quick Opening Valves 1/4 Inch through 2 Inch Nominal Size; 1998.
- C. NFPA 13 - Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems; 2016.
- D. UL 258 - Shutoff Valves for Trim and Drain Purposes for Fire Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on valves including manufacturers catalog information. Submit performance ratings, rough-in details, weights, support requirements, and piping connections.
- B. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listings.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.

2. Company must specialize in manufacturing products specified in this section, with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Where listed products are specified, provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL), FM Global, or testing firm acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
- C. Welding Materials and Procedures: Conform to ASME BPVC-IX.
- D. Installer and Maintenance Contractor Qualifications:
  1. Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum five years documented experience.
  2. Trained and approved by manufacturer to design, install, test and maintain the equipment specified herein.
  3. Complies with manufacturer's certification requirements.
  4. Complies with manufacturer's insurance requirements.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  2. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  1. Maintain valve end protection and protect flanges and specialties from dirt.
    - a. Provide temporary inlet and outlet caps.
    - b. Maintain caps in place until installation.
  2. Store valves in shipping containers and maintain in place until installation.
    - a. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature.
    - b. If outdoor storage is unavoidable, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use the following precautions for handling:
  1. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 13 and NFPA 14 for valves.
- B. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except trim and drain valves.
  2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
  3. Hand-lever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves 2 NPS and smaller.

#### 2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Description:
  1. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  2. Body Design: Two piece.
  3. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  4. Port Size: Full or standard.
  5. Seat: PTFE.
  6. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  8. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
  9. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  10. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

### 2.3 BRONZE BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Body Material: Bronze.
- C. Seat: EPDM.
- D. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
- E. Disc: Bronze with EPDM coating.
- F. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
- G. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.

### 2.4 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron with nylon, EPDM, epoxy, or polyamide coating.
- C. Seat: EPDM.
- D. Stem: Stainless steel.
- E. Disc: Ductile iron, nickel plated.
- F. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
- G. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
- H. Body Design: Grooved-end connections.

### 2.5 CHECK VALVES

- A. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Type: Center guided check valve.
- C. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron.
- D. Center guided check with elastomeric seal.
- E. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
- F. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

### 2.6 BRONZE OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Body and Bonnet Material: Bronze or brass.
- C. Wedge: One-piece bronze or brass.
- D. Wedge Seat: Bronze.
- E. Stem: Bronze or brass.
- F. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
- G. Supervisory Switch: External.
- H. End Connections: Threaded.

### 2.7 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

- A. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- C. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
- D. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
- E. Stem: Brass or bronze.
- F. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
- G. Supervisory Switch: External.

H. End Connections: Flanged.

## 2.8 NRS GATE VALVES

- A. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
- B. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- C. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron with elastomeric coating.
- D. Stem: Brass or bronze.
- E. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
- F. Supervisory Switch: External.
- G. End Connections: Flanged.

## 2.9 INDICATOR POSTS

- A. Type: Underground.
- B. Base Barrel Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- C. Cap: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Operation: Wrench.

## 2.10 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball Valves:

- 1. Description:
  - a. UL 258 or FM 1140 listed.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Two piece.
  - d. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  - e. Port Size: Full or standard.
  - f. Seat: PTFE.
  - g. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  - h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - i. Actuator: Hand-lever.
  - j. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

### B. Angle Valves:

- 1. Description:
  - a. UL 258 or FM 1140 listed.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - c. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.
  - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### C. Globe Valves:

- 1. Description:
  - a. UL 258 or FM 1140 listed.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - c. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded.
  - e. Stem: Bronze.
  - f. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
  - g. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
  - h. Packing: Asbestos free.



- i. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Confirm valve interior to be free of foreign matter and corrosion.
- B. Remove packing materials.
- C. Examine guides and seats by operating valves from the fully open position to the fully closed position.
- D. Examine valve threads and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with specific valve installation requirements and application in the following Sections:
- B. Install listed fire protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire department connections.
  - 1. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in water supply connections and backflow preventer at potable water supply connections.
- D. Valves in horizontal piping installed with stem at or above the pipe center.
- E. Position valves to allow full stem movement.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with Section 210553 requirements for valve tags, schedules, and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the appropriate NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed.

END OF SECTION 210523



## SECTION 210553

### IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates.
- B. Tags.
- C. Stencils.
- D. Pipe Markers.

##### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. List: Submit list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for mechanical identification.
- B. Chart and Schedule: Submit valve chart and schedule, including valve tag number, location, function, and valve manufacturer's name and model number.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalog literature for each product required.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 NAMEPLATES

- A. Description: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved letters.

##### 2.2 TAGS

- A. Plastic Tags: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved black letters on light contrasting background color. Tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter.
- B. Metal Tags: Brass with stamped letters; tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter with smooth edges.
- C. Valve Tag Chart: Typewritten letter size list in anodized aluminum frame.

##### 2.3 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: With clean cut symbols and letters of following size:
  - 1. 3/4 to 1-1/4 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 8 inch long color field, 1/2 inch high letters.
  - 2. 1-1/2 to 2 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 8 inch long color field, 3/4 inch high letters.
  - 3. 2-1/2 to 6 inch Outside Diameter of Insulation or Pipe: 12 inch long color field, 1-1/4 inch high letters.
  - 4. Equipment: 2-1/2 inch high letters.

##### 2.4 PIPE MARKERS

- A. Plastic Pipe Markers: Factory fabricated, flexible, semi-rigid plastic, preformed to fit around pipe or pipe covering; minimum information indicating flow direction arrow and identification of fluid being conveyed.
- B. Plastic Tape Pipe Markers: Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.
- C. Underground Plastic Pipe Markers: Bright colored continuously printed plastic ribbon tape, minimum 6 inches wide by 4 mil thick, manufactured for direct burial service.

##### 2.5 CEILING TACKS

- A. Description: Steel with 3/4 inch diameter color coded head.

#### PART 3 EXECUTION

##### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive adhesive for identification materials.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive. Apply with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer.
- B. Install tags with corrosion resistant chain.
- C. Install plastic pipe markers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install plastic tape pipe markers complete around pipe in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Install underground plastic pipe markers 6 to 8 inches below finished grade, directly above buried pipe.
- F. Use tags on piping 3/4 inch diameter and smaller.
- G. Locate ceiling tacks to locate valves above T-bar type panel ceilings. Locate in corner of panel closest to equipment.

END OF SECTION 210553

SECTION 211200  
FIRE-SUPPRESSION STANDPIPES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Standpipe system.
- B. Fire department connection.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 210500 - Common Work Results for Fire Suppression: Fire Protection Piping.
- B. Section 210523 - General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping.
- C. Section 210553 - Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment.
- D. Section 211300 - Fire Suppression Sprinklers.
- E. Section 262717 - Equipment Wiring: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FM P7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition.
- B. NFPA 14 - Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems; 2013.
- C. NFPA 1963 - Standard for Fire Hose Connections; 2014.
- D. UL 405 - Fire Department Connection Devices; Current Edition; Including All Revisions.
- E. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog sheet for equipment indicating rough-in size, finish, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate supports, components, accessories, and sizes.
  - 1. Submit shop drawings, product data, and hydraulic calculations to authority having jurisdiction for approval. Drawings and calculations shall be stamped by a licenced professional engineer.
  - 2. Installation shall be fully coordinated with structure and all other trades. Coordination shall be performed with installed conditions, not just the construction drawings. Rework of piping due to conflicts with field conditions shall be performed without cost to the Owner or Engineer.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components.
- D. Operation Data: Include manufacturer's data.
- E. Certificates: Provide certificate of compliance from authority having jurisdiction indicating approval of field acceptance tests.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with NFPA 14.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum three years experience .

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 VALVES

- A. General Duty Valves: Refer to Section 210523.
- B. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Hose Station Valve:
    - a. Angle type, brass finish, 1-1/2 NPS with automatic ball drip.
  - 2. Hose Connection Valve:
    - a. Angle type; brass finish; 2-1/2 NPS, thread to match fire department hardware, 300 psi working pressure, with threaded cap and chain of same material and finish.

3. Pressure Reducing Valve:
  - a. Angle type; brass finish with inner hydraulic controls; 1-1/2 inch size, thread to match fire department hardware, 400 psi inlet pressure, with threaded cap and chain of same material and finish.

C. Hose Connection Valve Cabinets:

1. Style: Recessed mounted.
2. Tub: 16 gage, 0.0598 inch thick steel, prepared for pipe and accessory rough-in.
3. Door: 12 gage, 0.1046 inch thick steel, flush, glazed with 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) thick wired glass full panel; hinged, positive latch device.
4. Finish: Prime Coated.

2.2 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. Type: Flush mounted wall type with brass finish.
- B. Outlets: Two way with thread size to suit fire department hardware; threaded dust cap and chain of matching material and finish.
- C. Drain: 3/4 inch automatic drip, outside.
- D. Label: "Auto. Sprinkler Standpipe"

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NFPA 14.
- C. Locate hose station valve in cabinet at 60 inches above finished floor.
- D. Connect standpipe system to water source ahead of domestic water connection.
- E. Where residual pressure exceeds 100 psi at any hose station, provide pressure orifice disc in discharge of hose station valve to prevent pressure on hose exceeding 100 psi.
- F. Flush entire system of foreign matter.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test entire system in accordance with NFPA 14.
- B. Test shall be witnessed by Fire Marshal.

END OF SECTION 211200

SECTION 211300  
FIRE SUPPRESSION SPRINKLERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wet-pipe sprinkler system.
- B. System design, installation, and certification.
- C. Fire department connections.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 210500 - Common Work Results for Fire Suppression: Pipe, fittings, and valves.
- B. Section 220553 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. FM P7825 - Approval Guide; Factory Mutual Research Corporation; current edition.
- B. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2012.
- C. ICC-ES AC106 - Acceptance Criteria for Predrilled Fasteners (Screw Anchors) in Masonry Elements; 2012.
- D. ICC-ES AC193 - Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2013.
- E. ICC-ES AC308 - Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements; 2013.
- F. UL (DIR) - Online Certifications Directory; current listings at database.ul.com.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on sprinklers, valves, and specialties, including manufacturers catalog information. Submit performance ratings, rough-in details, weights, support requirements, and piping connections.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Submit preliminary layout of finished ceiling areas indicating only sprinkler locations coordinated with ceiling installation. Additionally, indicate general routing of piping for review by Architect.
  - 2. Indicate hydraulic calculations, detailed pipe layout, hangers and supports, sprinklers, components and accessories. Indicate system controls.
  - 3. Submit shop drawings, product data, and hydraulic calculations to authority having jurisdiction for approval. Drawings and calculations shall be stamped by a licenced professional engineer.
  - 4. Installation shall be fully coordinated with structure and all other trades. Coordination shall be performed with installed conditions, not just the construction drawings. Rework of sprinkler piping due to conflicts with field conditions shall be performed without cost to the Owner or Engineer.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of sprinklers and deviations of piping from drawings. Indicate drain and test locations.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include components of system, servicing requirements, record drawings, inspection data, replacement part numbers and availability, and location and numbers of service depot.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Maintain one copy of referenced design and installation standard on site.
- B. Conform to UL requirements.
- C. Designer Qualifications: Design system under direct supervision of a Professional Engineer experienced in design of this type of work and licensed in Kansas.
- D. Equipment and Components: Provide products that bear UL label or marking.

- E. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc., as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in shipping containers and maintain in place until installation. Provide temporary inlet and outlet caps. Maintain caps in place until installation.

#### 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide extra sprinklers of type and size matching those installed, in quantity required by referenced NFPA design and installation standard.
- B. Provide suitable wrenches for each sprinkler type.
- C. Provide metal storage cabinet located adjacent to alarm valve.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SPRINKLER SYSTEM

- A. Sprinkler System: Provide coverage for entire building.
- B. Occupancy: Comply with NFPA 13.
- C. Water Supply: Determine volume and pressure from water flow test data.
- D. Interface system with building fire and smoke alarm system.
- E. Provide fire department connections at locations coordinated with Fire Department.
- F. Storage Cabinet for Spare Sprinklers and Tools: Steel, located adjacent to alarm valve.
- G. Pipe Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners, as follows:
  - 1. Concrete Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
  - 2. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
  - 3. Concrete Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
  - 4. Masonry Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC106.
  - 5. Concrete Adhesive Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC308.
  - 6. Other Types: As required.

#### 2.2 SPRINKLERS

- A. Suspended Ceiling Type: Semi-recessed or concealed pendant type with matching push on escutcheon or cover plate.
  - 1. Fusible Link: Fusible solder link type temperature rated for specific area hazard.
- B. Exposed Area Type: Standard upright type with guard.
  - 1. Fusible Link: Fusible solder link type temperature rated for specific area hazard.
- C. Sidewall Type: Semi-recessed horizontal sidewall type with matching push on escutcheon plate .
  - 1. Fusible Link: Fusible solder link type temperature rated for specific area hazard.
- D. Guards: Finish to match sprinkler finish.
  - 1. Provide guards at all heads in basement, mechanical rooms, and storage rooms.
  - 2. Provide guards at all heads installed below 8' AFF.
- E. Finish:
  - 1. Heads and escutcheons in historic areas, rooms 101, 102, 103, 104, 106, and 107 shall have brass finish.
  - 2. Heads and escutcheons in all other areas shall have black finish.

#### 2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Dry Pipe Sprinkler Alarm Valve: Check type valve with divided seat ring, rubber faced clapper to automatically actuate water motor alarm, accelerator, and with the following additional capabilities and features:
  - 1. Activate electric alarm.
  - 2. Test and drain valve.



3. Externally resettable.
  4. Replaceable internal components without removing valve from installed position.
- B. Wet Pipe Sprinkler Alarm Valve: Check type valve with divided seat ring, rubber faced clapper to automatically actuate water motor alarm and electric alarm, with pressure retard chamber and variable pressure trim; with test and drain valve.
- C. Backflow Preventer: Double check valve assembly backflow preventer with drain and OS & Y gate valve on each end. Coordinate requirements with Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- D. Test Connections:
1. Inspector's Test Connection for Preaction Systems:
    - a. Provide test connections approximately 6 ft above floor for each or portion of each sprinkler system equipped with an alarm device, located at the most remote part of each system.
    - b. Route test connection to an open-site drain location, excluding janitor sinks, accepting full flow without negative consequences.
    - c. Supply discharge orifice with same size as corresponding sprinkler orifice.
  2. Backflow Preventer Test Connection:
    - a. Provide downstream of the backflow prevention assembly, listed hose valves with 2.5 inch National Standard male hose threads with cap and chain.
- E. Electric Alarm: Electrically operated chrome plated gong with pressure alarm switch.
- F. Water Flow Switch: Vane type switch for mounting horizontal or vertical, with two contacts; rated 10 amp at 125 volt AC and 2.5 amp at 24 volt DC.
- G. Fire Department Connections:
1. Type: Flush mounted wall type with brass finish.
  2. Outlets: Two way with thread size to suit fire department hardware; threaded dust cap and chain of matching material and finish.
  3. Drain: 3/4 inch automatic drip, outside.
  4. Label: "Auto. Sprinkler Standpipe".

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with referenced NFPA design and installation standard.
- B. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install buried shut-off valves in valve box. Provide post indicator.
- D. Provide approved backflow preventer assembly at sprinkler system water source connection.
- E. Locate fire department connection with sufficient clearance from walls, obstructions, or adjacent siamese connectors to allow full swing of fire department wrench handle. Coordinate with Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- F. Place pipe runs to minimize obstruction to other work.
- G. Place piping in concealed spaces above finished ceilings.
- H. Center sprinklers in two directions in ceiling tile and provide piping offsets as required.
- I. Apply masking tape or paper cover to ensure concealed sprinklers, cover plates, and sprinkler escutcheons do not receive field paint finish. Remove after painting. Replace painted sprinklers.
- J. Flush entire piping system of foreign matter.
- K. Install guards on sprinklers where subject to damage..
- L. Hydrostatically test entire system.
- M. Required tests must be witnessed by authority having jurisdiction.
- N. Provide concealed or sidewall heads in lobby. Other public areas must have concealed or recessed heads. Exposed ceiling or sidewall heads may be used in apartments.

- O. Piping serving historic lobby shall be concealed as much as possible. Route piping between sleepers at floor above if required to conceal piping. Coordinate final routing with Architect prior to installation.
- P. Areas subject to freezing shall be provided with dry type heads.

3.2 INTERFACE WITH OTHER PRODUCTS

- A. Ensure required devices are installed and connected as required to fire alarm system.

END OF SECTION 211300

SECTION 220501  
PLUMBING DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Plumbing demolition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify field measurements, pipe, and equipment arrangements for new work as shown on Drawings.
- B. Prior to submitting bid, visit site and become familiar with scope of demolition work required to accommodate new work.
- C. Refer to Architectural Drawings for additional clarification of scope of demolition and new work.
- D. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove all piping, fixtures, and other plumbing installation from entire building.

3.3 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING PLUMBING WORK

- A. Remove all equipment, controls, piping, fixtures, and other plumbing installation from the entire building. Piping to be removed to source of supply.
- B. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.

END OF SECTION 220501



SECTION 220553

IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Nameplates.
- B. Tags.
- C. Pipe Markers.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2007.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. List: Submit list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for mechanical identification.
- C. Chart and Schedule: Submit valve chart and schedule, including valve tag number, location, function, and valve manufacturer's name and model number.
- D. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalog literature for each product required.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of tagged valves.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 PLUMBING COMPONENT IDENTIFICATION GUIDELINE

- A. Pipe Markers: 3/4 inch diameter and higher.

2.2 NAMEPLATES

- A. Description: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved letters.
  - 1. Letter Color: White.
  - 2. Letter Height: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Background Color: Black.

2.3 TAGS

- A. Plastic Tags: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved black letters on light contrasting background color. Tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter.
- B. Metal Tags: Brass with stamped letters; tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter with smooth edges.
- C. Chart: Typewritten letter size list in anodized aluminum frame.

2.4 PIPE MARKERS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Plastic Tape Pipe Markers: Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive. Apply with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer.
- B. Install tags with corrosion resistant chain.
- C. Install plastic pipe markers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install plastic tape pipe markers complete around pipe in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Identify equipment with plastic nameplates. Small devices, such as in-line pumps, may be identified with tags.

- F. Identify control panels and major control components outside panels with plastic nameplates.
- G. Identify valves in main and branch piping with tags.
- H. Identify piping, concealed or exposed, with plastic pipe markers. Use tags on piping 3/4 inch diameter and smaller. Identify service, flow direction, and pressure. Install in clear view and align with axis of piping. Locate identification not to exceed 20 feet on straight runs including risers and drops, adjacent to each valve and Tee, at each side of penetration of structure or enclosure, and at each obstruction.

END OF SECTION 220553

SECTION 220719  
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Jackets and accessories.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2013.
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- C. ASTM C449 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-Setting Thermal Insulating and Finishing Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2013).
- D. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2014.
- E. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2015.
- F. ASTM C795 - Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel; 2008 (Reapproved 2013).
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- H. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2014.
- I. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures that ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achieved.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

2.2 GLASS FIBER

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Knauf Insulation: [www.knaufusa.com](http://www.knaufusa.com).
  - 2. Johns Manville Corporation: [www.jm.com](http://www.jm.com).
  - 3. Owens Corning Corp: [www.owenscorning.com](http://www.owenscorning.com).
  - 4. CertainTeed Corporation: [www.certainteed.com](http://www.certainteed.com).
- B. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
  - 1. 'K' value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum service temperature: 250 degrees F.
  - 3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- C. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; semi-rigid, noncombustible, end grain adhered to jacket.
  - 1. 'K' value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum service temperature: 250 degrees F.
  - 3. Maximum moisture absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.

- D. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M of 0.02 perm-inches.
- E. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive:
  - 1. Compatible with insulation.
- F. Insulating Cement/Mastic:
  - 1. ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.
- G. Fibrous Glass Fabric:
  - 1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
  - 2. Blanket: 1.0 lb/cu ft density.
  - 3. Weave: 5x5.
- H. Indoor Vapor Barrier Finish:
  - 1. Cloth: Untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.
  - 2. Vinyl emulsion type acrylic, compatible with insulation, black color.
- I. Insulating Cement:
  - 1. ASTM C449/C449M.

### 2.3 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Armacell International: [www.armacell.com/#sle](http://www.armacell.com/#sle).
  - 2. K-Flex USA: [www.kflexusa.com](http://www.kflexusa.com).
- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534 Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
  - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: -40 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F.
  - 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.

### 2.4 JACKETS

- A. PVC Plastic.
  - 1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
    - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F.
    - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
    - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - d. Thickness: 10 mil.
    - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- C. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, pump bodies, and expansion joints.
- D. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature:
  - 1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure sensitive adhesive.



2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- E. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature:
  1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure sensitive adhesive.
  2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- F. Inserts and Shields:
  1. Application: Piping 2-1/2 inches diameter or larger.
  2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
  3. Insert location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
- G. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, refer to Firestopping Section.
- H. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Provide PVC jacket.

### 3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
  1. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: 1/2 through 1-1/4 inch.
    - b. Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: Above 1-1/4 inch
    - b. Thickness: 1-1/2 inch
- B. Domestic Cold Water:
  1. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: 1/2 through 1-1/4 inch.
    - b. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  2. Glass Fiber Insulation:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: Above 1-1/4 inch
    - b. Thickness: 1 inch
- C. Other Systems:
  1. Drains from water coolers: 1/2" elastomeric

END OF SECTION 220719



SECTION 221005  
PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Pipe, pipe fittings, valves, and connections for piping systems.
  - 1. Sanitary sewer.
  - 2. Domestic water.
  - 3. Natural gas piping, above grade.
  - 4. Flanges, unions, and couplings.
  - 5. Pipe hangers and supports.
  - 6. Valves.
  - 7. Flow controls.
  - 8. Check valves.
  - 9. Water pressure reducing valves.
  - 10. Relief valves.
  - 11. Sleeves
  - 12. Sleeve seals
  - 13. Grout
  - 14. Escutcheons

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section - Firestopping.
- B. Section 220553 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.
- C. Section 220719 - Plumbing Piping Insulation.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI Z21.22 - American National Standard for Relief Valves and Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems; 1999, and addenda A&B (R2004).
- B. ANSI Z223.1 - National Fuel Gas Code; 2015.
- C. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2011.
- D. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2012.
- E. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2013.
- F. ASME B31.1 - Power Piping; 2014.
- G. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2014.
- H. ASSE 1003 - Performance Requirements for Water Pressure Reducing Valves for Domestic Water Distribution Systems; 2009.
- I. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2012.
- J. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2015.
- K. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2015.
- L. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2008 (Reapproved 2014).
- M. ASTM B42 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes; 2015a.
- N. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2014.
- O. ASTM B813 - Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube; 2010.
- P. ASTM B828 - Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings; 2002 (Reapproved 2010).

- Q. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2012.
- R. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2014.
- S. ASTM D2729 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2011.
- T. ASTM D2855 - Standard Practice for Making Solvent-Cemented Joints with Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pipe and Fittings; 1996 (Reapproved 2010).
- U. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- V. ASTM F876 - Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Tubing; 2013a.
- W. ASTM F877 - Standard Specification for Crosslinked Polyethylene (PEX) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems; 2011.
- X. ASTM F708 - Standard Practice for Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers; 1992 (Reapproved 2008).
- Y. ASTM F 2389-06 - Standard Specification for Pressure-rated Polypropylene (PP) Piping Systems
- Z. CSA B137.11 - Polypropylene (PP-R) Pipe and Fittings for Pressure Applications
- AA. NSF/ANSI 14 - Plastic Piping System Components and Related Materials
- AB. NSF/ANSI 61 - Drinking Water Systems Components - Health Effects
- AC. AWWA C550 - Protective Interior Coatings for Valves and Hydrants; 2013.
- AD. AWWA C651 - Disinfecting Water Mains; 2005.
- AE. CISPI 301 - Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste and Vent Piping Applications; 2009.
- AF. CISPI 310 - Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications; 2011.
- AG. ICC-ES AC01 - Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements; 2012.
- AH. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2009.
- AI. MSS SP-67 - Butterfly Valves; 2011.
- AJ. MSS SP-70 - Cast Iron Gate Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- AK. MSS SP-71 - Cast Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- AL. MSS SP-78 - Cast Iron Plug Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2011.
- AM. MSS SP-80 - Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle and Check Valves; 2013.
- AN. MSS SP-110 - Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends; 2010.
- AO. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2011.
- AP. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves, and accessories. Provide manufacturers catalog information. Indicate valve data and ratings.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing of piping. Record actual locations of valves.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform Work in accordance with City of Salina standards.
- B. Where joining systems specific to a piping manufacturer are used, personnel shall receive factory authorized training prior to installation, and submit evidence of such training for review.

- C. Valves: Manufacturer's name and pressure rating marked on valve body.
- D. Welding Materials and Procedures: Conform to ASME BPVC-IX and applicable state labor regulations.
- E. Welder Qualifications: Certified in accordance with ASME BPVC-IX.
- F. Identify pipe with marking including size, ASTM material classification, ASTM specification, potable water certification, water pressure rating.

#### 1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform Work in accordance with State of Kansas, plumbing code.
- B. Conform to applicable code for installation of backflow prevention devices.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept valves on site in shipping containers with labeling in place. Inspect for damage.
- B. Provide temporary protective coating on cast iron and steel valves.
- C. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- D. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install underground piping when bedding is wet or frozen.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Potable Water Supply Systems: Provide piping, pipe fittings, and solder and flux (if used), that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content; label pipe and fittings.
- B. Plenum-Installed Acid Waste Piping: Flame-spread index equal or below 25 and smoke-spread index equal or below 50 according to ASTM E84 or UL 723 tests.
- C. Reference PART 3 EXECUTION for product applications. Listing of products herein does not imply acceptance of use in all sizes or locations.

#### 2.2 SANITARY SEWER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

#### 2.3 SANITARY SEWER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless, service weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2729.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

#### 2.4 WATER PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET OF BUILDING

- A. Copper Pipe: ASTM B42, hard drawn.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22 wrought copper and bronze.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM B 32, alloy Sn95 solder.
- B. PE Pipe: ASTM D2239, or ASTM D2447 Schedule 40.
  - 1. Fittings: ASTM D2609, PE.
  - 2. Joints: Mechanical with stainless steel clamp.

#### 2.5 WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), Drawn (H).
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast copper alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought copper and bronze.

2. Joints: ASTM B32, alloy Sn95 solder.
  - B. Polyethylene Pipe (PEX): ASTM F 1281 or ASTM F 1282, tested for potable water and residual chlorine use. PEX piping shall be straight lengths where exposed, coiled PEX is not acceptable.
    1. Fittings and Joints: Brass compression type.
  - C. Polypropylene Pipe (PP-R): Pipe shall be manufactured from a PP-R resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The pipe shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material. All pipe shall be made in a three layer extrusion process. Domestic hot water shall contain a fiber layer (faser) to restrict thermal expansion. All pipe shall comply with the rated pressure requirements of ASTM F 2389. All pipe shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
    1. Pipe shall be aquatherm® Greenpipe®, Faser®, or available from Aquatherm, Inc.. Piping specifications and ordering information are available at [www.aquathermpipe.com](http://www.aquathermpipe.com).
    2. Fittings shall be manufactured from a PP-R resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The fittings shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material. All fittings shall be certified by NSF International as complying with NSF 14, NSF 61, and ASTM F 2389 or CSA B137.11.
    3. Valves with PP-R bodies shall be manufactured from a PP-R resin meeting the short-term properties and long-term strength requirements of ASTM F 2389. The valves shall contain no rework or recycled materials except that generated in the manufacturer's own plant from resin of the same specification from the same raw material.
    4. Manufacturer shall warrant pipe and fittings for 10 years to be free of defects in materials or workmanship. Warrantee shall cover labor and material costs of repairing and/or replacing defective materials and repairing any incidental damage caused by failure of the piping system do to defects in materials or workmanship.
    5. Where up to 1 inch of standard insulation is indicated on the drawings or in these specifications, a field installed, thermal (radiant, conductive, and convective) and vapor barrier insulation shall be provided for all straight lengths of pipe. The thick wall, self insulating fittings do not require an additional vapor barrier for the piping system to meet this performance level. Where up to 1.5 inches of standard inches of insulation is indicated on the drawings or in these specifications, a field installed, thermal (radiant, conductive, and convective) and vapor barrier insulation shall be provided for all straight lengths of pipe and all fittings. The thermal barrier is UV resistant, CFC-free, non-porous, non-fibrous, and resist mold growth. The pipe with the integral thermal barrier with standard unprotected fittings shall meet the ASTM E84 and the CSA/ULc S102 requirements for a Flame Spread Rating of 25 and Smoke Development rating of 50.
  - D. Mechanical joint system: Manufacturer's fittings and joining methods, for pipe materials and sizes.
    1. Viega
- 2.6 NATURAL GAS PIPING, ABOVE GRADE
- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.
    1. Fittings: ASME B16.3, malleable iron, or ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type.
    2. Joints: Threaded or welded to ASME B31.1.
- 2.7 FLANGES, UNIONS, AND COUPLINGS
- A. Unions for Pipe Sizes 3 Inches and Under:
    1. Ferrous pipe: Class 150 malleable iron threaded unions.
    2. Copper tube and pipe: Class 150 bronze unions with soldered joints.
  - B. Dielectric Connections: Union with galvanized or plated steel threaded end, copper solder end, water impervious isolation barrier.
- 2.8 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS
- A. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.

1. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
  2. Overhead Supports: Individual steel rod hangers attached to structure or to trapeze hangers.
  3. Trapeze Hangers: Welded steel channel frames attached to structure.
  4. Vertical Pipe Support: Steel riser clamp.
- B. Plumbing Piping - Drain, Waste, and Vent:
1. Conform to ASME B31.9.
  2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch to 1-1/2 Inches: Carbon steel, adjustable swivel, split ring.
  3. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  4. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
  5. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
  6. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
  7. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- C. Plumbing Piping - Water:
1. Conform to ASME B31.9.
  2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch to 1-1/2 Inches: Malleable iron, adjustable swivel, split ring.
  3. Hangers for Cold Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  4. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 2 Inches to 4 Inches: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  5. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded supports or spacers and hanger rods.
  6. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches and Over: Steel channels with welded supports or spacers and hanger rods, cast iron roll.
  7. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
  8. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 Inches and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.
  9. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
- D. Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners, as follows:
1. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
  2. Other Types: As required.
- ## 2.9 GATE VALVES
- A. Manufacturers:
1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  2. Conbraco Industries: [www.conbraco.com](http://www.conbraco.com).
  3. Nibco, Inc: [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
  4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
  5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Up To and Including 3 Inches:
1. 1, Class 125, bronze body, bronze trim, rising stem, handwheel, inside screw, solid wedge disc, solder ends.
- C. 2 Inches and Larger:
1. 1, Class 125, iron body, bronze trim, outside screw and yoke, handwheel, solid wedge disc, flanged ends. Provide chain-wheel operators for valves 6 inches and larger mounted over 8 feet above floor.
- ## 2.10 BALL VALVES
- A. Manufacturers:
1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  2. Conbraco Industries: [www.conbraco.com](http://www.conbraco.com).
  3. Nibco, Inc: [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
  4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
  5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

- B. Construction, 4 Inches and Smaller: MSS SP-110, Class 150, 400 psi CWP, bronze, two piece body, chrome plated brass ball, regular port, teflon seats and stuffing box ring, blow-out proof stem, lever handle with balancing stops, solder ends with union.

#### 2.11 PLUG VALVES

- A. Construction 2-1/2 Inches and Larger: 1, 175 psi CWP, cast iron body and plug, pressure lubricated, teflon or Buna N packing, flanged or grooved ends. Provide lever operator with set screw.

#### 2.12 BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. Hammond Valve: [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
  - 3. Crane Co.: [www.cranvalve.com](http://www.cranvalve.com).
  - 4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Construction 1-1/2 Inches and Larger: MSS SP-67, 200 psi CWP, cast or ductile iron body, nickel-plated ductile iron disc, resilient replaceable EPDM seat, wafer ends, extended neck, 10 position lever handle.
- C. Provide gear operators for valves 8 inches and larger, and chain-wheel operators for valves mounted over 8 feet above floor.

#### 2.13 FLOW CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. ITT Bell & Gossett: [www.bellgossett.com](http://www.bellgossett.com).
  - 3. Griswold Controls: [www.griswoldcontrols.com](http://www.griswoldcontrols.com).
  - 4. Taco, Inc: [www.taco-hvac.com](http://www.taco-hvac.com).
- B. Construction: Class 125, Brass or bronze body with union on inlet and outlet, temperature and pressure test plug on inlet and outlet, blowdown/backflush drain.
- C. Calibration: Control flow within 5 percent of selected rating, over operating pressure range of 10 times minimum pressure required for control, maximum minimum pressure 3.5 psi.

#### 2.14 SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. Hammond Valve: [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
  - 3. Nibco, Inc: [www.nibco.com](http://www.nibco.com).
  - 4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
  - 5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Up to 2 Inches:
  - 1. 1, Class 125, bronze body and cap, bronze swing disc with rubber seat, solder ends.
- C. Over 2 Inches:
  - 1. 1, Class 125, iron body, bronze swing disc, renewable disc seal and seat, flanged or grooved ends.

#### 2.15 SPRING LOADED CHECK VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Tyco Flow Control: [www.tycoflowcontrol.com](http://www.tycoflowcontrol.com).
  - 2. Hammond Valve: [www.hammondvalve.com](http://www.hammondvalve.com).
  - 3. Crane Co.: [www.cranvalve.com](http://www.cranvalve.com).
  - 4. Milwaukee Valve Company: [www.milwaukeevalve.com](http://www.milwaukeevalve.com).
- B. Class 125, iron body, bronze trim, stainless steel springs, bronze disc, Buna N seals, wafer style ends.

#### 2.16 WATER PRESSURE REDUCING VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:



1. Amtrol Inc: [www.amtrol.com](http://www.amtrol.com).
  2. Cla-Val Co: [www.cla-val.com](http://www.cla-val.com).
  3. Watts Regulator Company: [www.wattsregulator.com](http://www.wattsregulator.com).
- B. Up to 2 Inches:
1. ASSE 1003, bronze body, stainless steel, and thermoplastic internal parts, fabric reinforced diaphragm, strainer, threaded single union ends.
- C. Over 2 Inches:
1. ASSE 1003, cast iron body with interior lining complying with AWWA C550, bronze fitted, elastomeric diaphragm and seat disc, flanged.
- 2.17 RELIEF VALVES
- A. Temperature and Pressure Relief:
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cla-Val Co: [www.cla-val.com](http://www.cla-val.com).
    - b. Henry Technologies: [www.henrytech.com](http://www.henrytech.com).
    - c. Watts Regulator Company: [www.wattsregulator.com](http://www.wattsregulator.com).
  2. AGA Z21.22 certified, bronze body, teflon seat, stainless steel stem and springs, automatic, direct pressure actuated, temperature relief maximum 210 degrees F, capacity ASME (BPV IV) certified and labelled.
- 2.18 SLEEVES
- A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- 2.19 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
  3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.
- 2.20 GROUT
- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.
- 2.21 ESCUTCHEONS
- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that excavations are to required grade, dry, and not over-excavated.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale and dirt, on inside and outside, before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide non-conducting dielectric connections wherever jointing dissimilar metals.
- C. Route piping in orderly manner and maintain gradient. Route parallel and perpendicular to walls.
- D. Install piping to maintain headroom, conserve space, and not interfere with use of space.
- E. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- F. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- G. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings. Refer to Section 220719.
- H. Provide access where valves and fittings are not exposed.
- I. Install vent piping penetrating roofed areas to maintain integrity of roof assembly.
- J. Where pipe support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welding.
- K. Provide support for utility meters in accordance with requirements of utility companies.

#### L. TRENCHING

1. Notify Architect of unexpected subsurface conditions and discontinue affected Work in area until notified to resume work.
2. Slope banks of excavations deeper than 4 feet to angle of repose or less until shored.
3. Do not interfere with 45 degree bearing splay of foundations.
4. Cut trenches wide enough to allow inspection of installed utilities.
5. Hand trim excavations. Remove loose matter.
6. Remove large stones and other hard matter that could damage piping or impede consistent backfilling or compaction.
7. Remove excavated material from site.

#### M. BACKFILLING

1. Fill up to subgrade elevations unless otherwise indicated.
2. Employ a placement method that does not disturb or damage other work.
3. Systematically fill to allow maximum time for natural settlement. Do not fill over porous, wet, frozen or spongy subgrade surfaces.
4. Maintain optimum moisture content of fill materials to attain required compaction density.
5. Utilize sand for fill. Place and compact materials in equal continuous layers not exceeding 6 inches compacted depth.

- N. Install bell and spigot pipe with bell end upstream.
- O. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.
- P. Pipe vents from gas pressure reducing valves to outdoors and terminate in weather proof hood.
- Q. Install water piping to ASME B31.9.

- R. Copper Pipe and Tube: Make soldered joints in accordance with ASTM B828, using specified solder, and flux meeting ASTM B813; in potable water systems use flux also complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- S. PVC Pipe: Make solvent-welded joints in accordance with ASTM D2855.
- T. Do not use PVC piping in return air plenums.
- U. PP Piping: Install fittings and joints using socket-fusion, electrofusion, or butt-fusion as applicable for the fitting type. All fusion-well joints shall be made in accordance with the pipe and fitting manufacturer's specifications and product standards.
- V. The use of PEX piping shall be limited to 1" and smaller unless noted otherwise.
- W. SLEEVE INSTALLATION
  - 1. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
  - 2. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
    - a. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
  - 3. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
    - a. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
    - b. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      - 1) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
    - c. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
  - 4. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
    - a. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - b. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
    - c. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in other sections.
  - 5. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in other sections.
- X. SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION
  - 1. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
  - 2. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.
- Y. ESCUTCHEONS
  - 1. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
  - 2. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
    - a. Escutcheons Schedule:
      - 1) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      - 2) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      - 3) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      - 4) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- 5) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
- 6) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

Z. Inserts:

1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.
4. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.

AA. Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.9.
2. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.
3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
4. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
5. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
6. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
7. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
8. Provide hangers adjacent to motor driven equipment with vibration isolation; refer to Section 220548.
9. Support cast iron drainage piping at every joint.

3.4 APPLICATION

- A. Install unions downstream of valves and at equipment or apparatus connections.
- B. Install brass male adapters each side of valves in copper piped system. Solder adapters to pipe.
- C. Install gate or ball valves for shut-off and to isolate equipment, part of systems, or vertical risers.
- D. Provide spring loaded check valves on discharge of water pumps.
- E. Provide flow controls in water recirculating systems where indicated.

3.5 TOLERANCES

- A. Drainage Piping: Establish invert elevations within 1/2 inch vertically of location indicated and slope to drain at minimum of 1/8 inch per foot slope.

3.6 FIELD TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Verify and inspect systems according to requirements by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Test Results: Document and certify successful results, otherwise repair, document, and retest.

3.7 DISINFECTION OF DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SYSTEM

- A. Prior to starting work, verify system is complete, flushed and clean.
- B. Ensure Ph of water to be treated is between 7.4 and 7.6 by adding alkali (caustic soda or soda ash) or acid (hydrochloric).
- C. Inject disinfectant, free chlorine in liquid, powder, tablet or gas form, throughout system to obtain 50 to 80 mg/L residual.
- D. Bleed water from outlets to ensure distribution and test for disinfectant residual at minimum 15 percent of outlets.
- E. Maintain disinfectant in system for 24 hours.
- F. If final disinfectant residual tests less than 25 mg/L, repeat treatment.
- G. Flush disinfectant from system until residual equal to that of incoming water or 1.0 mg/L.

- H. Take samples no sooner than 24 hours after flushing, from 10 percent of outlets and from water entry, and analyze in accordance with AWWA C651.

### 3.8 SERVICE CONNECTIONS

- A. Provide new sanitary sewer services. Before commencing work check invert elevations required for sewer connections, confirm inverts and ensure that these can be properly connected with slope for drainage and cover to avoid freezing.
- B. Provide new domestic water service.
- C. Provide new gas service complete with gas meter and regulators. Gas service distribution piping to have initial minimum pressure of 11 inch wg. Provide regulators on each line serving gravity type appliances, sized in accordance with equipment.

### 3.9 SCHEDULES

#### A. Pipe Hanger Spacing:

- 1. Metal Piping:
  - a. Pipe size: 1/2 inches to 1-1/4 inches:
    - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 6.5 ft.
    - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inches.
  - b. Pipe size: 1-1/2 inches to 2 inches:
    - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 10 ft.
    - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inch.
  - c. Pipe size: 2-1/2 inches to 3 inches:
    - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 10 ft.
    - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 1/2 inch.
  - d. Pipe size: 4 inches to 6 inches:
    - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 10 ft.
    - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 5/8 inch.
- 2. Plastic Piping:
  - a. All Sizes:
    - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 6 ft.
    - 2) Hanger rod diameter: 3/8 inch.

#### B. Pipe Materials:

- 1. Domestic Water: Any material listed for use in Part 2.
  - a. Basis of design is copper. If alternate material is used, adjust pipe sizing as indicated on drawings.
  - b. Stubouts to fixtures shall be copper.
  - c. All exposed piping shall be copper.
- 2. Sanitary Drain and Vent: Any material listed for use in Part 2.
  - a. PVC shall not be used in return air plenums.
- 3. Natural Gas: Any materials listed for use in Part 2.

END OF SECTION 221005



SECTION 221006  
PLUMBING PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cleanouts.
- B. Water hammer arrestors.
- C. Mixing valves.
- D. Interceptors.
- E. Thermostatic mixing valves.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ADA Standards - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- B. ASSE 1012 - Backflow Preventer with Intermediate Atmospheric Vent; 2009.
- C. PDI-WH 201 - Water Hammer Arresters; 2010.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide component sizes, rough-in requirements, service sizes, and finishes.
- B. Certificates: Certify that grease interceptors meet or exceed specified requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company: [www.jayrsmith.com/#sle](http://www.jayrsmith.com/#sle).
  - 2. Josam Company: [www.josam.com/#sle](http://www.josam.com/#sle).
  - 3. Zurn Industries, Inc: [www.zurn.com/#sle](http://www.zurn.com/#sle).
  - 4. Sioux Chief Manufacturing.
- B. Cleanouts at Exterior Surfaced Areas:
  - 1. Round cast nickel bronze access frame and non-skid cover.
- C. Cleanouts at Exterior Unsurfaced Areas:
  - 1. Line type with lacquered cast iron body and round epoxy coated gasketed cover.
- D. Cleanouts at Interior Finished Floor Areas (FFCO):
  - 1. Lacquered cast iron body with anchor flange, threaded top assembly, and round gasketed scored cover in service areas and round gasketed depressed cover to accept floor finish in finished floor areas.
- E. Cleanouts at Interior Finished Wall Areas (FWCO):
  - 1. Line type with lacquered cast iron body and round epoxy coated gasketed cover, and round stainless steel access cover secured with machine screw.
- F. Cleanouts at Interior Unfinished Accessible Areas: Caulked or threaded type.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Conbraco Industries: [www.conbraco.com/#sle](http://www.conbraco.com/#sle).
  - 2. Watts Regulator Company: [www.wattsregulator.com/#sle](http://www.wattsregulator.com/#sle).
  - 3. Zurn Industries, Inc: [www.zurn.com](http://www.zurn.com).
- B. Reduced Pressure Backflow Preventers:
  - 1. ASSE 1013; bronze body with bronze internal parts and stainless steel springs; two independently operating, spring loaded check valves; diaphragm type differential pressure relief valve located between check valves; third check valve that opens under back pressure in case of diaphragm failure; non-threaded vent outlet; assembled with two gate valves, strainer, and four test cocks.

## 2.3 DOUBLE CHECK VALVE ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Conbraco Industries: [www.conbraco.com/#sle](http://www.conbraco.com/#sle).
  - 2. Watts Regulator Company: [www.wattsregulator.com/#sle](http://www.wattsregulator.com/#sle).
  - 3. Zurn Industries, Inc: [www.zurn.com/#sle](http://www.zurn.com/#sle).
- B. Double Check Valve Assemblies:
  - 1. ASSE 1012; Bronze body with corrosion resistant internal parts and stainless steel springs; two independently operating check valves with intermediate atmospheric vent.

## 2.4 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Sioux Chief Manufacturing
- B. Water Hammer Arrestors:
  - 1. Stainless steel or Copper construction, piston type sized in accordance with PDI-WH 201, precharged suitable for operation in temperature range 34 to 250 degrees F and maximum 150 psi working pressure.

## 2.5 MIXING VALVES

- A. Thermostatic Mixing Valves:
  - 1. Accessories:
    - a. Check valve on inlets.
    - b. Volume control shut-off valve on outlet.
    - c. Stem thermometer on outlet.
    - d. Strainer stop checks on inlets.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Extend cleanouts to finished floor or wall surface. Lubricate threaded cleanout plugs with mixture of graphite and linseed oil. Ensure clearance at cleanout for rodding of drainage system.
- C. Encase exterior cleanouts in concrete flush with grade.
- D. Install floor cleanouts at elevation to accommodate finished floor.
- E. Install approved portable water protection devices on plumbing lines where contamination of domestic water may occur.
- F. Pipe relief from backflow preventer to nearest drain.
- G. Install water hammer arrestors on cold water supply piping to flush valve or solenoid operated fixtures.
- H. Install cleanouts at locations required by the International Plumbing Code (IPC), whether or not specifically indicated on the drawings. Such locations include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Base of waste or soil stacks.
  - 2. Junction of building drain and building sewer (utilize 2-way cleanout at this location).

END OF SECTION 221006



SECTION 223000  
PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Residential gas-fired water heaters.
- B. Residential electric water heaters.
- C. Water Heaters:
- D. Diaphragm-type compression tanks.
- E. Water heaters.
- F. Pumps.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 90.1 - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings; 2013, Including All Addenda.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASME BPVC-VIII-1 - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1 - Rules for Construction of Pressure Vessels; The American Society of Mechanical Engineers; 2013.
- B. ICC (IPC) - International Plumbing Code; 2012.
- C. UL 174 - Standard for Household Electric Storage Tank Water Heaters; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 778 - Standard for Motor-Operated Water Pumps; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 1453 - Standard for Electric Booster and Commercial Storage Tank Water Heaters; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Provide dimension drawings of water heaters indicating components and connections to other equipment and piping.
  - 2. Indicate pump type, capacity, power requirements.
  - 3. Provide certified pump curves showing pump performance characteristics with pump and system operating point plotted. Include NPSH curve when applicable.
  - 4. Provide electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate dimensions of tanks, tank lining methods, anchors, attachments, lifting points, tappings, and drains.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of components.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include operation, maintenance, and inspection data, replacement part numbers and availability, and service depot location and telephone number.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.
- B. Identification: Provide pumps with manufacturer's name, model number, and rating/capacity identified by permanently attached label.

- C. Performance: Ensure pumps operate at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.

#### 1.6 CERTIFICATIONS

- A. Water Heaters: NSF approved.
- B. Electric Water Heaters: UL listed and labeled to UL 174 or UL 1453.
- C. Products Requiring Electrical Connection: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc., as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Provide temporary inlet and outlet caps. Maintain caps in place until installation.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for domestic water heaters.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WATER HEATERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. A.O. Smith Water Products Co: [www.hotwater.com/#sle](http://www.hotwater.com/#sle).
  - 2. Bradford White Corporation: [www.bradfordwhite.com/#sle](http://www.bradfordwhite.com/#sle).
  - 3. Rheem Manufacturing Company: [www.rheem.com/#sle](http://www.rheem.com/#sle).
- B. Gas-Fired Water Heaters:
  - 1. Type: Automatic, natural gas-fired, vertical storage.
  - 2. Minimum Efficiency Required: ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P.
  - 3. Performance: On drawings
  - 4. Tank: Glass lined welded steel with single flue passage, flue baffle and draft hood; thermally insulated and encased in corrosion-resistant steel jacket; baked-on enamel finish; floor shield and legs.
  - 5. Controls: Automatic water thermostat and built-in gas pressure regulator; temperature range adjustable from 120 to 170 degrees F, cast iron or sheet metal burner, safety pilot and thermocouple.
  - 6. Accessories:
    - a. Water Connections: Brass.
    - b. Dip Tube: Brass.
    - c. Drain valve.
    - d. Anode: Magnesium.
- C. Electric Water Heaters:
  - 1. Type: Automatic, electric, vertical storage.
  - 2. Minimum Efficiency Required: ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P.
  - 3. Performance: On drawings
  - 4. Electrical Characteristics: On drawings
  - 5. Tank: Glass lined welded steel, thermally insulated with one inch thick glass fiber; encased in corrosion-resistant steel jacket; baked-on enamel finish.
  - 6. Controls: Automatic water thermostat with externally adjustable temperature range from 120 to 170 degrees F, flanged or screw-in nichrome elements, enclosed controls and electrical junction box and operating light. Wire double element units so elements do not operate simultaneously.
  - 7. Accessories:
    - a. Water Connections: Brass.
    - b. Dip Tube: Brass.
    - c. Drain valve.
    - d. Anode: Magnesium.
    - e. Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve: ASME labeled.

## 2.2 DIAPHRAGM-TYPE COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Amtrol Inc: [www.amtrol.com/#sle](http://www.amtrol.com/#sle).
  - 2. ITT Bell & Gossett: [www.bellgossett.com](http://www.bellgossett.com).
  - 3. Taco, Inc: [www.taco-hvac.com](http://www.taco-hvac.com).
- B. Construction: Welded steel, tested and stamped in accordance with ASME BPVC-VIII-1; supplied with National Board Form U-1, rated for working pressure of 125 psig, with flexible EPDM diaphragm sealed into tank, and steel legs or saddles.
- C. Accessories: Pressure gage and air-charging fitting, tank drain; precharge to 12 psig.

## 2.3 IN-LINE CIRCULATOR PUMPS

- A. Casing: Bronze, rated for 125 psig working pressure, with stainless steel rotor assembly.
- B. Impeller: Bronze.
- C. Shaft: Alloy steel with integral thrust collar and two oil lubricated bronze sleeve bearings.
- D. Seal: Carbon rotating against a stationary ceramic seat.
- E. Drive: Flexible coupling.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plumbing equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, as required by code, and complying with conditions of certification, if any.
- B. Electrical Work: Provide automatic control and protective devices with associated wiring to interconnect related interfaced devices required for specified operation.
- C. Coordinate with plumbing piping and related fuel piping work to achieve operating system.
- D. Pumps:
  - 1. Provide line sized isolating valve and strainer on suction and line sized soft seated check valve and balancing valve on discharge.
  - 2. Decrease from line size with long radius reducing elbows or reducers. Support piping adjacent to pump such that no weight is carried on pump casings. Provide supports under elbows on pump suction and discharge line sizes 4 inches and over.
  - 3. Ensure pumps operate at specified system fluid temperatures without vapor binding and cavitation, are non-overloading in parallel or individual operation, and operate within 25 percent of midpoint of published maximum efficiency curve.

END OF SECTION 223000



SECTION 224000  
PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fixtures

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 221005 - Plumbing Piping.
- B. Section 221006 - Plumbing Piping Specialties.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 18 - Methods of Testing for Rating Drinking-Water Coolers with Self-Contained Mechanical Refrigeration; 2008.
- B. ASME A112.6.1M - Supports for Off-the-Floor Plumbing Fixtures for Public Use; 1997 (Reaffirmed 2002).
- C. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings; 2012.
- D. ASME A112.19.2 - Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures; 2013.
- E. ASME A112.19.3 - Stainless Steel Plumbing Fixtures (Designed for Residential Use); 2008 (R2013).
- F. ASME A112.19.5 - Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks; 2011.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog illustrations of fixtures, sizes, rough-in dimensions, utility sizes, trim, and finishes.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation methods and procedures.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include fixture trim exploded view and replacement parts lists.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Faucet Washers: Two sets of each type and size.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept fixtures on site in factory packaging. Inspect for damage.
- B. Protect installed fixtures from damage by securing areas and by leaving factory packaging in place to protect fixtures and prevent use.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for electric water cooler.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FIXTURES

- A. Scheduled on drawings
- B. Substitutions permitted, provided products are functionally and materially equivalent to those scheduled. Substitutions must be approved by Engineer.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that walls and floor finishes are prepared and ready for installation of fixtures.
- B. Verify that electric power is available and of the correct characteristics.

- C. Confirm that millwork is constructed with adequate provision for the installation of counter top lavatories and sinks.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Rough-in fixture piping connections in accordance with minimum sizes indicated in fixture rough-in schedule for particular fixtures.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION
- A. Install each fixture with trap, easily removable for servicing and cleaning.
  - B. Provide chrome plated rigid or flexible supplies to fixtures with loose key stops, reducers, and escutcheons.
  - C. Install components level and plumb.
  - D. Install and secure fixtures in place with wall supports and bolts.
  - E. Seal fixtures to wall and floor surfaces with sealant, color to match fixture.
- 3.4 INTERFACE WITH WORK OF OTHER SECTIONS
- A. Review millwork shop drawings. Confirm location and size of fixtures and openings before rough-in and installation.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust stops or valves for intended water flow rate to fixtures without splashing, noise, or overflow.
- 3.6 CLEANING
- A. Clean plumbing fixtures and equipment.
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed products from damage due to subsequent construction operations.
  - B. Do not permit use of fixtures by construction personnel.
  - C. Repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.
- 3.8 SCHEDULES
- A. On Drawings

END OF SECTION 224000

SECTION 230001  
MECHANICAL DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Mechanical demolition.

PART 2 PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to submitting bid, visit site and become familiar with scope of demolition work required to accommodate new work.
- B. Refer to Architectural Drawings for additional clarification of scope of demolition and new work.
- C. Verify that abandoned equipment and associated mechanical installation serve only abandoned facilities.
- D. Should the contractor encounter any existing conditions related to the project area that prevent the work from being performed as indicated or described, contact the Architect immediately.
- E. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
- F. Beginning of demolition means installer accepts existing conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove ductwork, piping, controls, and all other mechanical installation from entire building.

3.3 DEMOLITION OF EXISTING MECHANICAL WORK

- A. Remove existing installations in their entirety.
- B. Remove abandoned equipment, controls, air devices, ductwork, piping, fixtures, and other mechanical installation. Piping and ductwork to be removed to source of supply.
- C. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.

END OF SECTION 230001





SECTION 230593  
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Testing, adjustment, and balancing of air systems.
- B. Measurement of final operating condition of HVAC systems.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AABC MN-1 - AABC National Standards for Total System Balance; Associated Air Balance Council; 2002.
- B. NEBB (TAB) - Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental Systems; 2005, Seventh Edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Qualifications: Submit name of adjusting and balancing agency and TAB supervisor for approval within 30 days after award of Contract.
- C. Final Report: Indicate deficiencies in systems that would prevent proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment to achieve specified performance.
  - 1. Submit to the Construction Manager within two weeks after completion of testing, adjusting, and balancing.
  - 2. Revise TAB plan to reflect actual procedures and submit as part of final report.
  - 3. Provide reports in soft cover, letter size, 3-ring binder manuals, complete with index page and indexing tabs, with cover identification at front and side. Include set of reduced drawings with air outlets and equipment identified to correspond with data sheets, and indicating thermostat locations.
  - 4. Include actual instrument list, with manufacturer name, serial number, and date of calibration.
  - 5. Form of Test Reports: Where the TAB standard being followed recommends a report format use that; otherwise, follow ASHRAE Std 111.
  - 6. Units of Measure: Report data in I-P (inch-pound) units only.
  - 7. Include the following on the title page of each report:
    - a. Name of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - b. Address of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - c. Telephone number of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - d. Project name.
    - e. Project location.
    - f. Report date.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of flow measuring stations and balancing valves and rough setting.

PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Perform total system balance in accordance with one of the following:
  - 1. AABC MN-1, AABC National Standards for Total System Balance.
  - 2. ASHRAE Std 111, Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration Systems.
  - 3. NEBB Procedural Standards for Testing Adjusting Balancing of Environmental Systems.
- B. Begin work after completion of systems to be tested, adjusted, or balanced and complete work prior to Substantial Completion of the project.

- C. Where HVAC systems and/or components interface with life safety systems, including fire and smoke detection, alarm, and control, coordinate scheduling and testing and inspection procedures with the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. TAB Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Company specializing in the testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems specified in this section.
  - 2. Having minimum of three years documented experience.
  - 3. Certified by one of the following:
    - a. AABC, Associated Air Balance Council: [www.aabchq.com](http://www.aabchq.com); upon completion submit AABC National Performance Guaranty.
    - b. NEBB, National Environmental Balancing Bureau: [www.nebb.org/#sle](http://www.nebb.org/#sle).
- E. TAB Supervisor Qualifications: Professional Engineer licensed in Oklahoma.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that systems are complete and operable before commencing work. Ensure the following conditions:
  - 1. Systems are started and operating in a safe and normal condition.
  - 2. Temperature control systems are installed complete and operable.
  - 3. Proper thermal overload protection is in place for electrical equipment.
  - 4. Final filters are clean and in place. If required, install temporary media in addition to final filters.
  - 5. Duct systems are clean of debris.
  - 6. Fans are rotating correctly.
  - 7. Fire and volume dampers are in place and open.
  - 8. Air coil fins are cleaned and combed.
  - 9. Access doors are closed and duct end caps are in place.
  - 10. Air outlets are installed and connected.
  - 11. Duct system leakage is minimized.
- B. Submit field reports. Report defects and deficiencies that will or could prevent proper system balance.
- C. Beginning of work means acceptance of existing conditions.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Hold a pre-balancing meeting at least one week prior to starting TAB work.
  - 1. Require attendance by all installers whose work will be tested, adjusted, or balanced.
- B. Provide instruments required for testing, adjusting, and balancing operations. Make instruments available to Architect to facilitate spot checks during testing.
- C. Provide additional balancing devices as required.

### 3.4 ADJUSTMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Air Handling Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design for supply systems and plus or minus 10 percent of design for return and exhaust systems.
- B. Air Outlets and Inlets: Adjust total to within plus 10 percent and minus 10 percent of design to space. Adjust outlets and inlets in space to within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

### 3.5 RECORDING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Field Logs: Maintain written logs including:
  - 1. Running log of events and issues.
  - 2. Discrepancies, deficient or uncompleted work by others.
  - 3. Contract interpretation requests.
  - 4. Lists of completed tests.
- B. Ensure recorded data represents actual measured or observed conditions.
- C. Permanently mark settings of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices allowing settings to be restored. Set and lock memory stops.

- D. After adjustment, take measurements to verify balance has not been disrupted or that such disruption has been rectified.
- E. Leave systems in proper working order, replacing belt guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes, and restoring thermostats to specified settings.

### 3.6 AIR SYSTEM PROCEDURE

- A. Adjust air handling and distribution systems to provide required or design supply, return, and exhaust air quantities .
- B. Make air quantity measurements in ducts by Pitot tube traverse of entire cross sectional area of duct.
- C. Measure air quantities at air inlets and outlets.
- D. Adjust distribution system to obtain uniform space temperatures free from objectionable drafts and noise.
- E. Use volume control devices to regulate air quantities only to extent that adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels. Effect volume control by duct internal devices such as dampers and splitters.
- F. Vary total system air quantities by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes required. Vary branch air quantities by damper regulation.
- G. Provide system schematic with required and actual air quantities recorded at each outlet or inlet.
- H. Measure static air pressure conditions on air supply units, including filter and coil pressure drops, and total pressure across the fan. Make allowances for 50 percent loading of filters.
- I. Adjust outside air automatic dampers, outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers for design conditions.
- J. Measure temperature conditions across outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers to check leakage.
- K. Where modulating dampers are provided, take measurements and balance at extreme conditions.

### 3.7 SCOPE

- A. Test, adjust, and balance the following:
  - 1. Air Handling Units
  - 2. Fans
  - 3. Air Inlets and Outlets
  - 4. Energy Recovery Ventilators

### 3.8 MINIMUM DATA TO BE REPORTED

- A. Electric Motors:
  - 1. Manufacturer
  - 2. Model/Frame
  - 3. HP/BHP
  - 4. Phase, voltage, amperage; nameplate, actual, no load
  - 5. RPM
  - 6. Service factor
  - 7. Starter size, rating, heater elements
  - 8. Sheave Make/Size/Bore
- B. V-Belt Drives:
  - 1. Identification/location
  - 2. Required driven RPM
  - 3. Driven sheave, diameter and RPM
  - 4. Belt, size and quantity
  - 5. Motor sheave diameter and RPM
  - 6. Center to center distance, maximum, minimum, and actual
- C. Air Cooled Condensers:
  - 1. Location
  - 2. Manufacturer

3. Model number
- D. Electric Duct Heaters:
  1. Manufacturer
  2. Identification/number
  3. Location
  4. Design kW
  5. Number of stages
  6. Phase, voltage, amperage
  7. Test voltage (each phase)
  8. Test amperage (each phase)
  9. Air flow, specified and actual
  10. Temperature rise, specified and actual
- E. Air Moving Equipment:
  1. Location
  2. Manufacturer
  3. Model number
  4. Air flow, specified and actual
  5. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual
- F. Exhaust Fans:
  1. Location
  2. Manufacturer
  3. Model number
  4. Air flow, specified and actual
  5. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual
- G. Air Distribution Tests:
  1. Room number/location
  2. Terminal type
  3. Design air flow
  4. Test (final) air flow
  5. Percent of design air flow

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713  
DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Duct insulation.
- B. Duct Liner.
- C. Weather barrier coatings.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C518 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus; 2010.
- B. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2014.
- C. ASTM C553 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Blanket Thermal Insulation for Commercial and Industrial Applications; 2013.
- D. ASTM C916 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Duct Thermal Insulation; 2014.
- E. ASTM C1338 - Standard Test Method for Determining Fungi Resistance of Insulation Materials and Facings; 2014.
- F. ASTM C1371 - Standard Test Method for Determination of Emittance of Materials Near Room Temperature Using Portable Emisometers; 2015.
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- H. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2014.
- I. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015.
- J. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- K. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2005.
- L. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation procedures necessary to ensure acceptable workmanship and that installation standards will be achieved.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing products of the type specified in this section with not less than three years of documented experience.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section, with minimum three years of experience and approved by manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Accept materials on site in original factory packaging, labelled with manufacturer's identification, including product density and thickness.
- B. Protect insulation from weather and construction traffic, dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage, by storing in original wrapping.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.
- B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.

### 2.2 GLASS FIBER, FLEXIBLE

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Knauf Insulation: [www.knaufusa.com](http://www.knaufusa.com).
  - 2. Johns Manville Corporation: [www.jm.com/#sle](http://www.jm.com/#sle).
  - 3. Owens Corning Corp: [www.owenscorning.com/#sle](http://www.owenscorning.com/#sle).
  - 4. CertainTeed Corporation; : [www.certainteed.com/#sle](http://www.certainteed.com/#sle).
- B. Insulation: ASTM C553; flexible, noncombustible blanket.
  - 1. 'K' value: 0.25 at 75 degrees F, when tested in accordance with ASTM C518.
  - 2. Maximum Water Vapor Sorption: 5.0 percent by weight.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket:
  - 1. Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film.
  - 2. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.02 perm inch, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
  - 3. Secure with pressure sensitive tape.
- D. Vapor Barrier Tape:
  - 1. Kraft paper reinforced with glass fiber yarn and bonded to aluminized film, with pressure sensitive rubber based adhesive.

### 2.3 JACKETING AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Flexible Weather-Proofing Outdoor Jacket: Self-healing, field-applied outdoor cladding.
  - 1. Material: Aluminum foil/polymer laminate with rubberized asphalt layer and acrylic adhesive.
  - 2. Thickness: 34 mil, 0.034 inch.
  - 3. Finish: Embossed.
  - 4. Color: Silver.
  - 5. Water Vapor Transmission: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
  - 6. Mold Resistance: Pass when tested in accordance with ASTM C1338.
  - 7. Emissivity: 0.30 when tested in accordance with ASTM C1371.

### 2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Armacell LLC; AP Coilflex: [www.armacell.us/#sle](http://www.armacell.us/#sle).
- B. Elastomeric Foam Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1, in sheet form.
  - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 180 degrees F.
  - 3. Fungal Resistance: No growth when tested according to ASTM G21.
  - 4. Apparent Thermal Conductivity: Maximum of 0.28 at 75 degrees F.
  - 5. Minimum Noise Reduction Coefficients:
    - a. 1/2 inch Thickness: 0.30.
    - b. 1 inch Thickness: 0.40.
  - 6. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.

- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation. Comply with ASTM C916.
- D. Liner Fasteners: Galvanized steel, self-adhesive pad, impact applied, or welded with integral or press-on head.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that ducts have been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean, foreign material removed, and dry.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Insulated ducts:
  - 1. Provide insulation with vapor barrier jackets.
  - 2. Finish with tape and vapor barrier jacket.
  - 3. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, hangers, and other duct penetrations.
  - 4. Insulate entire system including fittings, joints, flanges, fire dampers, flexible connections, and expansion joints.
- C. External Duct Insulation Application:
  - 1. Secure insulation with vapor barrier with wires and seal jacket joints with vapor barrier adhesive or tape to match jacket.
  - 2. Secure insulation without vapor barrier with staples, tape, or wires.
  - 3. Install without sag on underside of duct. Use adhesive or mechanical fasteners where necessary to prevent sagging. Lift duct off trapeze hangers and insert spacers.
  - 4. Seal vapor barrier penetrations by mechanical fasteners with vapor barrier adhesive.
  - 5. Stop and point insulation around access doors and damper operators to allow operation without disturbing wrapping.
- D. Duct and Plenum Liner Application:
  - 1. Adhere insulation with adhesive for 90 percent coverage.
  - 2. Secure insulation with mechanical liner fasteners. Refer to SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards for spacing.
  - 3. Seal and smooth joints. Seal and coat transverse joints.
  - 4. Seal liner surface penetrations with adhesive.
  - 5. Duct dimensions indicated are net inside dimensions required for air flow. Increase duct size to allow for insulation thickness.

#### 3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Ductwork located in basement: Flexible glass fiber duct insulation, 1-1/2" thick.
- B. Outside Air Intake Ducts: Flexible glass fiber duct insulation, 1-1/2" thick.
- C. Supply ducts from space heating and cooling equipment: Flexible glass fiber duct insulation, 1-1/2" thick.
  - 1. Omit duct wrap on fresh air and exhaust ducts connected to ERV.
  - 2. Omit duct wrap on exposed spiral ductwork.
- D. Supply and return ducts within 5' of energy recovery ventilators and blower coil equipment: Elastomeric Duct Liner, 1/2" thick.

END OF SECTION 230713





SECTION 230719  
HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Jackets and accessories.
- C. Engineered wall outlet seals and refrigerant piping insulation protection.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2014.
- B. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- C. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials; 2014.
- D. NFPA 255 - Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; National Fire Protection Association; 2006.
- E. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL PRODUCTS OF THIS SECTION

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, NFPA 255, or UL 723.

2.2 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Armacell LLC: [www.armacell.us/#sle](http://www.armacell.us/#sle).
- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534 Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
  - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: -40 degrees F.
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F.
  - 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.

2.3 JACKETS

- A. PVC Plastic.
  - 1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
    - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F.
    - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F.
    - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - d. Thickness: 10 mil.
    - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.

2.4 ENGINEERED WALL OUTLET SEALS AND REFRIGERANT PIPING INSULATION PROTECTION

- A. Basis of Design: Airex Manufacturing, Inc; [www.airexmfg.com/#sle](http://www.airexmfg.com/#sle).
  - 1. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Airex Titan Outlet.
  - 2. Refrigeration Pipe Insulation Protection System: Airex E-Flex Guard.
  - 3. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal and Insulation Protection System: Airex Pro-System Kit.

- B. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Seals HVAC piping wall penetrations with compression gasket wall mounted rigid plastic outlet cover.
  - 1. Outlet Cover Color: Gray.
- C. Insulation Protection System: Refrigerant piping insulation PVC protective cover.
  - 1. PVC Insulation Cover Color: Black with full-length velcro fastener.
  - 2. Flame Spread and Smoke Development Rating of 24/450: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- C. Inserts and Shields:
  - 1. Application: Piping 1-1/2 inches diameter or larger.
  - 2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
  - 3. Insert location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
  - 4. Insert Configuration: Minimum 6 inches long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
  - 5. Insert Material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.
- D. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, refer to "Firestopping" Section.
- E. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces (less than 10 feet above finished floor): Finish with canvas jacket sized for finish painting.
- F. Exterior Applications: Provide PVC jacket.

### 3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. Cooling Systems:
  - 1. Condensate Drains from Cooling Coils: 1/2" Flexible Elastomeric
  - 2. Refrigerant Suction: 1" Flexible Elastomeric
  - 3. Refrigerant Liquid/hot gas: Per system manufacturer's recommendations

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 232100  
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Grout.
  - 4. Escutcheons.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
  - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- B. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed or exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in other sections.
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in other sections.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheon Schedule:
    - a. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
    - b. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

END OF SECTION 232100

SECTION 232300  
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Piping.
- B. Refrigerant.
- C. Moisture and liquid indicators.
- D. Valves.
- E. Strainers.
- F. Check valves.
- G. Filter-driers.
- H. Engineered wall seals and insulation protection.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 710 - Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Driers; 2009.
- B. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; 2013.
- C. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2013.
- D. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components; 2013.
- E. ASTM B280 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service; 2013.
- F. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2011-AMD 1.
- G. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2009.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Where more than one piping system material is specified ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure the integrity of the system is not jeopardized. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.
- B. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with 1 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Refrigerant Charging (Packed Angle) Valve: Use in liquid line between receiver shut-off valve and expansion valve.
- D. Strainers:
  - 1. Use line size strainer upstream of each automatic valve.
- E. Filter-Driers:
  - 1. Use a filter-drier immediately ahead of liquid-line controls, such as thermostatic expansion valves, solenoid valves, and moisture indicators.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store piping and specialties in shipping containers with labeling in place.
- B. Protect piping and specialties from entry of contaminating material by leaving end caps and plugs in place until installation.
- C. Dehydrate and charge components such as piping and receivers, seal prior to shipment, until connected into system.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, H58 hard drawn or O60 soft annealed.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.22 wrought copper.
  - 2. Joints: Braze, AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy.
- B. Pipe Supports and Anchors:
  - 1. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.
    - a. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
  - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 Inches and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  - 3. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
  - 4. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 Inches: Cast iron hook.
  - 5. Vertical Support: Steel riser clamp.
  - 6. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.
  - 7. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded.
  - 8. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods.

### 2.2 MOISTURE AND LIQUID INDICATORS

- A. Indicators: Single port type, UL listed, with copper or brass body, flared or solder ends, sight glass, color coded paper moisture indicator with removable element cartridge and plastic cap; for maximum temperature of 200 degrees F and maximum working pressure of 500 psi.

### 2.3 VALVES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
  - 1. UL listed, globe or angle pattern, forged brass body and bonnet, phosphor bronze and stainless steel diaphragms, rising stem and handwheel, stainless steel spring, nylon seat disc, solder or flared ends, with positive backseating; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.
- B. Packed Angle Valves:
  - 1. Forged brass or nickel plated forged steel, forged brass seal caps with copper gasket, rising stem and seat with backseating, molded stem packing, solder or flared ends; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 275 degrees F.
- C. Ball Valves:
  - 1. Two piece bolted forged brass body with teflon ball seals and copper tube extensions, brass bonnet and seal cap, chrome plated ball, stem with neoprene ring stem seals; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 300 degrees F.
- D. Service Valves:
  - 1. Forged brass body with copper stubs, brass caps, removable valve core, integral ball check valve, flared or solder ends, for maximum pressure of 500 psi.

### 2.4 STRAINERS

- A. Straight Line or Angle Line Type:
  - 1. Brass or steel shell, steel cap and flange, and replaceable cartridge, with screen of stainless steel wire or monel reinforced with brass; for maximum working pressure of 430 psi.

### 2.5 CHECK VALVES

- A. Straight Through Type:
  - 1. Brass body and disc, phosphor-bronze or stainless steel spring, neoprene seat; for maximum working pressure of 500 psi and maximum temperature of 200 degrees F.

## 2.6 FILTER-DRIERS

- A. Performance:
  - 1. Flow Capacity - Liquid Line: \_\_\_\_ ton, minimum, rated in accordance with AHRI 710.
  - 2. Pressure Drop: 2 psi, maximum, when operating at full connected evaporator capacity.
  - 3. Design Working Pressure: 350 psi, minimum.
- B. Cores: Molded or loose-fill molecular sieve desiccant compatible with refrigerant, activated alumina, activated charcoal, and filtration to 40 microns, with secondary filtration to 20 microns; of construction that will not pass into refrigerant lines.
- C. Construction: UL listed.
  - 1. Connections: As specified for applicable pipe type.

## 2.7 ENGINEERED WALL SEALS AND INSULATION PROTECTION

- A. Basis of Design: Airex Manufacturing, Inc; [www.airexmfg.com/#sle](http://www.airexmfg.com/#sle).
  - 1. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Airex Titan Outlet.
  - 2. Refrigeration Pipe Insulation Protection System: Airex E-Flex Guard.
  - 3. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal and Insulation Protection System: Airex Pro-System Kit.
- B. Pipe Penetration Wall Seal: Seals HVAC piping wall penetrations with compression gasket wall mounted rigid plastic outlet cover.
  - 1. Outlet Cover Color: Gray.
- C. Insulation Protection System: Mechanical line insulation and PVC cover.
  - 1. PVC Insulation Cover Color: Black with full-length velcro fastener.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install refrigeration specialties in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Route piping in orderly manner, with plumbing parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- C. Install piping to conserve building space and avoid interference with use of space.
- D. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.
- E. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.5.
  - 2. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.
  - 3. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.
  - 4. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
  - 5. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
- F. Arrange piping to return oil to compressor. Provide traps and loops in piping, and provide double risers as required. Slope horizontal piping 0.40 percent in direction of flow.
- G. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- H. Provide access to concealed valves and fittings.
- I. Flood piping system with nitrogen when brazing.
- J. Insulate piping and equipment; refer to Section 23 07 19.
- K. Follow ASHRAE Std 15 procedures for charging and purging of systems and for disposal of refrigerant.
- L. Provide replaceable cartridge filter-driers, with isolation valves and valved bypass.
- M. Locate expansion valve sensing bulb immediately downstream of evaporator on suction line.
- N. Provide external equalizer piping on expansion valves with refrigerant distributor connected to evaporator.
- O. Fully charge completed system with refrigerant after testing.

### 3.2 SCHEDULES

#### A. Hanger Spacing for Copper Tubing.

1. 1/2 inch, 5/8 inch, and 7/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
2. 1-1/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
3. 1-3/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. 1-5/8 inch OD: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

END OF SECTION 232300



SECTION 233100  
HVAC DUCTS AND CASINGS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ducts for kitchen exhaust applications.
- B. Metal ductwork.
- C. Duct cleaning.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 230713 - Duct Insulation: External insulation and duct liner.
- B. Section 233300 - Air Duct Accessories.
- C. Section 230593 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE (FUND) - ASHRAE Handbook - Fundamentals; 2013.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2015.
- C. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2015a.
- D. ASTM E814 - Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Through-Penetration Fire Stops; 2013a.
- E. ASTM E2336 - Standard Test Methods for Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Systems; 2020.
- F. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2014.
- G. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2005.
- H. SMACNA (KVS) - Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines; 2001.
- I. UL 1479 - Standard for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 1978 - Grease Ducts; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 2221 - Tests of Fire Resistive Grease Duct Enclosure Assemblies; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. No variation of duct configuration or sizes permitted except by written permission. Size round ducts installed in place of rectangular ducts in accordance with ASHRAE table of equivalent rectangular and round ducts.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of ducts and duct fittings. Record changes in fitting location and type. Show additional fittings used.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install duct sealants when temperatures are less than those recommended by sealant manufacturers.
- B. Maintain temperatures within acceptable range during and after installation of duct sealants.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DUCT ASSEMBLIES

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Steel for Ducts: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M FS Type B, with G60/Z180 coating.
- B. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.
  - 1. Type: Heavy mastic or liquid used alone or with tape, suitable for joint configuration and compatible with substrates, and recommended by manufacturer for pressure class of ducts.
  - 2. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread of zero, smoke developed of zero, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- C. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.

### 2.3 DUCTWORK FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and support in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards and as indicated.
- B. No variation of duct configuration or size permitted except by written permission.
- C. Provide duct material, gages, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.
- D. Construct T's, bends, and elbows with radius of not less than 1-1/2 times width of duct on centerline. Where not possible and where rectangular elbows must be used, provide air foil turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation.
- E. Provide turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation when acoustical lining is indicated.
- F. Provide air foil turning vanes when rectangular elbows must be used.
- G. Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 30 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.
- H. Fabricate continuously welded round and oval duct fittings in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.
- I. Provide standard 45 degree lateral wye takeoffs unless otherwise indicated where 90 degree conical tee connections may be used.
- J. Where ducts are connected to exterior wall louvers and duct outlet is smaller than louver frame, provide blank-out panels sealing louver area around duct. Use same material as duct, painted black on exterior side; seal to louver frame and duct.

### 2.4 MANUFACTURED DUCTWORK AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacture in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible, and as indicated. Provide duct material, gages, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.
- B. Spiral Ducts: Machine made from round spiral lockseam duct, steel with mill phosphatized finish.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Wesco
    - b. Wichita Sheet Metal.
- C. Double Wall Insulated Spiral Ducts: Machine made from round spiral lockseam duct, steel outer wall with mill phosphatized finish or PVC coating, 1 inch thick fiberglass insulation, perforated galvanized steel inner wall; fittings manufactured with solid inner wall.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Wesco
    - b. Wichita Sheet Metal.
- D. Transverse Duct Connection System: SMACNA "E" rated rigidly class connection, interlocking angle and duct edge connection system with sealant, gasket, cleats, and corner clips.
  - 1. Manufacturers:

- E. Kitchen Cooking Hood and Grease Exhaust: Nominal 3 inches thick ceramic fiber insulation between 20 gage, 0.0375 inch, Type 304 stainless steel liner and 24 gage, 0.0239 inch aluminized steel sheet outer jacket.
  - 1. Certified for zero clearance to combustible material in accordance with:
  - 2. Materials and construction of the modular sections and accessories to be in accordance with the terms of the following listings:
  - 3. Manufacturers:

## 2.5 DUCTS FOR KITCHEN EXHAUST APPLICATIONS

- A. Provide ductwork, fittings, and appurtenances in accordance with NFPA 96, SMACNA (KVS), UL 1978, and UL 2221 requirements and guidelines.
- B. Class 1 duct for air with gas and grease particle exhaust at an air velocity of 1,500 to 2,500 fpm.
- C. Where ducts are not self-draining back to equipment, provide low-point drain pocket with the copper drain pipe to a sanitary sewer.
- D. Design, fabricate, and install liquidtight preventing exhaust leakage into building.
- E. Kitchen Hood and Grease Exhaust Duct:
  - 1. Fabricate in accordance with ductwork manufacturer's instructions, SMACNA (DCS), SMACNA (KVS), and NFPA 96.
  - 2. Zero Clearance, 2-Hour Fire-Rated, Round, Double-Wall, Premanufactured Grease Duct:
    - a. UL Listed and labeled to UL 1978 and UL 2221.
    - b. Nominal 3 inches thick, high density body soluble fiber insulation between 20-gauge, 0.035-inch Type 304 stainless steel liner, and 24-gauge, 0.0239-inch aluminized steel sheet outer jacket.
    - c. Seal joints during installation with factory-supplied overlapping V-bands and sealant.
    - d. Through-penetration firestop listed to UL 1479 or ASTM E814.
    - e. Minimum horizontal slope of 1/16 inch per foot per manufacturers listing to UL 1978.
  - 3. Grease Exhaust Duct Access Doors:
    - a. Listed when tested in accordance with UL 1978.
    - b. Provide with preinsulated door to comply with ASTM E2336.
    - c. Install hinged access doors where indicated or required for access for cleaning and inspection of duct.
    - d. Reinforce door frames with steel angles tied to horizontal and vertical plenum supporting angles.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install, support, and seal ducts in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards.
- B. Spiral ductwork in exposed locations shall be installed with aircraft cable and manufactured cam type hangers.
- C. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.
- E. Kitchen Hood Exhaust: Provide residue traps at the base of vertical risers with provisions for the cleanout.
- F. Duct sizes indicated are inside clear dimensions. For lined ducts, maintain sizes inside lining.
- G. Install and seal metal and flexible ducts in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible.
- H. Provide openings in ductwork where required to accommodate thermometers and controllers. Provide pilot tube openings where required for testing of systems, complete with metal can with spring device or

screw to ensure against air leakage. Where openings are provided in insulated ductwork, install insulation material inside a metal ring.

- I. Locate ducts with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities.
- J. Use crimp joints with or without bead for joining round duct sizes 8 inch and smaller with crimp in direction of air flow.
- K. Use double nuts and lock washers on threaded rod supports.
- L. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands plus sheet metal screws and adhesive. Use a maximum of 5' of flexible duct, at final connection to diffusers only, free of kinks. Do not install above inaccessible ceilings. Do not use flexible ductwork in exposed areas.
- M. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.
- N. At exterior wall louvers, seal duct to louver frame and install blank-out panels.

### 3.2 CLEANING

- A. Clean duct system and force air at high velocity through duct to remove accumulated dust. To obtain sufficient air, clean half the system at a time. Protect equipment that could be harmed by excessive dirt with temporary filters, or bypass during cleaning.

### 3.3 SCHEDULES

- A. Ductwork Material:
  - 1. Low Pressure Supply (Heating Systems): Steel.
  - 2. Low Pressure Supply (System with Cooling Coils): Steel.
  - 3. Return and Relief: Steel.
  - 4. General Exhaust: Steel.
  - 5. Outside Air Intake: Steel.
- B. Ductwork Pressure Class:
  - 1. Supply (System with Cooling Coils): 1 inch.
  - 2. Return and Relief: 1 inch.
  - 3. General Exhaust: 1/2 inch.
- C. Round ductwork shall be spiral where exposed. Concealed round ductwork may be spiral, double or single wall, or fabricated.
  - 1. Base bid: Exposed ductwork shall be single wall spiral.
  - 2. Alternate bid: Exposed ductwork shall be double wall spiral.

END OF SECTION 233100

SECTION 233300  
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air turning devices/extractors.
- B. Backdraft dampers.
- C. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
- D. Duct access doors.
- E. Duct test holes.
- F. Fire dampers.
- G. Flexible duct connections.
- H. Smoke dampers.
- I. Volume control dampers.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 233100 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2015.
- B. NFPA 92 - Standard for Smoke Control Systems; 2015.
- C. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2014.
- D. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2005.
- E. UL 33 - Safety Heat Responsive Links for Fire-Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 555 - Standard for Fire Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 555S - Standard for Smoke Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide for shop fabricated assemblies including volume control dampers. Include electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate for shop fabricated assemblies including volume control dampers.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Provide instructions for fire dampers.
- E. Project Record Drawings: Record actual locations of access doors and test holes.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect dampers from damage to operating linkages and blades.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR TURNING DEVICES/EXTRACTORS

- A. Multi-blade device with blades aligned in short dimension; steel construction; with individually adjustable blades, mounting straps.

2.2 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Gravity Backdraft Dampers, Size 24 inches or Smaller, Furnished with Air Moving Equipment: Air moving equipment manufacturer's standard construction.

### 2.3 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 90A, UL 555, UL 555S, and as indicated.
- B. Provide factory sleeve and collar for each damper.
- C. Multiple Blade Dampers: Fabricate with 16 gage galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, stainless steel jamb seals, 1/8 x 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock, and 1/2 inch actuator shaft.
- D. Operators: UL listed and labelled spring return electric type suitable for 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz. Locate damper operator on exterior of duct and link to damper operating shaft.

### 2.4 DUCT ACCESS DOORS

- A. Fabrication: Rigid and close-fitting of galvanized steel with sealing gaskets and quick fastening locking devices. For insulated ducts, install minimum 1 inch thick insulation with sheet metal cover.
  - 1. Less Than 12 inches Square: Secure with sash locks.
  - 2. Up to 18 inches Square: Provide two hinges and two sash locks.
  - 3. Up to 24 x 48 inches: Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
  - 4. Larger Sizes: Provide an additional hinge.

### 2.5 DUCT TEST HOLES

- A. Temporary Test Holes: Cut or drill in ducts as required. Cap with neat patches, neoprene plugs, threaded plugs, or threaded or twist-on metal caps.
- B. Permanent Test Holes: Factory fabricated, air tight flanged fittings with screw cap. Provide extended neck fittings to clear insulation.

### 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 90A and UL 555, and as indicated.
- B. Ceiling Dampers: Galvanized steel, 22 gage frame and 16 gage flap, two layers 0.125 inch ceramic fiber on top side and one layer on bottom side for round flaps, with locking clip.
- C. Horizontal Dampers: Galvanized steel, 22 gage frame, stainless steel closure spring, and lightweight, heat retardant non-asbestos fabric blanket.
- D. Curtain Type Dampers: Galvanized steel with interlocking blades. Provide stainless steel closure springs and latches for horizontal installations. Configure with blades out of air stream except for 1.0 inch pressure class ducts up to 12 inches in height.
- E. Multiple Blade Dampers: 16 gage galvanized steel frame and blades, oil-impregnated bronze or stainless steel sleeve bearings and plated steel axles, 1/8 x 1/2 inch plated steel concealed linkage, stainless steel closure spring, blade stops, and lock.
- F. Fusible Links: UL 33, separate at 160 degrees F with adjustable link straps for combination fire/balancing dampers.

### 2.7 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTIONS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards and as indicated.
- B. Flexible Duct Connections: Fabric crimped into metal edging strip.
  - 1. Fabric: UL listed fire-retardant neoprene coated woven glass fiber fabric to NFPA 90A, minimum density 30 oz per sq yd.
    - a. Net Fabric Width: Approximately 2 inches wide.
  - 2. Metal: 3 inches wide, 24 gage thick galvanized steel.
- C. Leaded Vinyl Sheet: Minimum 0.55 inch thick, 0.87 lbs per sq ft, 10 dB attenuation in 10 to 10,000 Hz range.

### 2.8 SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with NFPA 90A and UL 555S, and as indicated.

- B. Dampers: UL Class 1 multiple blade type fire damper, normally closed automatically operated by 120 VAC electric actuator.
- C. Electro Thermal Link: Fusible link melting at 165 degrees F; 120 volts, single phase, 60 Hz; UL listed and labeled.

## 2.9 VOLUME CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards and as indicated.
- B. Splitter Dampers:
  - 1. Material: Same gage as duct to 24 inches size in either direction, and two gages heavier for sizes over 24 inches.
  - 2. Blade: Fabricate of single thickness sheet metal to streamline shape, secured with continuous hinge or rod.
  - 3. Operator: Minimum 1/4 inch diameter rod in self aligning, universal joint action, flanged bushing with set screw .
- C. Single Blade Dampers: Fabricate for duct sizes up to 6 x 30 inch.
- D. Multi-Blade Damper: Fabricate of opposed blade pattern with maximum blade sizes 8 x 72 inch. Assemble center and edge crimped blades in prime coated or galvanized channel frame with suitable hardware.
- E. End Bearings: Except in round ducts 12 inches and smaller, provide end bearings. On multiple blade dampers, provide oil-impregnated nylon or sintered bronze bearings.
- F. Quadrants:
  - 1. Provide locking, indicating quadrant regulators on single and multi-blade dampers.
  - 2. On insulated ducts mount quadrant regulators on stand-off mounting brackets, bases, or adapters.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 90A, and follow SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards. Refer to Section 233100 for duct construction and pressure class.
- B. Provide backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- C. Provide duct access doors for inspection and cleaning before and after filters, coils, fans, automatic dampers, at fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and elsewhere as indicated. Provide for cleaning kitchen exhaust ducts in accordance with NFPA 96. Provide minimum 8 x 8 inch size for hand access, size for shoulder access, and as indicated. Provide 4 x 4 inch for balancing dampers only. Review locations prior to fabrication.
- D. Provide duct access doors for inspection and cleaning before and after filters, coils, fans, automatic dampers, at fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and elsewhere as indicated. Provide minimum 8 x 8 inch size for hand access, 18 x 18 inch size for shoulder access, and as indicated. Provide 4 x 4 inch for balancing dampers only. Review locations prior to fabrication.
- E. Provide duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.
- F. Provide fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and smoke dampers at locations indicated, where ducts and outlets pass through fire rated components, and where required by authorities having jurisdiction. Install with required perimeter mounting angles, sleeves, breakaway duct connections, corrosion resistant springs, bearings, bushings and hinges.
- G. Install smoke dampers and combination smoke and fire dampers in accordance with NFPA 92.
- H. Install smoke damper motors in locations to allow service/replacement without removal of permanent building components.
- I. Demonstrate re-setting of fire dampers to Owner's representative.
- J. At fans and motorized equipment associated with ducts, provide flexible duct connections immediately adjacent to the equipment.

- K. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches are taken from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install minimum 2 duct widths from duct take-off.
- L. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, grilles, and registers, regardless of whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, grille, or register assembly. Omit dampers only where noted on drawings.
- M. Where dampers or other accessories that require adjustment or maintenance are located above hard ceilings, provide access panel in ceiling. Coordinate with G.C.

END OF SECTION 233300



SECTION 233423  
POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Ceiling exhaust fans.
- B. Kitchen hood upblast roof exhausters.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AMCA (DIR) - (Directory of) Products Licensed Under AMCA International Certified Ratings Program; 2015.
- B. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook; 2016.
- C. AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans; 2005.
- D. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating; 2016.
- E. AMCA 300 - Reverberation Room Methods of Sound Testing of Fans; 2024.
- F. AMCA 301 - Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data; 2022.
- G. UL 705 - Power Ventilators; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide data on fans and accessories including fan curves with specified operating point clearly plotted, power, RPM, sound power levels at rated capacity, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate installation instructions.
- C. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for lubrication, motor and drive replacement, spare parts list, and wiring diagrams.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Permanent ventilators may not be used for ventilation during construction.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER VENTILATORS - GENERAL

- A. Static and Dynamically Balanced: AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans.
- B. Performance Ratings: Determined in accordance with AMCA 210 and bearing the AMCA Certified Rating Seal.
- C. Sound Ratings: AMCA 301, tested to AMCA 300 and bearing AMCA Certified Sound Rating Seal.
- D. Fabrication: Conform to AMCA 99.
- E. UL Compliance: UL listed and labeled, designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with UL 705.
- F. Electrical Components: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

2.2 CABINET AND CEILING EXHAUST FANS

- A. Centrifugal Fan Unit: V-belt or direct driven with galvanized steel housing lined with acoustic insulation, resilient mounted motor, gravity backdraft damper in discharge.
- B. Disconnect Switch: Cord and plug in housing for thermal overload protected motor.
- C. Grille: Molded white plastic.

- D. Sheaves: Cast iron or steel, dynamically balanced, bored to fit shafts and keyed; variable and adjustable pitch motor sheaves selected so required rpm is obtained with sheaves set at mid-position; fan shaft with self-aligning pre-lubricated ball bearings.

### 2.3 KITCHEN HOOD UPBLAST ROOF EXHAUSTERS

- A. Provided by kitchen equipment supplier with Type 1 exhaust hood package.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure roof exhausters with cadmium plated steel lag screws to roof curb.
- C. Extend ducts to roof exhausters into roof curb. Counterflash duct to roof opening.
- D. Hung Cabinet Fans:
  - 1. Install fans with resilient mountings and flexible electrical leads. Refer to Section 230548.
  - 2. Install flexible connections specified in Section 233300 between fan and ductwork. Ensure metal bands of connectors are parallel with minimum one inch flex between ductwork and fan while running.
- E. Provide sheaves required for final air balance.
- F. Provide backdraft dampers on outlet from cabinet and ceiling exhauster fans and as indicated.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 233700  
AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Diffusers.
- B. Registers/grilles.
- C. Louvers.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 70 - Method of Testing the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets; 2006 (R2011).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for equipment required for this project. Review outlets and inlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submission. Submit schedule of outlets and inlets showing type, size, location, application, and noise level.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Test and rate air outlet and inlet performance in accordance with ASHRAE Std 70.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Hart & Cooley, Inc: [www.hartandcooley.com](http://www.hartandcooley.com).
- B. Krueger: [www.krueger-hvac.com/#sle](http://www.krueger-hvac.com/#sle).
- C. Price Industries: [www.price-hvac.com/#sle](http://www.price-hvac.com/#sle).
- D. Titus: [www.titus-hvac.com/#sle](http://www.titus-hvac.com/#sle).

2.2 DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

- A. Type and performance are scheduled on the drawings.
- B. Coordinate finish of all devices with Architect.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Check location of outlets and inlets and make necessary adjustments in position to conform with architectural features, symmetry, and lighting arrangement.
- C. Install diffusers to ductwork with air tight connection.
- D. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, and grilles and registers, despite whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, or grille and register assembly. Omit dampers where drawings specifically indicate devices are to be provided without dampers.
- E. Paint ductwork visible behind air outlets and inlets matte black. Coordinate with G.C.

END OF SECTION 233700



SECTION 233813  
COMMERCIAL-KITCHEN HOODS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cooking hoods.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 233100 - HVAC Ducts and Casings: Exhaust and make-up air ducts.
- B. Section 262717 - Equipment Wiring: Connections to building power system.
- C. Section 283100 - Fire Detection and Alarm: Connection of hood fire extinguishing system and fire dampers to building fire alarm system.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- B. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2014.
- C. SMACNA (KVS) - Kitchen Ventilation Systems and Food Service Equipment Fabrication and Installation Guidelines; 2001.
- D. UL 710 - Standard for Exhaust Hoods for Commercial Cooking Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 1046 - Standard for Grease Filters for Exhaust Ducts; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 3. Installation instructions, adjusting and balancing methods.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each custom fabricated unit, provide drawings showing details of construction, dimensions, and interfaces with adjacent construction.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - 1. At least five years experience in the design and manufacture of products of similar type to those specified.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 HOOD CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide products that comply with NFPA 96, the requirements and recommendations of SMACNA (KVS), and the requirements of the Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
- B. Cooking Hoods: Provide Type I hoods, with all external joints and seams continuously welded, liquid-tight, and all internal joints, seams, and attachments sealed liquid-tight and grease-tight.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishing system for all cooking hoods.
  - 2. Provide complete assemblies listed and labeled by UL under UL 710 for its intended use.
- C. Construction: Materials, inside and out, are stainless steel complying with ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher leveled; unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Sheet Thickness: 18 gauge, 0.048 inch, minimum.
  - 2. Fabrication: Fabricate each individual hood in one piece, with all welds ground and finished to match (inside and out); fabricate flat surfaces exposed to view as double-pan formed panels with internal stiffener members.

3. Finish on Surfaces Exposed to View: No.4 (brushed directional); provide stainless steel faces on all sides exposed to view.
  4. Finish on Concealed Surfaces: No.4 or No.2B (dull, matte).
  5. Duct Collars: For exhaust and make-up air openings, provide duct collar welded to hood unit; minimum of 8 inches extension from top or back face of unit, with minimum one inch 90 degree flange, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Access Panels: Provide removable or hinged access panels sufficient for maintenance and replacement of operating components inside unit; maximum width of 40 inches.
  7. Electrical: Run electrical wiring in conduit or raceways, factory pre-wired, with single connection point per hood.
  8. Supports: Stainless steel mounting brackets, struts, and threaded hanger rods.
    - a. Hanger Rods: 3/8 inch diameter, minimum.
    - b. Hanger Spacing: 48 inches on center, maximum.
    - c. Attachment to Structure: Mechanical fittings or inserts, stainless steel.
  9. Accessory Panels: Where indicated, provide filler and closure panels of same construction as hoods, to close spaces between hoods and adjacent construction; mount with panel face flush with face of hood.
    - a. Where top of ceiling hung hood is lower than the finished ceiling, provide panels to close space between top of hood and ceiling.
    - b. Where back of hood must be set away from wall, provide filler panels to close space between hood and wall.
- D. Make-Up Air System: Provide volume damper at inlet, accessible for balancing.
1. Diffusers: Louvered register with opposed blade dampers.
  2. Plenum: Insulated with one inch thick foil-face fiberglass insulation, on inside of plenum.
- E. Fire Dampers: All stainless steel, positive closing with fully-enclosed spring assist.
1. Reset Handle: Reset after actuation by pull handle located not more than 84 inches above finished floor and not requiring removal of access panel.
  2. Fail-safe actuation by fusible link rated at 286 degrees F.
  3. Additional actuation as specified.
  4. Provide fire dampers at exhaust outlets and make-up air inlets.

## 2.2 HOOD ACCESSORIES

- A. Fire Extinguishing Systems:
1. Fire extinguishing system to comply with NFPA 96.
  2. Type: Dry-chemical type.
  3. Exposed Piping Under Hood: Stainless steel or chrome plated.
  4. Exposed Piping Outside Hood: Not permitted.
  5. Nozzles: Stainless steel or chrome plated brass.
  6. Electrical Components: Provide all components required for properly operating system, including but not limited to wiring, raceways, contactors, circuit breakers, switches and solenoids.
  7. Fire Alarm System: Provide connection point for building fire alarm system capable of signaling system readiness and to generate signal when system is actuated.
  8. Manual Actuators: Wall-mounted pull stations; provide one near each hood and one near exit door.
- B. Controls:
1. Fans: Provide manual push button controls for starting and stopping fans and labeled indicator lights showing fan status.
  2. Fans: Provide controls for fan operation by time clock, programmable by the week, capable of maintaining time cycle after operation of manual push buttons.
  3. Cooking Equipment: Provide manual shutoff and reset button located where indicated; combine with fire extinguishing actuation.
  4. Fire Dampers: Provide thermostatic actuation of fire damper at 350 degrees F air temperature in exhaust duct; upon actuation of fire damper, automatically:
    - a. Shut off fans serving that hood.

- b. Shut off fuel source to equipment under hood; actuate solenoid gas valves provided as part of gas piping work.
- c. Shut off electric power to equipment under hood; actuate contactors or switches provided as part of electrical work.
- d. Signal building fire alarm system; normally-open contacts.
- 5. Fire Extinguishing System: Provide automatic actuation complying with NFPA 96; provide local and remote manual actuating stations clearly labeled "Hood Fire Protection"; upon actuation of fire extinguishing system, automatically:
  - a. Shut off fans serving that hood.
  - b. Shut off fuel source to equipment under hood; actuate solenoid gas valves provided as part of gas piping work.
  - c. Shut off electric power to equipment under hood; actuate contactors or switches provided as part of electrical work.
  - d. Signal building fire alarm system; normally-open contacts.
- C. Control Panels: Factory assembled and pre-wired, ready for utility connections.
  - 1. UL listed for use with specific hood.
  - 2. Provide a single control panel combining all control functions for a particular hood, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Provide a single control panel for each group of hoods served by a single exhaust fan.
  - 4. Enclosures: Flush-mounted; stainless steel, to match hood.
  - 5. Provide indicator lights on control panel door showing status of fans and power supply.
- D. Lights Inside Hoods: As scheduled in quantity and locations indicated, in UL listed vapor-proof fixtures, pre-wired to junction box on top of hood.
  - 1. Locate switch for operating lights in locations indicated.
- E. Grease Filters: Stainless steel, washable, complying with 1, UL listed and labeled.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 96.
- B. Install hoods level and plumb, securely fastened, with seismic restraints as specified, and free of vibration during normal operation.
- C. Weld hood duct collars to ductwork, liquid-tight.
- D. Connect to utilities.

#### 3.2 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Obtain the services of the manufacturer's representative experienced in the installation, adjustment, and operation of the equipment to supervise the starting and adjusting of equipment.
- B. Prepare equipment for startup, start and operate equipment for sufficient period to verify proper operation; correct equipment not operating correctly.
- C. Demonstrate operation to Owner's designated personnel.
- D. Demonstrate operation to authorities having jurisdiction if required by them; comply with their requirements for demonstration.
- E. Report deficiencies in writing to Architect.

#### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces of equipment.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 233813





SECTION 234000  
HVAC AIR CLEANING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Disposable, extended area panel filters.
- B. Disposable panel filters.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASHRAE Std 52.2 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size; 2012, with 2015 amendments.
- B. UL 900 - Standard for Air Filter Units; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Division 1 Section - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on filter media, filter performance data, filter assembly and filter frames, dimensions, motor locations and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate filter assembly and filter frames, dimensions, motor locations, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.

1.4 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Provide one set of disposable panel filters. Filters shall be delivered to Owner.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FILTER MANUFACTURERS

- A. American Filtration Inc: [www.americanfiltration.com/#sle](http://www.americanfiltration.com/#sle).
- B. AAF International/American Air Filter: [www.aafintl.com/#sle](http://www.aafintl.com/#sle).
- C. Camfil Farr Company: [www.camfilfarr.com/#sle](http://www.camfilfarr.com/#sle).

2.2 DISPOSABLE, EXTENDED AREA PANEL FILTERS

- A. Media: UL 900 Class 1, pleated, lofted, non-woven, reinforced cotton fabric; supported and bonded to welded wire grid by corrugated aluminum separators.
  - 1. Frame: Non-flammable.
  - 2. Nominal thickness: 2 inches.
- B. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV): 8, when tested in accordance with ASHRAE 52.2.

2.3 DISPOSABLE PANEL FILTERS

- A. Media: UL 900 Class 2, fiber blanket, factory sprayed with flameproof, non-drip, non-volatile adhesive.
  - 1. Thickness: 1 inch.
- B. Performance Rating:
  - 1. Face Velocity: 500 FPM.
  - 2. Initial Resistance: 0.15 inch WG.
  - 3. Recommended Final Resistance: 0.50 inches WG.
- C. Casing: Cardboard frame.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install air cleaning devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Prevent passage of unfiltered air around filters with felt, rubber, or neoprene gaskets.
- C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with clean set.

- D. Ensure that filters are easily removable from equipment, and that access is not blocked by other installations.

END OF SECTION 234000

## SECTION 237413

### PACKAGED OUTDOOR CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Packaged roof top unit.
- B. Unit controls.
- C. Remote panel.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 230548 - Vibration Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- B. Section 234000 - HVAC Air Cleaning Devices.
- C. Section 253519 - Integrated Automation Control Valves.
- D. Section 262717 - Equipment Wiring: Installation and wiring of thermostats and other controls components; wiring from unit terminal strip to remote panel.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 210/240 - Standard for Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment; 2008.
- B. AHRI 270 - Sound Performance Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment; 2008.
- C. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2015.

##### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide capacity and dimensions of manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Indicate electrical service with electrical characteristics and connection requirements, and duct connections.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate capacity and dimensions of manufactured products and assemblies required for this project. Indicate electrical service with electrical characteristics and connection requirements, and duct connections.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate assembly, support details, connection requirements, and include start-up instructions.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.
- E. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's warranty and ensure forms have been filled out in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.

##### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide a five year warranty to include coverage for refrigeration compressors.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Trane
- B. Approved substitution.

##### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Performance shall be as scheduled on drawings.

##### 2.3 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. General: Ground mounted units having gas burner and electric refrigeration.

- B. Description: Self-contained, packaged, factory assembled and prewired, consisting of cabinet and frame, supply fan, heat exchanger and burner, controls, air filters, refrigerant cooling coil and compressor, condenser coil and condenser fan. Provide components as scheduled.

#### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Cabinet: Steel with baked enamel finish, including access doors with piano hinges and locking handle.
- B. Heat Exchangers: Stainless steel, of welded construction.
- C. Supply and Return Fan: Forward curved centrifugal type, resiliently mounted with V-belt drive, adjustable variable pitch motor pulley, and rubber isolated hinge mounted high efficiency motor or direct drive as indicated.
- D. Air Filters:
  - 1. 2 inch thick glass fiber disposable media.

#### 2.5 BURNER

- A. Gas Burner: Induced draft type burner with adjustable combustion air supply, pressure regulator, gas valves, manual shut-off, intermittent spark or glow coil ignition, flame sensing device, and automatic 100 percent shut-off pilot.
- B. Gas Burner Safety Controls: Energize ignition, limit time for establishment of flame, prevent opening of gas valve until pilot flame is proven, stop gas flow on ignition failure, energize blower motor, and after air flow proven and slight delay, allow gas valve to open.

#### 2.6 EVAPORATOR COIL

- A. Provide copper tube aluminum fin coil assembly with galvanized drain pan and connection.
- B. Provide capillary tubes or thermostatic expansion valves for units of 6 tons capacity and less, and thermostatic expansion valves and alternate row circuiting for units 7.5 tons cooling capacity and larger.

#### 2.7 COMPRESSOR

- A. Provide scroll compressors, resiliently mounted with positive lubrication, crankcase heater, high and low pressure safety controls, motor overload protection, suction and discharge service valves and gauge ports, and filter drier.

#### 2.8 CONDENSER COIL

- A. Provide copper tube aluminum fin coil assembly with subcooling rows and coil guard.
- B. Provide direct drive propeller fans, resiliently mounted with fan guard, motor overload protection, wired to operate with compressor. Provide high efficiency fan motors.

#### 2.9 OPERATING CONTROLS

- A. Provide microprocessor controller.
- B. Provide low voltage, adjustable room thermostat to control burner operation, compressor and condenser fan, and supply fan to maintain temperature setting.
  - 1. Include system selector switch (off-heat-auto-cool) and fan control switch (auto-on).
- C. Provide terminal strip on unit for connection of operating controls to remote panel by others. Control shall allow for two stages of heating and two stages cooling.
- D. Control Valves: Field-installed, modulating, ball type with position tracking; see Section 253519.

#### 2.10 OPERATING CONTROLS - SINGLE ZONE UNITS

- A. Electric solid state microcomputer based room thermostat, located as indicated.
- B. Room thermostat shall incorporate:
  - 1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
  - 2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from set point.
  - 3. Set-up for four separate temperatures per day.
  - 4. Instant override of set point for continuous or timed period from one hour to 31 days.
  - 5. Short cycle protection.

6. Programming based on weekdays, Saturday and Sunday.
  7. Switch selection features including imperial or metric display, 12 or 24 hour clock, keyboard disable, remote sensor, fan on-auto.
- C. Room thermostat display shall include:
1. Time of day.
  2. Actual room temperature.
  3. Programmed temperature.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that proper power supply is available.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Mount units on factory built full perimeter mounting curb. Install mounting curb level.

#### 3.3 SYSTEM STARTUP

- A. Prepare and start equipment. Adjust for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 237413



SECTION 238127  
MINI-SPLIT HEAT PUMP SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air-source heat pumps.
- B. Indoor ductless fan & coil units.
- C. Controls.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 233100 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- B. Section 262717 - Equipment Wiring: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections and installation and wiring of thermostats and other controls components.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 210/240 - Standard for Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment; 2008.
- B. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2015.
- C. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2015.
- D. UL 207 - Standard for Refrigerant-Containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide rated capacities, weights, accessories, electrical nameplate data, and wiring diagrams.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate assembly, required clearances, and location and size of field connections.
- C. Design Data: Indicate refrigerant pipe sizing.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate rigging, assembly, and installation instructions.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.
- F. Warranty: Submit manufacturers warranty and ensure forms have been filled out in Owner s name and registered with manufacturer.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturers warranty for heat exchangers.
- B. Provide five year manufacturers warranty for compressors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Mitsubishi
- B. Approved substitute.

2.2 SYSTEM DESIGN

- A. Split-System Heating and Cooling Units: Self-contained, packaged, matched factory-engineered and assembled, pre-wired indoor and outdoor units; UL listed.
  - 1. Heating and Cooling: Air-source electric heat pump located in outdoor unit with evaporator.
  - 2. Provide refrigerant lines internal to units and between indoor and outdoor units, factory cleaned, dried, pressurized and sealed, with insulated suction line.
- B. Performance Requirements: See Drawings for additional requirements.

## 2.3 INDOOR UNITS FOR DUCTLESS SYSTEMS

- A. Indoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, factory assembled, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, supply fan, evaporator coil, and controls; wired for single power connection with control transformer.
  - 1. Location: High-wall.
  - 2. Cabinet: Plastic.
    - a. Finish: White.
  - 3. Fan: Line-flow fan direct driven by a single motor.
  - 4. Filter return air with washable, antioxidant pre-filter and a pleated anti-allergy enzyme filter.
- B. Evaporator Coils: Copper tube aluminum fin assembly, galvanized or polymer drain pan sloped in all directions to drain, drain connection, refrigerant piping connections, restricted distributor or thermostatic expansion valve.
  - 1. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 and UL 207.
  - 2. Manufacturer: System manufacturer.
- C. Remote Actuators:

## 2.4 OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. The outdoor unit shall be equipped with an electronic control board that interfaces with the indoor unit to perform all necessary operation functions.
- B. The outdoor unit shall be completely factory assembled, piped, and wired. Each unit must be test run at the factory.
- C. Cabinet
  - 1. The casing shall be constructed from galvanized steel plate, finished with an electrostatically applied, thermally fused acrylic or polyester powder coating for corrosion protection and have a Munsell 3Y 7.8/1.1 finish.
  - 2. Mounting feet shall be provided and shall be welded to the base of the cabinet and be of sufficient size to afford reliable equipment mount and stability.
  - 3. Easy access shall be afforded to all serviceable parts by means of removable panel sections.
  - 4. The fan grill shall be of ABS plastic.
- D. Fan
  - 1. The fan blades shall be of high performance, aerodynamic design for quiet operation, and the fan motor bearings shall be permanently lubricated.
  - 2. The outdoor unit shall have horizontal discharge airflow. The fan shall be mounted in front of the coil, pulling air across it from the rear and dispelling it through the front. The fans shall be provided with a raised guard to prevent external contact with moving parts.
- E. Coil
  - 1. The L shaped condenser coil shall be of copper tubing with flat aluminum fins to reduce debris build up and allow maximum airflow. The coil shall be protected with an integral metal guard.
  - 2. Refrigerant flow from the condenser shall be controlled by means of an electronic linear expansion valve (LEV) metering device. The LEV shall be controlled by a microprocessor controlled step motor.
  - 3. All refrigerant lines between outdoor and indoor units shall be of annealed, refrigeration grade copper tubing, ARC Type, meeting ASTM B280 requirements, individually insulated in twin-tube, flexible, closed-cell, CFC-free (ozone depletion potential of zero), elastomeric material for the insulation of refrigerant pipes and tubes with thermal conductivity equal to or better than 0.27 BTU-inch/hour per Sq Ft / °F, a water vapor transmission equal to or better than 0.08 Perm-inch and superior fire ratings such that insulation will not contribute significantly to fire and up to 1" thick insulation shall have a - Flame-Spread Index of less than 25 and a Smoke-development Index of less than 50 as tested by ASTM E 84 and CAN / ULC S-102. All refrigerant line connections shall be flare type sized as required and tightened to manufacturers specified torque value.
- F. Compressor



1. The compressor for shall be a Mitsubishi Electric, injection port equipped, Frame Compliant Scroll compressor with Variable Speed Inverter Drive Technology.
2. The compressor shall be driven by inverter circuit to control compressor speed. The compressor speed shall dynamically vary to match the room loads, increasing the efficiency of the system which shall result in significant energy savings.
3. To prevent liquid from accumulating in the compressor during the off cycle, a minimal amount of current shall be automatically, intermittently applied to the compressor motor windings to maintain sufficient heat to vaporize any refrigerant. No crankcase heater is to be used.
4. The outdoor unit shall have an accumulator and high pressure safety switch. The compressor shall be mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.

G. Electrical

1. The electrical power of the unit shall be 208volts or 230 volts, single phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of satisfactory operation within voltage limits of 187 volts to 253 volts.
2. Power for the indoor unit shall be supplied from the outdoor unit via Mitsubishi Electric A-Control using three (3) fourteen (14) gauge AWG conductors plus ground wire connecting the units.
3. The outdoor unit shall be controlled by the microprocessor located in the indoor unit.
4. The control signal between the indoor unit and the outdoor unit shall be pulse signal 24 volts DC.
5. The unit shall have Pulse Amplitude Modulation circuit to utilize 98% of input power supply.

2.5 ACCESSORY EQUIPMENT

- A. Room Thermostat: Wall-mounted, wired, electric solid state microcomputer based room thermostat with remote sensor to maintain temperature setting; low-voltage; with following features:
1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
  2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from setpoint.
  3. Set-up for four separate temperatures per day.
  4. Programming based on weekdays, Saturday and Sunday.
  5. Thermostat display:
    - a. Actual room temperature.
    - b. Programmed temperature.
    - c. System mode indication: heating, cooling, fan auto, off, and on, auto or on, off.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install in accordance with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

END OF SECTION 238127



SECTION 238128  
SMALL SPLIT-SYSTEM HEATING AND COOLING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Air-source heat pumps.
- B. Indoor air handler (fan & coil) units for duct connection.
- C. Controls.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 233100 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.
- B. Section 262717 - Equipment Wiring: Electrical characteristics and wiring connections and installation and wiring of thermostats and other controls components.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AHRI 210/240 - Standard for Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment; 2008.
- B. AHRI 520 - Performance Rating of Positive Displacement Condensing Units; 2004.
- C. ASHRAE Std 23.1 - Methods of Testing for Rating Positive Displacement Refrigerant Compressors and Condensing Units; 2010.
- D. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; 2014.
- E. NFPA 54 - National Fuel Gas Code; 2015.
- F. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2015.
- G. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2015.
- H. NFPA 211 - Guide for Smoke and Heat Venting; 2013, Including All Amendments.
- I. UL 207 - Standard for Refrigerant-Containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide rated capacities, weights, accessories, electrical nameplate data, and wiring diagrams.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate assembly, required clearances, and location and size of field connections.
- C. Design Data: Indicate refrigerant pipe sizing.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate rigging, assembly, and installation instructions.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.
- F. Warranty: Submit manufacturers warranty and ensure forms have been filled out in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- G. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Filters: One for each unit.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturers warranty for heat exchangers.
- B. Provide five year manufacturers warranty for compressors.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Trane Inc: [www.trane.com](http://www.trane.com).

B. Approved substitute.

## 2.2 SYSTEM DESIGN

A. Split-System Heating and Cooling Units: Self-contained, packaged, matched factory-engineered and assembled, pre-wired indoor and outdoor units; UL listed.

1. Heating and Cooling: Air-source electric heat pump located in outdoor unit with evaporator; auxiliary electric heat.
2. Provide refrigerant lines internal to units and between indoor and outdoor units, factory cleaned, dried, pressurized and sealed, with insulated suction line.
  - a. Pipe sizes for each unit shall be sized per the manufacturer's recommendations and account for line length and suction lift requirements. Provide manufacturer's confirmation for each unit that proposed installation and line sizes will provide proper system operation.

B. Performance Requirements: See Drawings for additional requirements.

## 2.3 INDOOR UNITS FOR DUCTED SYSTEMS

A. Indoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, factory assembled, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, supply fan, heating and cooling element(s), controls, and accessories; wired for single power connection with control transformer.

1. Air Flow Configuration: As indicated on drawings.
2. Cabinet: Steel with baked enamel finish, easily removed and secured access doors with safety interlock switches, glass fiber insulation with reflective liner.

B. Supply Fan: Centrifugal type rubber mounted with direct or belt drive with adjustable variable pitch motor pulley.

1. Motor: NEMA MG 1; 1750 rpm single speed, permanently lubricated, hinge mounted.
2. Motor Electrical Characteristics:

C. Air Filters: 1 inch thick urethane, washable type arranged for easy replacement.

D. Evaporator Coils: Copper tube aluminum fin assembly, galvanized or polymer drain pan sloped in all directions to drain, drain connection, refrigerant piping connections, restricted distributor or thermostatic expansion valve.

1. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 and UL 207.
2. Manufacturers: System manufacturer.

## 2.4 OUTDOOR UNITS

A. Outdoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, with compressor and condenser.

1. Refrigerant: R-410A.
2. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 with testing in accordance with ASHRAE Std 23 and UL listed.

B. Compressor: Scroll, 3600 rpm, AHRI 520 resiliently mounted integral with condenser, with positive lubrication, crankcase heater, high pressure control, motor overload protection, service valves and drier. Provide time delay control to prevent short cycling.

C. Air Cooled Condenser: ARI 520; Aluminum fin and copper tube coil, with direct drive axial propeller fan resiliently mounted, galvanized fan guard.

D. Accessories: Filter drier, high pressure switch (manual reset), low pressure switch (automatic reset), service valves and gage ports, thermometer well (in liquid line).

1. Provide thermostatic expansion valves.

E. Operating Controls:

1. Control by programmable room thermostat to maintain room temperature setting.

## 2.5 ELECTRIC FURNACE COMPONENTS

A. Electric Heater: Helix wound bare nichrome wire heating elements arranged in incremental stages of 5 kW each, with porcelain insulators.

- B. Operating Controls:
  - 1. Heater stages energized in sequence with pre-determined delay between heating stages.
  - 2. High limit temperature control to de-energize heating elements, with automatic reset.
  - 3. Supply fan started before electric elements are energized and continues operating after thermostat is satisfied until bonnet temperature reaches minimum setting. Include manual switch for continuous fan operation.

## 2.6 ACCESSORY EQUIPMENT

- A. Room Thermostat: Wall-mounted, electric solid state microcomputer based room thermostat with sensor to maintain temperature setting; low-voltage; with following features:
  - 1. Automatic switching from heating to cooling.
  - 2. Preferential rate control to minimize overshoot and deviation from setpoint.
  - 3. Set-up for four separate temperatures per day.
  - 4. Programming based on weekdays, Saturday and Sunday.
  - 5. Thermostat display:
    - a. Actual room temperature.
    - b. Programmed temperature.
    - c. System mode indication: heating, cooling, fan auto, off, and on, auto or on, off.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- B. Install gas fired furnaces in accordance with NFPA 54.
- C. Provide combustion air and vent connections in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 238128



SECTION 260501  
ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical demolition.

PART 3 EXECUTION

2.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that abandoned wiring and equipment serve only abandoned facilities.
- B. Report discrepancies to Architect before disturbing existing installation.
- C. Beginning of demolition means installer accepts existing conditions.

2.2 PREPARATION

- A. Disconnect and remove electrical systems throughout entire building.

2.3 DEMOLITION OF ELECTRICAL WORK

- A. Remove existing installations in their entirety.
- B. Remove abandoned wiring.
- C. Remove exposed abandoned conduit, including abandoned conduit above accessible ceiling finishes. Cut conduit flush with walls and floors, and patch surfaces.
- D. Disconnect abandoned outlets and remove devices. Remove abandoned outlets if conduit servicing them is abandoned and removed.
- E. Disconnect and remove abandoned panelboards and distribution equipment.
- F. Disconnect and remove electrical devices and equipment serving utilization equipment that has been removed.
- G. Disconnect and remove abandoned luminaires. Remove brackets, stems, hangers, and other accessories.
- H. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition.
- I. Remove all abandoned knob insulators and other appurtenances from the building.

END OF SECTION 260501





## SECTION 260519

### LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Single conductor building wire.
- B. Metal-clad cable.
- C. Power and control tray cable.
- D. Wiring connectors.
- E. Electrical tape.
- F. Oxide inhibiting compound.
- G. Wire pulling lubricant.
- H. Cable ties.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems: Additional requirements for grounding conductors and grounding connectors.
- B. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- C. Section 283100 - Fire Detection and Alarm: Fire alarm system conductors and cables.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM B3 - Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire; 2013.
- B. ASTM B8 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft; 2011.
- C. ASTM B33 - Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes; 2010 (Reapproved 2014).
- D. ASTM B787/B787M - Standard Specification for 19 Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductors for Subsequent Insulation; 2004 (Reapproved 2014).
- E. ASTM B800 - Standard Specification for 8000 Series Aluminum Alloy Wire for Electrical Purposes - Annealed and Intermediate Tempers; 2005 (Reapproved 2011).
- F. ASTM B801 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Conductors of 8000 Series Aluminum Alloy Wire for Subsequent Covering of Insulation; 2007 (Reapproved 2012).
- G. ASTM D3005 - Standard Specification for Low-Temperature Resistant Vinyl Chloride Plastic Pressure-Sensitive Electrical Insulating Tape; 2010.
- H. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- I. NECA 104 - Recommended Practice for Installing Aluminum Building Wire and Cable; 2012.
- J. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Metal-Clad Cable (MC); 2012.
- K. NEMA WC 70 - Nonshielded Power Cable 2000 V or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; 2009.
- L. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- M. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 510 - Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene, and Rubber Insulating Tape; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

- R. UL 1277 - Electrical Power and Control Tray Cables with Optional Optical-Fiber Members; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 1569 - Metal-Clad Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes of raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures installed under other sections with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
  - 2. Coordinate with electrical equipment installed under other sections to provide terminations suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conductors and cables, including detailed information on materials, construction, ratings, listings, and available sizes, configurations, and stranding.
- C. Design Data: Indicate voltage drop and ampacity calculations for aluminum conductors substituted for copper conductors. Include proposed modifications to raceways, boxes, wiring gutters, enclosures, etc. to accommodate substituted conductors.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed circuiting arrangements. Record actual routing for underground circuits.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store conductors and cables in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install or otherwise handle thermoplastic-insulated conductors at temperatures lower than 14 degrees F, unless otherwise permitted by manufacturer's instructions. When installation below this temperature is unavoidable, notify Architect and obtain direction before proceeding with work.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conductors and cables for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Provide single conductor building wire installed in suitable raceway unless otherwise indicated, permitted, or required.
- C. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable is not permitted.
- D. Underground feeder and branch-circuit cable is not permitted.
- E. Service entrance cable is not permitted.
- F. Metal-clad cable is permitted only as follows:
  - 1. Where not otherwise restricted, may be used:
    - a. Where concealed above accessible ceilings for final connections from junction boxes to luminaires.
      - 1) Maximum Length: 6 feet.
    - b. Where concealed in hollow stud walls, under raised floors, and above ceilings for branch circuits and feeders to dwelling units.
  - 2. In addition to other applicable restrictions, may not be used:

- a. Unless approved by Owner.
- b. Where not approved for use by the authority having jurisdiction.
- c. Where exposed to view.
- d. Where exposed to damage.
- e. For damp, wet, or corrosive locations.

## 2.2 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. AFC Cable Systems: [www.afcweb.com](http://www.afcweb.com)
- B. Alan Wire Company: [www.alanwire.com](http://www.alanwire.com).
- C. Cerro Wire LLC: [www.cerrowire.com](http://www.cerrowire.com).
- D. Encore Wire Corporation: [www.encorewire.com](http://www.encorewire.com).
- E. Southwire Company: [www.southwire.com](http://www.southwire.com).
- F. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.3 ALL CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
- C. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, etc. as required for a complete operating system.
- D. Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- E. Thermoplastic-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 83.
- F. Thermoset-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 44.
- G. Conductor Material:
  - 1. Provide copper conductors except where aluminum conductors are specifically indicated. Substitution of aluminum conductors for copper is not permitted. Conductor sizes indicated are based on copper unless specifically indicated as aluminum. Conductors designated with the abbreviation "AL" indicate aluminum.
  - 2. Copper Conductors: Soft drawn annealed, 98 percent conductivity, uncoated copper conductors complying with ASTM B3, ASTM B8, or ASTM B787/B 787M unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Tinned Copper Conductors: Comply with ASTM B33.
  - 4. Aluminum Conductors (only where specifically indicated or permitted for substitution): AA-8000 series aluminum alloy conductors recognized by ASTM B800 and compact stranded in accordance with ASTM B801 unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Minimum Conductor Size:
  - 1. Branch Circuits: 12 AWG.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 75 feet: 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
      - 2) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 150 feet: 8 AWG, for voltage drop.
      - 3) 20 A, 277 V circuits longer than 150 feet: 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
  - 2. Control Circuits: 14 AWG.
- I. Conductor Color Coding:
  - 1. Color code conductors as indicated unless otherwise required by the authority having jurisdiction. Maintain consistent color coding throughout project.
  - 2. Color Coding Method: Integrally colored insulation.
    - a. Conductors size 4 AWG and larger may have black insulation color coded using vinyl color coding electrical tape.
  - 3. Color Code:
    - a. 208Y/120 V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire System:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.

- 2) Phase B: Red.
- 3) Phase C: Blue.
- 4) Neutral/Grounded: White.
- b. 240/120 V, 1 Phase, 3 Wire System:
  - 1) Phase A: Black.
  - 2) Phase B: Red.
  - 3) Neutral/Grounded: White.
- c. Equipment Ground, All Systems: Green.
- d. Travelers for 3-Way and 4-Way Switching: Pink.
- e. For control circuits, comply with manufacturer's recommended color code.

#### 2.4 SINGLE CONDUCTOR BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Single conductor insulated wire.
- B. Conductor Stranding:
  - 1. Feeders and Branch Circuits:
    - a. Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Solid.
    - b. Size 8 AWG and Larger: Stranded.
  - 2. Control Circuits: Stranded.
- C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
- D. Insulation:
  - 1. Copper Building Wire: Type THHN/THWN or THHN/THWN-2.
  - 2. Aluminum Building Wire (only where specifically indicated or permitted for substitution): Type XHHW-2.

#### 2.5 METAL-CLAD CABLE

- A. Description: NFPA 70, Type MC cable listed and labeled as complying with UL 1569, and listed for use in classified firestop systems to be used.
- B. Conductor Stranding:
  - 1. Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Solid.
  - 2. Size 8 AWG and Larger: Stranded.
- C. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
- D. Insulation: Type THHN, THHN/THWN, or THHN/THWN-2.
- E. Grounding: Full-size integral equipment grounding conductor.
- F. Armor: Aluminum or steel, interlocked tape.
- G. Provide PVC jacket applied over cable armor where indicated or required for environment of installed location.

#### 2.6 WIRING CONNECTORS

- A. Description: Wiring connectors appropriate for the application, suitable for use with the conductors to be connected, and listed as complying with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C as applicable.
- B. Wiring Connectors for Splices and Taps:
  - 1. Copper Conductors Size 8 AWG and Smaller: Use twist-on insulated spring connectors.
  - 2. Copper Conductors Size 6 AWG and Larger: Use mechanical connectors or compression connectors.
- C. Wiring Connectors for Terminations:
  - 1. Provide terminal lugs for connecting conductors to equipment furnished with terminations designed for terminal lugs.
  - 2. Provide compression adapters for connecting conductors to equipment furnished with mechanical lugs when only compression connectors are specified.

3. Where over-sized conductors are larger than the equipment terminations can accommodate, provide connectors suitable for reducing to appropriate size, but not less than required for the rating of the overcurrent protective device.
  4. Copper Conductors Size 8 AWG and Larger: Use mechanical connectors or compression connectors where connectors are required.
  5. Stranded Conductors Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Use crimped terminals for connections to terminal screws.
  6. Conductors for Control Circuits: Use crimped terminals for all connections.
- D. Do not use insulation-piercing or insulation-displacement connectors designed for use with conductors without stripping insulation.
  - E. Do not use push-in wire connectors as a substitute for twist-on insulated spring connectors.
  - F. Twist-on Insulated Spring Connectors: Rated 600 V, 221 degrees F for standard applications and 302 degrees F for high temperature applications; pre-filled with sealant and listed as complying with UL 486D for damp and wet locations.
  - G. Mechanical Connectors: Provide bolted type or set-screw type.
  - H. Compression Connectors: Provide circumferential type or hex type crimp configuration.
  - I. Crimped Terminals: Nylon-insulated, with insulation grip and terminal configuration suitable for connection to be made.

## 2.7 WIRING ACCESSORIES

- A. Electrical Tape:
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. 3M: [www.3m.com/#sle](http://www.3m.com/#sle).
    - b. Plymouth Rubber Europa: [www.plymouthrubber.com/#sle](http://www.plymouthrubber.com/#sle).
  2. Vinyl Color Coding Electrical Tape: Integrally colored to match color code indicated; listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F.
  3. Vinyl Insulating Electrical Tape: Complying with ASTM D3005 and listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; conformable for application down to 0 degrees F and suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F.
- B. Oxide Inhibiting Compound: Listed; suitable for use with the conductors or cables to be installed.
- C. Wire Pulling Lubricant: Listed; suitable for use with the conductors or cables to be installed and suitable for use at the installation temperature.
- D. Cable Ties: Material and tensile strength rating suitable for application.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that interior of building has been protected from weather.
- B. Verify that work likely to damage wire and cable has been completed.
- C. Verify that raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures are installed and are properly sized to accommodate conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70.
- D. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean raceways thoroughly to remove foreign materials before installing conductors and cables.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Circuiting Requirements:
  1. Unless dimensioned, circuit routing indicated is diagrammatic.

2. When circuit destination is indicated and routing is not shown, determine exact routing required.
  3. Arrange circuiting to minimize splices.
  4. Include circuit lengths required to install connected devices within 10 ft of location shown.
  5. Maintain separation of Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits in accordance with NFPA 70.
  6. Circuiting Adjustments: Unless otherwise indicated, when branch circuits are shown as separate, combining them together in a single raceway is permitted, under the following conditions:
    - a. Provide no more than six current-carrying conductors in a single raceway. Dedicated neutral conductors are considered current-carrying conductors.
  7. Common Neutrals: Unless otherwise indicated, sharing of neutral/grounded conductors among single phase branch circuits of different phases installed in the same raceway is not permitted. Provide dedicated neutral/grounded conductor for each individual branch circuit.
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install conductors and cable in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- D. Install metal-clad cable (Type MC) in accordance with NECA 120.
- E. Installation in Raceway:
1. Tape ends of conductors and cables to prevent infiltration of moisture and other contaminants.
  2. Pull all conductors and cables together into raceway at same time.
  3. Do not damage conductors and cables or exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tension and sidewall pressure.
  4. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant where necessary, except when lubricant is not recommended by the manufacturer.
- F. Paralleled Conductors: Install conductors of the same length and terminate in the same manner.
- G. Secure and support conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from raceways, piping, ductwork, or other systems.
1. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling support system. Do not provide support from ceiling grid or allow conductors and cables to lay on ceiling tiles.
- H. Terminate cables using suitable fittings.
1. Metal-Clad Cable (Type MC):
    - a. Use listed fittings.
    - b. Cut cable armor only using specialized tools to prevent damaging conductors or insulation. Do not use hacksaw or wire cutters to cut armor.
    - c. Do not use direct-bearing set-screw type fittings for cables with aluminum armor.
- I. Install conductors with a minimum of 12 inches of slack at each outlet.
- J. Neatly train and bundle conductors inside boxes, wireways, panelboards and other equipment enclosures.
- K. Make wiring connections using specified wiring connectors.
1. Make splices and taps only in accessible boxes. Do not pull splices into raceways or make splices in conduit bodies or wiring gutters.
  2. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors.
  3. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate insertion into connector.
  4. Clean contact surfaces on conductors and connectors to suitably remove corrosion, oxides, and other contaminates. Do not use wire brush on plated connector surfaces.
  5. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  6. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.
- L. Insulate splices and taps that are made with uninsulated connectors using methods suitable for the application, with insulation and mechanical strength at least equivalent to unspliced conductors.

1. Dry Locations: Use insulating covers specifically designed for the connectors, electrical tape, or heat shrink tubing.
    - a. For taped connections, first apply adequate amount of rubber splicing electrical tape or electrical filler tape, followed by outer covering of vinyl insulating electrical tape.
  2. Damp Locations: Use insulating covers specifically designed for the connectors, electrical tape, or heat shrink tubing.
    - a. For connections with insulating covers, apply outer covering of moisture sealing electrical tape.
    - b. For taped connections, follow same procedure as for dry locations but apply outer covering of moisture sealing electrical tape.
  3. Wet Locations: Use heat shrink tubing.
- M. Insulate ends of spare conductors using vinyl insulating electrical tape.
- N. Field-Applied Color Coding: Where vinyl color coding electrical tape is used in lieu of integrally colored insulation as permitted in Part 2 under "Color Coding", apply half overlapping turns of tape at each termination and at each location conductors are accessible.
- O. Identify conductors and cables in accordance with Section 260553.
- P. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 078400.
- Q. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide final connections to all equipment and devices, including those furnished by others, as required for a complete operating system.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform inspection, testing, and adjusting in accordance with Section 014000.
  - B. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conductors and cables.

END OF SECTION 260519





## SECTION 260526

### GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Grounding and bonding requirements.
- B. Conductors for grounding and bonding.
- C. Connectors for grounding and bonding.
- D. Ground bars.
- E. Ground rod electrodes.
- F. Grounding and bonding components.
- G. Provide all components necessary to complete the grounding system(s) consisting of:
  - 1. Metal underground water pipe.
  - 2. Metal underground gas piping system.
  - 3. Rod electrodes.

##### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEEE 81 - IEEE Guide for Measuring Earth Resistivity, Ground Impedance, and Earth Surface Potentials of a Grounding System; 2012.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- C. NEMA GR 1 - Grounding Rod Electrodes and Grounding Rod Electrode Couplings; 2007.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify exact locations of underground metal water service pipe entrances to building.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide steel reinforcement complying with specified requirements for concrete-encased electrode.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install ground rod electrodes until final backfill and compaction is complete.

##### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Grounding System Resistance: 25 ohms.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for grounding and bonding system components.
- C. Test Reports: Indicate overall resistance to ground .
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of grounding electrode system components and connections.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

- C. Installer Qualifications for Signal Reference Grids: Company with minimum five years documented experience with high frequency grounding systems.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GROUNDING AND BONDING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required components, conductors, connectors, conduit, boxes, fittings, supports, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete grounding and bonding system.
- C. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- D. Grounding System Resistance:
  1. Achieve specified grounding system resistance under normally dry conditions unless otherwise approved by Architect. Precipitation within the previous 48 hours does not constitute normally dry conditions.
  2. Grounding Electrode System: Not greater than 25 ohms to ground, when tested according to IEEE 81 using "fall-of-potential" method.
- E. Grounding Electrode System:
  1. Provide connection to required and supplemental grounding electrodes indicated to form grounding electrode system.
    - a. Provide continuous grounding electrode conductors without splice or joint.
    - b. Install grounding electrode conductors in raceway where exposed to physical damage. Bond grounding electrode conductor to metallic raceways at each end with bonding jumper.
  2. Metal Underground Water Pipe(s):
    - a. Provide connection to underground metal domestic and fire protection (where present) water service pipe(s) that are in direct contact with earth for at least 10 feet at an accessible location not more than 5 feet from the point of entrance to the building.
    - b. Provide bonding jumper(s) around insulating joints/pipes as required to make pipe electrically continuous.
    - c. Provide bonding jumper around water meter of sufficient length to permit removal of meter without disconnecting jumper.
  3. Metal Building or Structure Frame:
    - a. Provide connection to metal building or structure frame effectively grounded in accordance with NFPA 70 at nearest accessible location.
  4. Concrete-Encased Electrode:
    - a. Provide connection to concrete-encased electrode consisting of not less than 20 feet of either steel reinforcing bars or bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG embedded within concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with earth in accordance with NFPA 70.
  5. Ground Rod Electrode(s):
    - a. Provide single electrode unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - b. Space electrodes not less than 10 feet from each other and any other ground electrode.
    - c. Where location is not indicated, locate electrode(s) at least 5 feet outside building perimeter foundation as near as possible to electrical service entrance; where possible, locate in softscape (uncovered) area.
  6. Provide additional ground electrode(s) as required to achieve specified grounding electrode system resistance.

7. Ground Bar: Provide ground bar, separate from service equipment enclosure, for common connection point of grounding electrode system bonding jumpers as permitted in NFPA 70. Connect grounding electrode conductor provided for service-supplied system grounding to this ground bar.
- F. Service-Supplied System Grounding:
1. For each service disconnect, provide grounding electrode conductor to connect neutral (grounded) service conductor to grounding electrode system. Unless otherwise indicated, make connection at neutral (grounded) bus in service disconnect enclosure.
  2. For each service disconnect, provide main bonding jumper to connect neutral (grounded) bus to equipment ground bus where not factory-installed. Do not make any other connections between neutral (grounded) conductors and ground on load side of service disconnect.
- G. Bonding and Equipment Grounding:
1. Provide bonding for equipment grounding conductors, equipment ground busses, metallic equipment enclosures, metallic raceways and boxes, device grounding terminals, and other normally non-current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors/equipment or likely to become energized as indicated and in accordance with NFPA 70.
  2. Provide insulated equipment grounding conductor in each feeder and branch circuit raceway. Do not use raceways as sole equipment grounding conductor.
  3. Where circuit conductor sizes are increased for voltage drop, increase size of equipment grounding conductor proportionally in accordance with NFPA 70.
  4. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
  5. Terminate branch circuit equipment grounding conductors on solidly bonded equipment ground bus only. Do not terminate on neutral (grounded) or isolated/insulated ground bus.
  6. Provide bonding jumper across expansion or expansion/deflection fittings provided to accommodate conduit movement.
  7. Provide bonding for interior metal piping systems in accordance with NFPA 70. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Metal water piping where not already effectively bonded to metal underground water pipe used as grounding electrode.
    - b. Metal gas piping.
- H. Communications Systems Grounding and Bonding:
1. Provide bonding jumper in raceway from intersystem bonding termination to each communications room or backboard and provide ground bar for termination.
    - a. Bonding Jumper Size: As indicated.
    - b. Raceway Size: 3/4 inch unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - c. Ground Bar Size: 1/4 by 2 by 12 inches unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - d. Ground Bar Mounting Height: 18 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Pole-Mounted Luminaires: Also comply with Section 265600.

## 2.2 GROUNDING AND BONDING COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriter's Laboratories Inc. (UL) or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
  2. Provide products listed and labeled as complying with UL 467 where applicable.
- B. Conductors for Grounding and Bonding, in addition to requirements of Section 260519:
1. Use insulated copper conductors unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) Use bare copper conductors where installed underground in direct contact with earth.
      - 2) Use bare copper conductors where directly encased in concrete (not in raceway).
- C. Connectors for Grounding and Bonding:
1. Description: Connectors appropriate for the application and suitable for the conductors and items to be connected; listed and labeled as complying with UL 467.

2. Unless otherwise indicated, use exothermic welded connections for underground, concealed and other inaccessible connections.
  3. Unless otherwise indicated, use mechanical connectors, compression connectors, or exothermic welded connections for accessible connections.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) Use exothermic welded connections for connections to metal building frame.
  4. Manufacturers - Mechanical and Compression Connectors:
    - a. Burndy: [www.burndy.com](http://www.burndy.com).
    - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.tnb.com/#sle](http://www.tnb.com/#sle).
  5. Manufacturers - Exothermic Welded Connections:
    - a. Burndy: [www.burndy.com](http://www.burndy.com).
    - b. Cadweld, a brand of Erico International Corporation: [www.erico.com/#sle](http://www.erico.com/#sle).
    - c. ThermOweld, a brand of Continental Industries, Inc: [www.thermoweld.com/#sle](http://www.thermoweld.com/#sle).
- D. Ground Bars:
1. Description: Copper rectangular ground bars with mounting brackets and insulators.
  2. Size: As indicated.
  3. Holes for Connections: As indicated or as required for connections to be made.
- E. Ground Rod Electrodes:
1. Comply with NEMA GR 1.
  2. Material: Copper-bonded (copper-clad) steel.
  3. Size: 3/4 inch diameter by 10 feet length, unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that work likely to damage grounding and bonding system components has been completed.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.
- D. Verify existing conditions prior to beginning work.
- E. Verify that final backfill and compaction has been completed before driving rod electrodes.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install grounding and bonding system components in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Ground Rod Electrodes: Unless otherwise indicated, install ground rod electrodes vertically. Where encountered rock prohibits vertical installation, install at 45 degree angle or bury horizontally in trench at least 30 inches (750 mm) deep in accordance with NFPA 70 or provide ground plates.
  1. Outdoor Installations: Unless otherwise indicated, install with top of rod 6 inches below finished grade.
- D. Make grounding and bonding connections using specified connectors.
  1. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate insertion into connector.
  2. Remove nonconductive paint, enamel, or similar coating at threads, contact points, and contact surfaces.
  3. Exothermic Welds: Make connections using molds and weld material suitable for the items to be connected in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  4. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  5. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.
- E. Identify grounding and bonding system components in accordance with Section 260553.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Perform ground electrode resistance tests under normally dry conditions. Precipitation within the previous 48 hours does not constitute normally dry conditions.
- C. Investigate and correct deficiencies where measured ground resistances do not comply with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 260526



## SECTION 260529

### HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Support and attachment components for equipment, conduit, cable, boxes, and other electrical work.

##### 1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2009.
- B. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.
- C. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

##### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog data for fastening systems.

##### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Comply with applicable building code.

##### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with the following. Where requirements differ, comply with most stringent.
    - a. NFPA 70.
    - b. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide all required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for the complete installation of electrical work.
  - 3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriter's Laboratories Inc. (UL) or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated, where applicable.
  - 4. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for the load to be supported. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.
  - 5. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
  - 6. Steel Components: Use corrosion resistant materials suitable for the environment where installed.
    - a. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.
    - b. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Conduit and Cable Supports: Straps, clamps, etc. suitable for the conduit or cable to be supported.
  - 1. Conduit Straps: One-hole or two-hole type; steel or malleable iron.
  - 2. Conduit Clamps: Bolted type unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Outlet Box Supports: Hangers, brackets, etc. suitable for the boxes to be supported.
- D. Metal Channel (Strut) Framing Systems: Factory-fabricated continuous-slot metal channel (strut) and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field-assembly of supports.
  - 1. Comply with MFMA-4.

- E. Hanger Rods: Threaded zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Anchors and Fasteners:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the anchor and fastener types indicated for the specified applications.
  - 2. Concrete: Use preset concrete inserts, expansion anchors, or screw anchors.
  - 3. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
  - 4. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
  - 5. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.
  - 6. Steel: Use beam clamps, machine bolts, or welded threaded studs.
  - 7. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
  - 8. Wood: Use wood screws.
  - 9. Preset Concrete Inserts: Continuous metal channel (strut) and spot inserts specifically designed to be cast in concrete ceilings, walls, and floors.
    - a. Comply with MFMA-4.
    - b. Channel Material: Use galvanized steel.
    - c. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of metal channel (strut) framing system.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install support and attachment components in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- D. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- E. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- F. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- G. Equipment Support and Attachment:
  - 1. Use metal fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel (strut) to support equipment as required.
  - 2. Use metal channel (strut) secured to studs to support equipment surface-mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.
  - 3. Use metal channel (strut) to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide space between equipment and mounting surface.
  - 4. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
- H. Preset Concrete Inserts: Use manufacturer provided closure strips to inhibit concrete seepage during concrete pour.
- I. Secure fasteners according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- J. Remove temporary supports.

#### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect support and attachment components for damage and defects.
- B. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- C. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective support and attachment components.

END OF SECTION 260529



## SECTION 260534

### CONDUIT

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- B. Intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- C. Flexible metal conduit (FMC).
- D. Liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC).
- E. Electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- F. Rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit.
- G. Conduit fittings.
- H. Accessories.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260519 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 260537 - Boxes.
- E. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- F. Section 271005 - Structured Cabling for Voice and Data - Inside-Plant: Additional requirements for communications systems conduits.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C80.1 - American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC); 2005.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - American National Standard for Steel Electrical Metallic Tubing (EMT); 2005.
- C. ANSI C80.6 - American National Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit (EIMC); 2005.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- E. NECA 101 - Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT); 2013.
- F. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2012.
- G. NEMA TC 2 - Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit; 2013.
- H. NEMA TC 3 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing; 2015.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. UL 1 - Flexible Metal Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 6 - Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 360 - Liquid-Tight Flexible Steel Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 514B - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 651 - Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 797 - Electrical Metallic Tubing-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 1242 - Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate minimum sizes of conduits with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
  2. Coordinate the arrangement of conduits with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
  3. Verify exact conduit termination locations required for boxes, enclosures, and equipment installed under other sections or by others.
  4. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide roof penetrations that preserve the integrity of the roofing system and do not void the roof warranty.
  5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
1. Do not begin installation of conductors and cables until installation of conduit is complete between outlet, junction and splicing points.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conduits and fittings.
  - B. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing for conduits installed underground, conduits embedded within concrete slabs, and conduits 2 inch (53 mm) trade size and larger.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store conduit and fittings in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONDUIT APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use conduit and associated fittings for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the conduit types indicated for the specified applications. Where more than one listed application applies, comply with the most restrictive requirements. Where conduit type for a particular application is not specified, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- C. Underground:
  1. Under Slab on Grade: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or rigid PVC conduit.
  2. Exterior, Direct-Buried: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metallic conduit (IMC), or rigid PVC conduit.
  3. Exterior, Embedded Within Concrete: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or rigid PVC conduit.
  4. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit where emerging from underground.
  5. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit larger than 2 inch (53 mm) trade size is provided, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit elbows for bends.
  6. Where steel conduit is installed in direct contact with earth where soil has a resistivity of less than 2000 ohm-centimeters or is characterized as severely corrosive based on soils report or local experience, use corrosion protection tape to provide supplementary corrosion protection.
  7. Where steel conduit emerges from concrete into soil, use corrosion protection tape to provide supplementary corrosion protection for a minimum of 4 inches on either side of where conduit emerges.
- D. Embedded Within Concrete:
  1. Within Slab on Grade: Not permitted.
  2. Within Slab Above Ground: Not permitted.

3. Within Concrete Walls Above Ground: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or rigid PVC conduit.
  4. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit where emerging from concrete.
- E. Concealed Within Masonry Walls: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - F. Concealed Within Hollow Stud Walls: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - G. Concealed Above Accessible Ceilings: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - H. Interior, Damp or Wet Locations: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
  - I. Exposed, Interior, Not Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
  - J. Exposed, Interior, Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
    1. Locations subject to physical damage include, but are not limited to:
      - a. Where exposed below 8 feet, except within electrical and communication rooms or closets.
      - b. Where exposed below 20 feet in warehouse areas.
  - K. Exposed, Exterior: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
  - L. Concealed, Exterior, Not Embedded in Concrete or in Contact With Earth: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
  - M. Connections to Luminaires Above Accessible Ceilings: Use flexible metal conduit.
    1. Maximum Length: 6 feet.
  - N. Connections to Vibrating Equipment:
    1. Dry Locations: Use flexible metal conduit.
    2. Damp, Wet, or Corrosive Locations: Use liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
    3. Maximum Length: 6 feet unless otherwise indicated.
    4. Vibrating equipment includes, but is not limited to:
      - a. Transformers.
      - b. Motors.

## 2.2 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Service Conduits: Also comply with Section 262701.
- B. Communications Systems Conduits: Also comply with Section 271005.
- C. Provide all conduit, fittings, supports, and accessories required for a complete raceway system.
- D. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriter's Laboratories Inc. (UL) or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
- E. Minimum Conduit Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
  1. Branch Circuits: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
  2. Control Circuits: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
  3. Flexible Connections to Luminaires: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
  4. Underground, Interior: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
  5. Underground, Exterior: 1 inch (27 mm) trade size.
- F. Where conduit size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.

## 2.3 GALVANIZED STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Allied Tube & Conduit: [www.alliedeg.com/#sle](http://www.alliedeg.com/#sle).

2. Republic Conduit: [www.republic-conduit.com/#sle](http://www.republic-conduit.com/#sle).
  3. Wheatland Tube Company: [www.wheatland.com/#sle](http://www.wheatland.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC galvanized steel rigid metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6.
- C. Fittings:
1. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
    - a. Do not use die cast zinc fittings.
  3. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless set screw and compression (gland) type fittings are not permitted.
- 2.4 INTERMEDIATE METAL CONDUIT (IMC)
- A. Manufacturers:
1. Allied Tube & Conduit: [www.alliedeg.com/#sle](http://www.alliedeg.com/#sle).
  2. Republic Conduit: [www.republic-conduit.com/#sle](http://www.republic-conduit.com/#sle).
  3. Wheatland Tube Company: [www.wheatland.com/#sle](http://www.wheatland.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type IMC galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.6 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 1242.
- C. Fittings:
1. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
    - a. Do not use die cast zinc fittings.
  3. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless set screw and compression (gland) type fittings are not permitted.
- 2.5 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (FMC)
- A. Manufacturers:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc: [www.afcweb.com/#sle](http://www.afcweb.com/#sle).
  2. Electri-Flex Company: [www.electriflex.com/#sle](http://www.electriflex.com/#sle).
  3. International Metal Hose: [www.metalhose.com/#sle](http://www.metalhose.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type FMC standard wall steel or standard wall aluminum flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 1, and listed for use in classified firestop systems to be used.
- C. Fittings:
1. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
    - a. Do not use die cast zinc fittings.
- 2.6 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC)
- A. Manufacturers:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc: [www.afcweb.com/#sle](http://www.afcweb.com/#sle).
  2. Electri-Flex Company: [www.electriflex.com/#sle](http://www.electriflex.com/#sle).
  3. International Metal Hose: [www.metalhose.com/#sle](http://www.metalhose.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type LFMC polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacketed steel or aluminum flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 360.
- C. Fittings:

1. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
  - a. Do not use die cast zinc fittings.

## 2.7 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Allied Tube & Conduit: [www.alliedeg.com/#sle](http://www.alliedeg.com/#sle).
  2. Republic Conduit: [www.republic-conduit.com/#sle](http://www.republic-conduit.com/#sle).
  3. Wheatland Tube Company: [www.wheatland.com/#sle](http://www.wheatland.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type EMT steel electrical metallic tubing complying with ANSI C80.3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 797.
- C. Fittings:
  1. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  2. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
    - a. Do not use die cast zinc fittings.
  3. Connectors and Couplings: Use compression (gland) or set-screw type.
    - a. Do not use indenter type connectors and couplings.

## 2.8 RIGID POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) CONDUIT

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Cantex Inc: [www.cantexinc.com/#sle](http://www.cantexinc.com/#sle).
  2. Carlon, a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation: [www.carlon.com/#sle](http://www.carlon.com/#sle).
  3. JM Eagle: [www.jmeagle.com/#sle](http://www.jmeagle.com/#sle).
  4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type PVC rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit complying with NEMA TC 2 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; Schedule 40 unless otherwise indicated, Schedule 80 where subject to physical damage; rated for use with conductors rated 90 degrees C.
- C. Fittings:
  1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of conduit to be connected.
  2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; material to match conduit.

## 2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Corrosion Protection Tape: PVC-based, minimum thickness of 20 mil.
- B. Conduit Joint Compound: Corrosion-resistant, electrically conductive; suitable for use with the conduit to be installed.
- C. Solvent Cement for PVC Conduit and Fittings: As recommended by manufacturer of conduit and fittings to be installed.
- D. Pull Strings: Use nylon cord with average breaking strength of not less than 200 pound-force.
- E. Sealing Compound for Sealing Fittings: Listed for use with the particular fittings to be installed.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on drawings.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive conduits.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Install conduit in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Install galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) in accordance with NECA 101.
- D. Install intermediate metal conduit (IMC) in accordance with NECA 101.
- E. Install rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit in accordance with NECA 111.
- F. Conduit Routing:
  - 1. Unless dimensioned, conduit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
  - 2. When conduit destination is indicated and routing is not shown, determine exact routing required.
  - 3. Conceal all conduits unless specifically indicated to be exposed.
  - 4. Conduits in the following areas may be exposed, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Electrical rooms.
    - b. Mechanical equipment rooms.
    - c. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
  - 5. Unless otherwise approved, do not route conduits exposed:
    - a. Across floors.
    - b. Across roofs.
    - c. Across top of parapet walls.
    - d. Across building exterior surfaces.
  - 6. Conduits installed underground or embedded in concrete may be routed in the shortest possible manner unless otherwise indicated. Route all other conduits parallel or perpendicular to building structure and surfaces, following surface contours where practical.
  - 7. Arrange conduit to maintain adequate headroom, clearances, and access.
  - 8. Arrange conduit to provide no more than the equivalent of four 90 degree bends between pull points.
  - 9. Route conduits above water and drain piping where possible.
  - 10. Arrange conduit to prevent moisture traps. Provide drain fittings at low points and at sealing fittings where moisture may collect.
  - 11. Maintain minimum clearance of 6 inches between conduits and piping for other systems.
  - 12. Maintain minimum clearance of 12 inches between conduits and hot surfaces. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Heaters.
    - b. Hot water piping.
    - c. Flues.
  - 13. Group parallel conduits in the same area together on a common rack.
- G. Conduit Support:
  - 1. Secure and support conduits in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 260529 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
  - 3. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling support system. Do not provide support from ceiling grid or allow conduits to lay on ceiling tiles.
  - 4. Use conduit strap to support single surface-mounted conduit.
    - a. Use clamp back spacer with conduit strap for damp and wet locations to provide space between conduit and mounting surface.
  - 5. Use metal channel (strut) with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel surface-mounted conduits.
  - 6. Use conduit clamp to support single conduit from beam clamp or threaded rod.
  - 7. Use trapeze hangers assembled from threaded rods and metal channel (strut) with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel suspended conduits.
- H. Connections and Terminations:
  - 1. Use approved zinc-rich paint or conduit joint compound on field-cut threads of galvanized steel conduits prior to making connections.

2. Where two threaded conduits must be joined and neither can be rotated, use three-piece couplings or split couplings. Do not use running threads.
  3. Use suitable adapters where required to transition from one type of conduit to another.
  4. Provide drip loops for liquidtight flexible conduit connections to prevent drainage of liquid into connectors.
  5. Terminate threaded conduits in boxes and enclosures using threaded hubs or double lock nuts for dry locations and raintight hubs for wet locations.
  6. Where spare conduits stub up through concrete floors and are not terminated in a box or enclosure, provide threaded couplings equipped with threaded plugs set flush with finished floor.
  7. Provide insulating bushings or insulated throats at all conduit terminations to protect conductors.
  8. Secure joints and connections to provide maximum mechanical strength and electrical continuity.
- I. Penetrations:
1. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members, including footings and grade beams, without approval of Structural Engineer.
  2. Make penetrations perpendicular to surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide sleeves for penetrations as indicated or as required to facilitate installation. Set sleeves flush with exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated or required.
  4. Conceal bends for conduit risers emerging above ground.
  5. Seal interior of conduits entering the building from underground at first accessible point to prevent entry of moisture and gases.
  6. Where conduits penetrate waterproof membrane, seal as required to maintain integrity of membrane.
  7. Make penetrations for roof-mounted equipment within associated equipment openings and curbs where possible to minimize roofing system penetrations. Where penetrations are necessary, seal as indicated or as required to preserve integrity of roofing system and maintain roof warranty. Include proposed locations of penetrations and methods for sealing with submittals.
  8. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 078400.
- J. Underground Installation:
1. Provide trenching and backfilling in accordance with specifications.
  2. Minimum Cover, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
    - a. Underground, Exterior: 24 inches.
    - b. Under Slab on Grade: 12 inches to bottom of slab.
  3. Provide underground warning tape in accordance with Section 260553 along entire conduit length for service entrance where not concrete-encased.
- K. Concrete Encasement: Where conduits not otherwise embedded within concrete are indicated to be concrete-encased, provide concrete in accordance with Section 033000 with minimum concrete cover of 3 inches on all sides unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Conduit Movement Provisions: Where conduits are subject to movement, provide expansion and expansion/deflection fittings to prevent damage to enclosed conductors or connected equipment. This includes, but is not limited to:
1. Where conduits cross structural joints intended for expansion, contraction, or deflection.
  2. Where conduits are subject to earth movement by settlement or frost.
- M. Conduit Sealing:
1. Use foam conduit sealant to prevent entry of moisture and gases. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Where conduits enter building from outside.
    - b. Where service conduits enter building from underground distribution system.
    - c. Where conduits enter building from underground.
    - d. Where conduits may transport moisture to contact live parts.
  2. Where conduits cross barriers between areas of potential substantial temperature differential, use foam conduit sealant at accessible point near penetration to prevent condensation. This includes, but is not limited to:

- a. Where conduits pass from outdoors into conditioned interior spaces.
  - b. Where conduits pass from unconditioned interior spaces into conditioned interior spaces.
- N. Condensation Prevention: Where conduits cross barriers between areas of potential substantial temperature differential, provide sealing fitting or approved sealing compound at an accessible point near the penetration to prevent condensation. This includes, but is not limited to:
- 1. Where conduits pass from outdoors into conditioned interior spaces.
  - 2. Where conduits pass from unconditioned interior spaces into conditioned interior spaces.
- O. Provide pull string in all empty conduits and in conduits where conductors and cables are to be installed by others. Leave minimum slack of 12 inches at each end.
- P. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.
- Q. Identify conduits in accordance with Section 260553.
- R. Conduit in exposed areas will be painted. Coordinate with G.C. Entire conduit system, including boxes and coverplates shall be installed prior to painting.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
  - B. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
  - C. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective conduits.
- 3.4 CLEANING
- A. Clean interior of conduits to remove moisture and foreign matter.
- 3.5 PROTECTION
- A. Immediately after installation of conduit, use suitable manufactured plugs to provide protection from entry of moisture and foreign material and do not remove until ready for installation of conductors.

END OF SECTION 260534



## SECTION 260537

### BOXES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Outlet and device boxes up to 100 cubic inches, including those used as junction and pull boxes.
- B. Cabinets and enclosures, including junction and pull boxes larger than 100 cubic inches.
- C. Pull and junction boxes.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 083100 - Access Doors and Panels: Panels for maintaining access to concealed boxes.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices:
  - 1. Wall plates.
- F. Section 262716 - Electrical Cabinets and Enclosures.
- G. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices: Wall plates in finished areas.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- C. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2012.
- D. NEMA OS 1 - Sheet-Steel Outlet Boxes, Device Boxes, Covers, and Box Supports; 2013.
- E. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 508A - Industrial Control Panels; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 514A - Metallic Outlet Boxes; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 514C - Nonmetallic Outlet Boxes, Flush-Device Boxes, and Covers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate minimum sizes of boxes with the actual installed arrangement of conductors, clamps, support fittings, and devices, calculated according to NFPA 70.
  - 4. Coordinate minimum sizes of pull boxes with the actual installed arrangement of connected conduits, calculated according to NFPA 70.

5. Coordinate the placement of boxes with millwork, furniture, devices, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
6. Coordinate the work with other trades to preserve insulation integrity.
7. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted boxes where indicated.
8. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations and mounting heights of outlet, pull, and junction boxes on project record documents.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 BOXES

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Do not use boxes and associated accessories for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
  2. Provide all boxes, fittings, supports, and accessories required for a complete raceway system and to accommodate devices and equipment to be installed.
  3. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled by Underwriter's Laboratories Inc. (UL) or testing firm acceptable to authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
  4. Where box size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
  5. Provide grounding terminals within boxes where equipment grounding conductors terminate.
- B. Outlet and Device Boxes Up to 100 cubic inches, Including Those Used as Junction and Pull Boxes:
  1. Use sheet-steel boxes for dry locations unless otherwise indicated or required.
  2. Use cast iron boxes or cast aluminum boxes for damp or wet locations unless otherwise indicated or required; furnish with compatible weatherproof gasketed covers.
  3. Use suitable concrete type boxes where flush-mounted in concrete.
  4. Use suitable masonry type boxes where flush-mounted in masonry walls.
  5. Use raised covers suitable for the type of wall construction and device configuration where required.
  6. Use shallow boxes where required by the type of wall construction.
  7. Do not use "through-wall" boxes designed for access from both sides of wall.
  8. Sheet-Steel Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1, and list and label as complying with UL 514A.
  9. Cast Metal Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, and list and label as complying with UL 514A; furnish with threaded hubs.
  10. Nonmetallic Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2, and list and label as complying with UL 514C. Use of nonmetallic boxes shall be limited to new framed walls.
  11. Boxes for Supporting Luminaires and Ceiling Fans: Listed as suitable for the type and weight of load to be supported; furnished with fixture stud to accommodate mounting of luminaire where required.
  12. Boxes for Ganged Devices: Use multigang boxes of single-piece construction. Do not use field-connected gangable boxes.
  13. Wall Plates: Comply with Section 262726.
- C. Cabinets and Enclosures, Including Junction and Pull Boxes Larger Than 100 cubic inches:
  1. Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E, or UL 508A.
  2. NEMA 250 Environment Type, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
  3. Junction and Pull Boxes Larger Than 100 cubic inches:

- a. Provide screw-cover or hinged-cover enclosures unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard grey unless otherwise indicated.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on drawings.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive boxes.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.
- D. Verify locations of outlets in offices and work areas prior to rough-in.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards where mounting heights are not indicated.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Flush-mount boxes in finished areas unless specifically indicated to be surface-mounted.
- E. Box Locations:
  - 1. Locate boxes to be accessible. Provide access panels in accordance with Section 083100 as required where approved by the Architect.
  - 2. Unless dimensioned, box locations indicated are approximate.
  - 3. Locate boxes as required for devices installed under other sections or by others.
  - 4. Locate boxes so that wall plates do not span different building finishes.
  - 5. Locate boxes so that wall plates do not cross masonry joints.
- F. Box Supports:
  - 1. Secure and support boxes in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 260529 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide independent support from building structure except for cast metal boxes (other than boxes used for fixture support) supported by threaded conduit connections in accordance with NFPA 70. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- G. Install boxes plumb and level.
- H. Flush-Mounted Boxes:
  - 1. Install boxes in noncombustible materials such as concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, etc. so that front edge of box or associated raised cover is not set back from finished surface more than 1/4 inch or does not project beyond finished surface.
  - 2. Install boxes in combustible materials such as wood so that front edge of box or associated raised cover is flush with finished surface.
  - 3. Repair rough openings around boxes in noncombustible materials such as concrete, tile, gypsum, plaster, etc. so that there are no gaps or open spaces greater than 1/8 inch at the edge of the box.
- I. Install boxes as required to preserve insulation integrity.
- J. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
- K. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 078400.
- L. Close unused box openings.
- M. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no devices or equipment installed or designated for future use.
- N. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.

- O. Install boxes securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1.
- P. Install in locations as shown on Drawings, and as required for splices, taps, wire pulling, equipment connections, and as required by NFPA 70.
- Q. Coordinate installation of outlet boxes for equipment connected under Section 262717.
- R. Set wall mounted boxes at elevations to accommodate mounting heights indicated.
- S. Electrical boxes are shown on Drawings in approximate locations unless dimensioned.
  - 1. Adjust box locations up to 10 feet if required to accommodate intended purpose.
- T. Orient boxes to accommodate wiring devices oriented as specified in Section 262726.
- U. Maintain headroom and present neat mechanical appearance.
- V. Install pull boxes and junction boxes above accessible ceilings and in unfinished areas only.
- W. Inaccessible Ceiling Areas: Install outlet and junction boxes no more than 6 inches from ceiling access panel or from removable recessed luminaire.
- X. Coordinate mounting heights and locations of outlets mounted above counters, benches, and backsplashes.
- Y. Locate outlet boxes to allow luminaires positioned as shown on reflected ceiling plan.
- Z. Align adjacent wall mounted outlet boxes for switches, thermostats, and similar devices.
- AA. Use flush mounting outlet box in finished areas.
- AB. Locate flush mounting box in masonry wall to require cutting of masonry unit corner only. Coordinate masonry cutting to achieve neat opening.
- AC. Unless otherwise indicated, provide separate boxes for line voltage and low voltage systems.
- AD. Locate outlet boxes so that wall plates do not span different building finishes.
- AE. Do not install flush mounting box back-to-back in walls; provide minimum 6 inches separation.
- AF. Secure flush mounting box to interior wall and partition studs. Accurately position to allow for surface finish thickness.
- AG. Use stamped steel bridges to fasten flush mounting outlet box between studs.
- AH. Install flush mounting box without damaging wall insulation or reducing its effectiveness.
- AI. Use adjustable steel channel fasteners for hung ceiling outlet box.
- AJ. Do not fasten boxes to ceiling support wires.
- AK. Support boxes independently of conduit, except cast box that is connected to two rigid metal conduits both supported within 12 inches of box.
- AL. Use gang box where more than one device is mounted together. Do not use sectional box.
- AM. Use gang box with plaster ring for single device outlets.
- AN. Use cast outlet box in exterior locations exposed to the weather and wet locations.
- AO. Large Pull Boxes: Use hinged enclosure in interior dry locations, surface-mounted cast metal box in other locations.
- AP. Identify boxes in accordance with Section 260553.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust flush-mounting outlets to make front flush with finished wall material.
- B. Install knockout closures in unused box openings.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of boxes to remove dirt, debris, plaster and other foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260537

SECTION 260553  
IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical identification requirements.
- B. Identification nameplates and labels.
- C. Wire and cable markers.
- D. Underground warning tape.
- E. Warning signs and labels.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260519 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Color coding for power conductors and cables 600 V and less; vinyl color coding electrical tape.
- B. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices: Device and wallplate finishes; factory pre-marked wallplates.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- B. UL 969 - Marking and Labeling Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify final designations for equipment, systems, and components to be identified prior to fabrication of identification products.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not conceal items to be identified, in locations such as above suspended ceilings, until identification products have been installed.
  - 2. Do not install identification products until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install adhesive products when ambient temperature is lower than recommended by manufacturer.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 IDENTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Identification for Equipment:
  - 1. Use identification nameplate to identify each piece of electrical distribution and control equipment and associated sections, compartments, and components.
    - a. Switchboards:
      - 1) Identify voltage and phase.
      - 2) Use identification nameplate to identify main overcurrent protective device.
      - 3) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device.
    - b. Panelboards:
      - 1) Identify ampere rating.
      - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
      - 3) Use typewritten circuit directory to identify load(s) served for panelboards with a door.
      - 4) For power panelboards without a door, use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Do not identify spares and spaces.
    - c. Enclosed switches:
      - 1) Identify voltage and phase.

- 2) Identify load(s) served. Include location when not within sight of equipment.
    - d. Enclosed Contactors:
      - 1) Identify coil voltage.
      - 2) Identify load(s) and associated circuits controlled. Include location.
  - 2. Service Equipment:
    - a. Use identification nameplate to identify each service disconnecting means.
  - 3. Use identification label or handwritten text using indelible marker on inside of door at each fused switch to identify required NEMA fuse class and size.
  - 4. Use field-painted floor markings, floor marking tape, or warning labels to identify required equipment working clearances where indicated or where required by the authority having jurisdiction.
  - 5. Arc Flash Hazard Warning Labels: Use warning labels to identify arc flash hazards for switchboards and panelboards.
    - a. Legend: Include orange header that reads "WARNING", followed by the word message "Arc Flash and Shock Hazard; Appropriate PPE Required; Do not operate controls or open covers without appropriate personal protection equipment; Failure to comply may result in injury or death; Refer to NFPA 70E for minimum PPE requirements" or approved equivalent.
- B. Identification for Conductors and Cables:
- 1. Color Coding for Power Conductors 600 V and Less: Comply with Section 260519.
  - 2. Identification for Communications Conductors and Cables: Comply with Section 271005.
  - 3. Use identification nameplate or identification label to identify color code for ungrounded and grounded power conductors inside door or enclosure at each piece of feeder or branch-circuit distribution equipment.
- C. Identification for Raceways:
- 1. Use identification labels or plastic marker tags to identify spare conduits at each end. Identify purpose and termination location.
  - 2. Use underground warning tape to identify underground raceways.
- D. Identification for Boxes:
- 1. Use color coded boxes to identify systems other than normal power system.
    - a. Color-Coded Boxes: Field-painted in accordance with Section 099000 per the following color code:
      - 1) Fire Alarm System: Red.
- E. Identification for Devices:
- 1. Identification for Communications Devices: Comply with Section 271005.
  - 2. Wiring Device and Wallplate Finishes: Comply with Section 262726.
  - 3. Use identification label or engraved wallplate to identify load controlled for wall-mounted control devices controlling loads that are not visible from the control location and for multiple wall-mounted control devices installed at one location.
  - 4. Use identification label to identify receptacles protected by upstream GFI protection, where permitted.

## 2.2 IDENTIFICATION NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

- A. Identification Nameplates:
- 1. Materials:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Use plastic nameplates.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Use plastic, stainless steel, or aluminum nameplates suitable for exterior use.
  - 2. Plastic Nameplates: Two-layer or three-layer laminated acrylic or electrically non-conductive phenolic with beveled edges; minimum thickness of 1/16 inch; engraved text.
    - a. Exception: Provide minimum thickness of 1/8 inch when any dimension is greater than 4 inches.
  - 3. Stainless Steel Nameplates: Minimum thickness of 1/32 inch; engraved or laser-etched text.
  - 4. Aluminum Nameplates: Anodized; minimum thickness of 1/32 inch; engraved or laser-etched text.

5. Mounting Holes for Mechanical Fasteners: Two, centered on sides for sizes up to 1 inch high; Four, located at corners for larger sizes.
- B. Identification Labels:
    1. Manufacturers:
    2. Materials: Use self-adhesive laminated plastic labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant.
      - a. Use only for indoor locations.
    3. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text. Do not use handwritten text unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Format for Equipment Identification:
    1. Minimum Size: 1 inch by 2.5 inches.
    2. Legend:
      - a. Equipment designation or other approved description.
      - b. Other information as indicated.
    3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
    4. Minimum Text Height:
      - a. Equipment Designation: 1/2 inch.
      - b. Other Information: 1/4 inch.
    5. Color:
      - a. Normal Power System: White text on black background.
      - b. Fire Alarm System: White text on red background.
  - D. Format for General Information and Operating Instructions:
    1. Minimum Size: 1 inch by 2.5 inches.
    2. Legend: Include information or instructions indicated or as required for proper and safe operation and maintenance.
    3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
    4. Minimum Text Height: 1/4 inch.
    5. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.
      - a. Exceptions:
        - 1) Provide white text on red background for general information or operational instructions for fire alarm systems.
  - E. Format for Caution and Warning Messages:
    1. Minimum Size: 2 inches by 4 inches.
    2. Legend: Include information or instructions indicated or as required for proper and safe operation and maintenance.
    3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
    4. Minimum Text Height: 1/2 inch.
    5. Color: Black text on yellow background unless otherwise indicated.
  - F. Format for Control Device Identification:
    1. Minimum Size: 3/8 inch by 1.5 inches.
    2. Legend: Load controlled or other designation indicated.
    3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
    4. Minimum Text Height: 3/16 inch.
    5. Color: Black text on clear background.
- ### 2.3 WIRE AND CABLE MARKERS
- A. Markers for Conductors and Cables: Use wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl cloth, wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl self-laminating, heat-shrink sleeve, plastic sleeve, plastic clip-on, or vinyl split sleeve type markers suitable for the conductor or cable to be identified.
  - B. Markers for Conductor and Cable Bundles: Use plastic marker tags secured by nylon cable ties.
  - C. Legend: Power source and circuit number or other designation indicated.

- D. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text, all capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use handwritten text.
- E. Minimum Text Height: 1/8 inch.
- F. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.4 UNDERGROUND WARNING TAPE

- A. Materials: Use non-detectable type polyethylene tape suitable for direct burial, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Exception: Use foil-backed detectable type tape where required by serving utility.
- B. Non-detectable Type Tape: 3 inches wide, with minimum thickness of 4 mil.
- C. Foil-backed Detectable Type Tape: 3 inches wide, with minimum thickness of 5 mil, unless otherwise required for proper detection.
- D. Legend: Type of service, continuously repeated over full length of tape.
- E. Color:
  - 1. Tape for Buried Power Lines: Black text on red background.
  - 2. Tape for Buried Communication, Alarm, and Signal Lines: Black text on orange background.

#### 2.5 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Comply with ANSI Z535.2 or ANSI Z535.4 as applicable.
- B. Warning Signs:
  - 1. Materials:
    - a. Indoor Dry, Clean Locations: Use factory pre-printed rigid plastic or self-adhesive vinyl signs.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Use factory pre-printed rigid aluminum signs.
  - 2. Rigid Signs: Provide four mounting holes at corners for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Minimum Size: 7 by 10 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Warning Labels:
  - 1. Materials: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed self-adhesive polyester or self-adhesive vinyl labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant; produced using materials recognized to UL 969.
  - 2. Machine-Printed Labels: Use thermal transfer process printing machines and accessories recommended by label manufacturer.
  - 3. Minimum Size: 2 by 4 inches unless otherwise indicated.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces to receive adhesive products according to manufacturer's instructions.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install identification products to be plainly visible for examination, adjustment, servicing, and maintenance. Unless otherwise indicated, locate products as follows:
  - 1. Surface-Mounted Equipment: Enclosure front.
  - 2. Flush-Mounted Equipment: Enclosure front.
  - 3. Free-Standing Equipment: Enclosure front; also enclosure rear for equipment with rear access.
  - 4. Elevated Equipment: Legible from the floor or working platform.
  - 5. Branch Devices: Adjacent to device.
  - 6. Interior Components: Legible from the point of access.
  - 7. Conduits: Legible from the floor.
  - 8. Boxes: Outside face of cover.
  - 9. Conductors and Cables: Legible from the point of access.
  - 10. Devices: Outside face of cover.



- C. Install identification products centered, level, and parallel with lines of item being identified.
  - D. Secure nameplates to exterior surfaces of enclosures using stainless steel screws and to interior surfaces using self-adhesive backing or epoxy cement.
    - 1. Do not use adhesives on exterior surfaces except where substrate can not be penetrated.
  - E. Install self-adhesive labels and markers to achieve maximum adhesion, with no bubbles or wrinkles and edges properly sealed.
  - F. Install underground warning tape above buried lines with one tape per trench at 12 inch(es) below finished grade.
  - G. Secure rigid signs using stainless steel screws.
  - H. Mark all handwritten text, where permitted, to be neat and legible.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
  - B. Replace self-adhesive labels and markers that exhibit bubbles, wrinkles, curling or other signs of improper adhesion.

END OF SECTION 260553



SECTION 260919  
ENCLOSED CONTACTORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Lighting contactors.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors and Overload Relays Rated 600 Volts; 2000 (R2005), with errata, 2008.
- B. NEMA ICS 6 - Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures; 1993 (R2011).
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide dimensions, size, voltage ratings and current ratings.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. General Electric Company: [www.geindustrial.com](http://www.geindustrial.com)
- B. Eaton Corporation; Cutler-Hammer Products: [www.eaton.com/#sle](http://www.eaton.com/#sle).
- C. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: [www.schneider-electric.us/#sle](http://www.schneider-electric.us/#sle).
- D. Siemens Industry Inc.: [www.sea.siemens.com](http://www.sea.siemens.com)
- E. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.2 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Description: NEMA ICS 2, magnetic lighting contactor.
- B. Configuration: Electrically held.
- C. Coil operating voltage: 120 volts, 60 Hertz.
- D. Poles: As required to match circuit configuration and control function.
- E. Contact Rating: Match branch circuit overcurrent protection, considering derating for continuous loads.
- F. Enclosure: NEMA ICS 6, Type 1.
- G. Accessories:
  - 1. Selector Switch: ON/OFF/AUTOMATIC.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install enclosed contactors where indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Install enclosed contactors plumb. Provide supports in accordance with Section 260529.
- C. Identify enclosed contactors in accordance with Section 260553.

END OF SECTION 260919

SECTION 260923  
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Occupancy sensors.
- B. Time switches.
- C. Outdoor photo controls.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260537 - Boxes.
- D. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 260919 - Enclosed Contactors: Lighting contactors.
- F. Section 265100 - Interior Lighting.
- G. Section 265600 - Exterior Lighting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- C. NEMA 410 - Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Drivers and Discharge Ballasts; 2011.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 773A - Nonindustrial Photoelectric Switches for Lighting Control; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the placement of wall switch occupancy sensors with actual installed door swings.
  - 2. Coordinate the placement of occupancy sensors with millwork, furniture, equipment or other potential obstructions to motion detection coverage installed under other sections or by others.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install lighting control devices until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, colors, service condition requirements, and installed features.
  - 1. Occupancy Sensors: Include detailed motion detection coverage range diagrams.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on device programming and setup.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations and settings for lighting control devices.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Store products in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions until ready for installation.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for all occupancy sensors.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ALL LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

- A. Provide products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, wiring, connectors, hardware, components, accessories, etc. as required for a complete operating system.
- C. Products for Switching of Electronic Fluorescent Ballasts: Tested and rated to be suitable for peak inrush currents specified in NEMA 410.

### 2.2 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Building Automation, Inc; : [www.hubbellautomation.com](http://www.hubbellautomation.com)
  - 2. Sensor Switch Inc; : [www.sensorswitch.com/#sle](http://www.sensorswitch.com/#sle).
  - 3. WattStopper; : [www.wattstopper.com/#sle](http://www.wattstopper.com/#sle).
  - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. All Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. Description: Factory-assembled commercial specification grade devices for indoor use capable of sensing both major motion, such as walking, and minor motion, such as small desktop level movements, according to published coverage areas, for automatic control of load indicated.
  - 2. Sensor Technology:
    - a. Passive Infrared (PIR) Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy by sensing movement of thermal energy between zones.
    - b. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy using a combination of both passive infrared and ultrasonic technologies.
  - 3. Provide LED to visually indicate motion detection with separate color LEDs for each sensor type in dual technology units.
  - 4. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, occupancy sensor to turn load on when occupant presence is detected and to turn load off when no occupant presence is detected during an adjustable turn-off delay time interval.
  - 5. Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Field configurable turn-on and hold-on activation with settings for activation by either or both sensing technologies.
  - 6. Passive Infrared Lens Field of View: Field customizable by addition of factory masking material, adjustment of integral blinders, or similar means to block motion detection in selected areas.
  - 7. Turn-Off Delay: Field adjustable, up to a maximum time delay setting of not less than 5 minutes and not more than 30 minutes.
  - 8. Sensitivity: Field adjustable.
  - 9. Adaptive Technology: Field selectable; capable of self-adjusting sensitivity and time delay according to conditions.
  - 10. Compatibility: Suitable for controlling incandescent lighting, low-voltage lighting with electronic and magnetic transformers, fluorescent lighting with electronic and magnetic ballasts, and fractional motor loads, with no minimum load requirements.
  - 11. Load Rating for Line Voltage Occupancy Sensors: As required to control the load indicated on drawings.

- C. Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. All Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Description: Occupancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated manual control capability, and no leakage current to load in off mode.
    - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control the load indicated on drawings, provide line voltage units with self-contained relay.
    - c. Where indicated, provide two-circuit units for control of two separate lighting loads, with separate manual controls and separately programmable operation for each load.
    - d. Occupancy sensor to be field selectable as either manual-on/automatic-off or automatic on/off.
    - e. Manual-Off Override Control: When used to turn off load while in automatic-on mode, unit to revert back to automatic mode after no occupant presence is detected during the delayed-off time interval.
    - f. Finish: Match finishes specified for wiring devices in Section 262726, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 300 square feet for minor motion and 1050 square feet for major motion.
    - a. Products:
      - 1) Wattstopper #DW-100-G.
      - 2) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. All Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Description: Low profile occupancy sensors designed for ceiling installation.
    - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control the load indicated on the drawings, provide line voltage units with self-contained relay.
    - c. Occupancy sensor to be field selectable as either manual-on/automatic-off or automatic on/off.
    - d. Finish: White unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Standard Range Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 1000 square feet at a mounting height of 9 feet, with a field of view of 360 degrees.
      - 1) Products:
        - (a) Wattstopper #DT-355.
        - (b) Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.3 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Intermatic, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.intermatic.com/#sle](http://www.intermatic.com/#sle).
  - 2. Paragon, a brand of Invensys Controls; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.invensyscontrols.com](http://www.invensyscontrols.com).
  - 3. Tork, a division of NSI Industries LLC; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.tork.com/#sle](http://www.tork.com/#sle).
- B. Digital Electronic Time Switches:
  - 1. Description: Factory-assembled solid state programmable controller with LCD display, listed and labeled as complying with UL 916 or UL 917.
  - 2. Program Capability:
    - a. 7-Day Time Switches: Single channel, capable of different schedule for each day of the week with additional holiday schedule available to override normal schedule for selected days.
  - 3. Schedule Capacity: Not less than 16 programmable on/off operations.
  - 4. Provide automatic daylight savings time and leap year compensation.
  - 5. Provide power outage backup to retain programming and maintain clock.
  - 6. Manual override: Capable of overriding current schedule both permanently and temporarily until next scheduled event.
  - 7. Input Supply Voltage: As indicated on the drawings.

8. Provide lockable enclosure; environmental type per NEMA 250 as specified for the following installation locations:
  - a. Indoor clean, dry locations: Type 1.

#### 2.4 OUTDOOR PHOTO CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Intermatic, Inc; : [www.intermatic.com/#sle](http://www.intermatic.com/#sle).
  2. Kele; [www.kele.com](http://www.kele.com)
  3. Paragon, a brand of Invensys Controls; : [www.invensyscontrols.com](http://www.invensyscontrols.com).
  4. Tork, a division of NSI Industries LLC; : [www.tork.com/#sle](http://www.tork.com/#sle).
  5. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  6. Source Limitations: Furnish products produced by a single manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.
- B. Stem-Mounted Outdoor Photo Controls:
  1. Description: Direct-wired photo control unit with threaded conduit mounting stem and field-adjustable swivel base, listed and labeled as complying with UL 773A.
  2. Housing: Weatherproof, impact resistant polycarbonate.
  3. Photo Sensor: Cadmium sulfide.
  4. Provide external sliding shield for field adjustment of light level activation.
  5. Light Level Activation: 1 to 5 footcandles turn-on and 3 to 1 turn-off to turn-on ratio with delayed turn-off.
  6. Voltage: 120 V unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Failure Mode: Fails to the on position.
  8. Load Rating: 1,800 W for tungsten load or 1,000 VA for ballast load.
  9. Products:
    - a. Intermatic #K4221C
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 01600 - Product Requirements

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that openings for outlet boxes are neatly cut and will be completely covered by devices or wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to lighting control devices.
- F. Verify that the service voltage and ratings of lighting control devices are appropriate for the service voltage and load requirements at the location to be installed.
- G. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 and, where applicable, NECA 130.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260537 as required for installation of lighting control devices provided under this section.
  1. Mounting Heights: As indicated on the drawings.



- 2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of lighting control devices unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lighting control devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, connect lighting control device grounding terminal or conductor to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- E. Install lighting control devices plumb and level, and held securely in place.
- F. Where required and not furnished with lighting control device, provide wall plate in accordance with Section 262726.
- G. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 260529.
- H. Where applicable, install lighting control devices and associated wall plates to fit completely flush to mounting surface with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- I. Occupancy Sensor Locations:
  - 1. Location Adjustments: Within the design intent, reasonably minor adjustments to locations may be made in order to optimize coverage and avoid conflicts or problems affecting coverage.
  - 2. Locate dual technology passive infrared/ultrasonic occupancy sensors a minimum of 4 feet from air supply ducts or other sources of heavy air flow and as per manufacturer's recommendations, in order to minimize false triggers.
- J. Outdoor Photo Control Locations:
  - 1. Where possible, locate outdoor photo controls with photo sensor facing north. If north facing photo sensor is not possible, install with photo sensor facing east, west, or down.
  - 2. Locate outdoor photo controls so that photo sensors do not face artificial light sources, including light sources controlled by the photo control itself.
- K. Install outdoor photo controls so that connections are weatherproof. Do not install photo controls with conduit stem facing up in order to prevent infiltration of water into the photo control.
- L. Unless otherwise indicated, install power packs for lighting control devices above accessible ceiling or above access panel in inaccessible ceiling near the sensor location.
- M. Unless otherwise indicated, install switches on load side of power packs so that switch does not turn off power pack.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each lighting control device for damage and defects.
- C. Test occupancy sensors to verify proper operation, including time delays and ambient light thresholds where applicable. Verify optimal coverage for entire room or area.
- D. Test outdoor photo controls to verify proper operation, including time delays where applicable.
- E. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective lighting control devices.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust occupancy sensor settings to minimize undesired activations while optimizing energy savings, and to achieve desired function as indicated or as directed by Architect.
- C. Where indicated or as directed by Architect, install factory masking material or adjust integral blinders on dual technology occupancy sensor lenses to block undesired motion detection.
- D. Adjust external sliding shields on outdoor photo controls under optimum lighting conditions to achieve desired turn-on and turn-off activation as indicated or as directed by Architect.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

### 3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Training: Train owner's personnel on operation, adjustment, programming, and maintenance of lighting control devices.
  - 1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.
  - 2. Provide minimum of two hours of training.
  - 3. Instructor: Qualified contractor familiar with the project and with sufficient knowledge of the installed lighting control devices.
  - 4. Location: At project site.

END OF SECTION 260923

SECTION 262100  
LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL SERVICE ENTRANCE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical service requirements.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260519 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 260534 - Conduit.
- E. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- F. Section 262413 - Switchboards: Service entrance equipment.
- G. Section 262818 - Enclosed Switches: Service entrance equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code; 2012.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify the following with Utility Company representative:
    - a. Utility Company requirements, including division of responsibility.
    - b. Exact location and details of utility point of connection.
    - c. Utility easement requirements.
    - d. Utility Company charges associated with providing service.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of other utilities or obstructions within the spaces dedicated for electrical service and associated equipment.
  - 3. Coordinate arrangement of service entrance equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Arrange for Utility Company to provide permanent electrical service. Prepare and submit documentation required by Utility Company.
- C. Utility Company charges associated with providing permanent service to be paid by Owner.
- D. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene one week prior to commencing work of this section to review service requirements and details with Utility Company representative.
- E. Scheduling:
  - 1. Arrange for inspections necessary to obtain Utility Company approval of installation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with the following:
  - 1. IEEE C2 (National Electrical Safety Code).
  - 2. NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code).
  - 3. The requirements of the Utility Company.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELECTRICAL SERVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide new electrical service consisting of all required conduits, conductors, equipment, metering provisions, supports, accessories, etc. as necessary for connection between Utility Company point of supply and service entrance equipment.
- B. Electrical Service Characteristics:
  - 1. Service Type: Underground.
  - 2. Service Voltage: 208Y/120 V, 3 phase, 60 Hz.
- C. Utility Company: As indicated on drawings.
- D. Division of Responsibility: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Products Furnished by Contractor: Comply with Utility Company requirements.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and Utility Company requirements.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances and required maintenance access.
- D. Provide required support and attachment components in accordance with Section 260529.
- E. Provide grounding and bonding for service entrance equipment in accordance with Section 260526.
- F. Identify service entrance equipment, including main service disconnect(s) in accordance with Section 260553.

END OF SECTION 262100

SECTION 262200  
LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. General purpose transformers.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete equipment pads.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260534 - Conduit: Flexible conduit connections.
- D. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 262416 - Panelboards.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 10 CFR 431, Subpart K - Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment - Distribution Transformers; Current Edition.
- B. IEEE C57.94 - IEEE Recommended Practice for Installation, Application, Operation, and Maintenance of Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers; 2015.
- C. IEEE C57.96 - IEEE Standard Guide for Loading Dry-Type Distribution and Power Transformers; 2013.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- E. NECA 409 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Dry-Type Transformers; 2015.
- F. NEMA ST 20 - Dry-Type Transformers for General Applications; 2014.
- G. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- H. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. UL 506 - Standard for Specialty Transformers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 1561 - Standard for Dry-Type General Purpose and Power Transformers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate the work with placement of support framing and anchors required for mounting of transformers.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include voltage, kVA, impedance, tap configurations, insulation system class and rated temperature rise, efficiency, sound level, enclosure ratings, outline and support point dimensions, weight, required clearances, service condition requirements, and installed features.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide dimensioned plan and elevation views of transformers and adjacent equipment with all required clearances indicated.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of transformers.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- B. Handle in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Lift only with lugs provided for the purpose. Handle carefully to avoid damage to transformer internal components, enclosure, and finish.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Ambient Temperature: Do not exceed the following maximum temperatures during and after installation of transformers.
  - 1. Greater than 10 kVA: 104 degrees F maximum.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton Corporation: [www.eaton.com/#sle](http://www.eaton.com/#sle).
- B. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: [www.schneider-electric.us/#sle](http://www.schneider-electric.us/#sle).
- C. Siemens Industry, Inc; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.usa.siemens.com/#sle](http://www.usa.siemens.com/#sle).
- D. Source Limitations: Furnish transformers produced by the same manufacturer as the other electrical distribution equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

### 2.2 TRANSFORMERS - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled, dry type transformers for 60 Hz operation designed and manufactured in accordance with NEMA ST 20 and listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless noted otherwise, transformer ratings indicated are for continuous loading according to IEEE C57.96 under the following service conditions:
  - 1. Altitude: Less than 3,300 feet.
  - 2. Ambient Temperature:
    - a. Greater than 10 kVA: Not exceeding 104 degrees F.
- C. Core: High grade, non-aging silicon steel with high magnetic permeability and low hysteresis and eddy current losses. Keep magnetic flux densities substantially below saturation point, even at 10 percent primary overvoltage. Tightly clamp core laminations to prevent plate movement and maintain consistent pressure throughout core length.
- D. Impregnate core and coil assembly with non-hydroscopic thermo-setting varnish to effectively seal out moisture and other contaminants.
- E. Basic Impulse Level: 10 kV.
- F. Ground core and coil assembly to enclosure by means of a visible flexible copper grounding strap.
- G. Isolate core and coil from enclosure using vibration-absorbing mounts.
- H. Nameplate: Include transformer connection data, ratings, wiring diagrams, and overload capacity based on rated winding temperature rise.

### 2.3 GENERAL PURPOSE TRANSFORMERS

- A. Description: Self-cooled, two winding transformers listed and labeled as complying with UL 506 or UL 1561; ratings as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Primary Voltage: 240 volts delta, 3 phase.
- C. Secondary Voltage: 208Y/120 volts, 3 phase.
- D. Insulation System and Allowable Average Winding Temperature Rise:
  - 1. 15 kVA and Larger: Class 220 degrees C insulation system with 150 degrees C average winding temperature rise.
- E. Coil Conductors: Continuous aluminum windings with terminations brazed or welded.
- F. Winding Taps:

1. 15 kVA through 300 kVA: Two 2.5 percent full capacity primary taps above and four 2.5 percent full capacity primary taps below rated voltage.
  - G. Energy Efficiency: Comply with 10 CFR 431, Subpart K.
  - H. Sound Levels: Standard sound levels complying with NEMA ST 20.
  - I. Mounting Provisions:
    1. Less than 15 kVA: Suitable for wall mounting.
    2. 15 kVA through 75 kVA: Suitable for wall, floor, or trapeze mounting.
  - J. Transformer Enclosure: Comply with NEMA ST 20.
    1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
      - a. Indoor clean, dry locations: Type 2.
    2. Construction: Steel.
      - a. 15 kVA and Larger: Ventilated.
    3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard grey, suitable for outdoor installations.
    4. Provide lifting eyes or brackets.
- 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Factory test transformers according to NEMA ST 20.
  - B. Sound Level Tests: Perform factory test designated in NEMA ST 20 as "design" test on each production unit.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that suitable support frames and anchors are installed where required and that mounting surfaces are ready to receive transformers.
- C. Perform pre-installation tests and inspections on transformers per manufacturer's instructions and as specified in NECA 409. Correct deficiencies prior to installation.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install transformers in accordance with NECA 409 and IEEE C57.94.
- D. Use flexible conduit, under the provisions of Section 260534, 2 feet minimum length, for connections to transformer case. Make conduit connections to side panel of enclosure.
- E. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances as specified on transformer nameplate and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- F. Mount floor-mounted transformers on properly sized 3 inch high concrete pad constructed in accordance with Section 033000.
- G. Mount trapeze-mounted transformers using vibration isolators suitable for isolating the transformer noise from the building structure.
- H. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.
- I. Remove shipping braces and adjust bolts that attach the core and coil mounting bracket to the enclosure according to manufacturer's recommendations in order to reduce audible noise transmission.
- J. Where not factory-installed, install lugs sized as required for termination of conductors as indicated.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Measure primary and secondary voltages and make appropriate tap adjustments.

B. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from transformer components according to manufacturer's instructions.

B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 262200



SECTION 262416  
PANELBOARDS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Lighting and appliance panelboards.
- B. Load centers.
- C. Overcurrent protective devices for panelboards.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 264300 - Surge Protective Devices.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- B. NECA 407 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Panelboards; 2009.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- D. NEMA PB 1 - Panelboards; 2011.
- E. NEMA PB 1.1 - General Instructions for Proper Installation, Operation and Maintenance of Panelboards Rated 600 Volts or Less; 2013.
- F. NETA ATS - Acceptance Testing Specifications for Electrical Power Equipment and Systems; 2013.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 67 - Panelboards; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 1699 - Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted panelboards where indicated.
  - 4. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.

5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for panelboards, enclosures, overcurrent protective devices, and other installed components and accessories.
  1. Include characteristic trip curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device upon request.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage, main bus ampacity, overcurrent protective device arrangement and sizes, short circuit current ratings, conduit entry locations, conductor terminal information, and installed features and accessories.
  1. Clearly indicate whether proposed short circuit current ratings are fully rated or, where acceptable, series rated systems.
  2. Include documentation of listed series ratings upon request.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of panelboards and actual installed circuiting arrangements.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include information on replacement parts and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. Panelboard Keys: Two of each different key.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NECA 407.
- B. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- C. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to panelboard internal components, enclosure, and finish.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperature within the following limits during and after installation of panelboards:
  1. Panelboards Containing Circuit Breakers: Between 23 degrees F and 104 degrees F.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Siemens Industry, Inc: [www.usa.siemens.com](http://www.usa.siemens.com).
- B. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: [www.schneider-electric.us/#sle](http://www.schneider-electric.us/#sle).
- C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Source Limitations: Furnish panelboards and associated components produced by the same manufacturer as the other electrical distribution equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

#### 2.2 ALL PANELBOARDS

- A. Provide products listed and labeled by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:

1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet.
2. Ambient Temperature:
  - a. Panelboards Containing Circuit Breakers: Between 23 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
- C. Short Circuit Current Rating:
  1. Provide panelboards with listed short circuit current rating not less than the available fault current at the installed location as indicated on the drawings.
  2. Listed series ratings are acceptable, except where not permitted by motor contribution according to NFPA 70.
  3. Label equipment utilizing series ratings as required by NFPA 70.
- D. Mains: Configure for top or bottom incoming feed as indicated or as required for the installation.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Replaceable without disturbing adjacent devices.
- F. Bussing: Sized in accordance with UL 67 temperature rise requirements.
  1. Provide fully rated neutral bus unless otherwise indicated, with a suitable lug for each feeder or branch circuit requiring a neutral connection.
  2. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each panelboard, with a suitable lug for each feeder and branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- G. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- H. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
  1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
  2. Boxes: Galvanized steel unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Provide wiring gutters sized to accommodate the conductors to be installed.
    - b. Increase gutter space as required where sub-feed lugs, feed-through lugs, gutter taps, or oversized lugs are provided.
  3. Fronts:
    - a. Fronts for Surface-Mounted Enclosures: Same dimensions as boxes.
    - b. Fronts for Flush-Mounted Enclosures: Overlap boxes on all sides to conceal rough opening.
    - c. Finish for Painted Steel Fronts: Manufacturer's standard grey unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lockable Doors: All locks keyed alike unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Future Provisions: Prepare all unused spaces for future installation of devices including bussing, connectors, mounting hardware and all other required provisions.
- J. Surge Protective Devices: Where factory-installed, internally mounted surge protective devices are provided in accordance with Section 264300, list and label panelboards as a complete assembly including surge protective device.
- K. Multi-Section Panelboards: Provide enclosures of the same height, with feed-through lugs and feeders as indicated or as required to interconnect sections.
- L. Load centers are not acceptable.
- M. Provide the following features and accessories where indicated or where required to complete installation:
  1. Feed-through lugs.
  2. Sub-feed lugs.

### 2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE PANELBOARDS

- A. Description: Panelboards complying with NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch circuit type, circuit breaker type, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Conductor Terminations:
  1. Main and Neutral Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  2. Main and Neutral Lug Type: Mechanical.

- C. Bussing:
  1. Phase Bus Connections: Arranged for sequential phasing of overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Phase and Neutral Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
  3. Ground Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
- D. Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic bolt-on type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Enclosures:
  1. Provide surface-mounted or flush-mounted enclosures as indicated.
  2. Fronts: Provide lockable hinged door with concealed hinges for access to overcurrent protective device handles without exposing live parts.
  3. Provide clear plastic circuit directory holder mounted on inside of door.

#### 2.4 LOAD CENTERS

- A. Description: Circuit breaker type load centers listed and labeled as complying with UL 67; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Bussing:
  1. Phase Bus Connections: Arranged for sequential phasing of overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Bus Material: Aluminum or copper.
- C. Circuit Breakers: Thermal magnetic plug-in type.
- D. Enclosures:
  1. Provide flush-mounted enclosures unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide circuit directory label on inside of door or individual circuit labels adjacent to circuit breakers.

#### 2.5 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
  1. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, over center toggle, trip-free, trip-indicating circuit breakers listed and labeled as complying with UL 489; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
  2. Interrupting Capacity:
    - a. Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity as required to provide the short circuit current rating indicated.
    - b. Fully Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
    - c. Series Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers listed in combination with upstream devices to provide interrupting rating not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
  3. Conductor Terminations:
    - a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  4. Thermal Magnetic Circuit Breakers: For each pole, furnish thermal inverse time tripping element for overload protection and magnetic instantaneous tripping element for short circuit protection.
  5. Multi-Pole Circuit Breakers: Furnish with common trip for all poles.
  6. Provide the following circuit breaker types where indicated:
    - a. Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Listed as complying with UL 943, class A for protection of personnel.
    - b. Ground Fault Equipment Protection Circuit Breakers: Designed to trip at 30 mA for protection of equipment.
    - c. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers: Combination type listed as complying with UL 1699.
    - d. 100 Percent Rated Circuit Breakers: Listed for application within the panelboard where installed at 100 percent of the continuous current rating.
  7. Provide listed switching duty rated circuit breakers with SWD marking for all branch circuits serving fluorescent lighting.

8. Do not use tandem circuit breakers.
9. Do not use handle ties in lieu of multi-pole circuit breakers.
10. Provide multi-pole circuit breakers for multi-wire branch circuits as required by NFPA 70.
11. Provide the following features and accessories where indicated or where required to complete installation:
  - a. Handle Pad-Lock Provision: For locking circuit breaker handle in OFF position.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that the ratings and configurations of the panelboards and associated components are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive panelboards.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install panelboards securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship), NECA 407 (panelboards), and NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 260529.
- E. Install panelboards plumb.
- F. Install flush-mounted panelboards so that trims fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered.
- G. Mount panelboards such that the highest position of any operating handle for circuit breakers or switches does not exceed 79 inches above the floor or working platform.
- H. Provide minimum of six spare 1 inch trade size conduits out of each flush-mounted panelboard stubbed into accessible space above ceiling.
- I. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.
- J. Install all field-installed branch devices, components, and accessories.
- K. Multi-Wire Branch Circuits: Group grounded and ungrounded conductors together in the panelboard as required by NFPA 70.
- L. Provide filler plates to cover unused spaces in panelboards.
- M. Provide circuit breaker lock-on devices to prevent unauthorized personnel from de-energizing essential loads where indicated. Also provide for the following:
  1. Fire detection and alarm circuits.
  2. Communications equipment circuits.
- N. Identify panelboards in accordance with Section 260553.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform inspection, testing, and adjusting in accordance with Section 014000.
- B. Inspect and test in accordance with NETA STD ATS, except Section 4.
- C. Molded Case Circuit Breakers: Perform inspections and tests listed in NETA STD ATS, Section 7.6.1.1 for all main circuit breakers. Tests listed as optional are not required.
- D. Test GFCI circuit breakers to verify proper operation.

- E. Test AFCI circuit breakers to verify proper operation.
- F. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective panelboards or associated components.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- B. Adjust alignment of panelboard fronts.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from panelboard enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262717  
EQUIPMENT WIRING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Electrical connections to equipment.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260534 - Conduit.
- B. Section 260519 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables (600 V and Less).
- C. Section 260537 - Boxes.
- D. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices.
- E. Section 262818 - Enclosed Switches.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (R 2010).
- B. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2012.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Obtain and review shop drawings, product data, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and manufacturer's instructions for equipment furnished under other sections.
  - 2. Determine connection locations and requirements.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Install rough-in of electrical connections before installation of equipment is required.
  - 2. Make electrical connections before required start-up of equipment.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide wiring device manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, configurations, and construction.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Products: Listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cords and Caps: NEMA WD 6; match receptacle configuration at outlet provided for equipment.
  - 1. Colors: Conform to NEMA WD 1.
  - 2. Cord Construction: NFPA 70, Type SO, multiconductor flexible cord with identified equipment grounding conductor, suitable for use in damp locations.
  - 3. Size: Suitable for connected load of equipment, length of cord, and rating of branch circuit overcurrent protection.
- B. Disconnect Switches: As specified in Section 16412 .
- C. Wiring Devices: As specified in Section 262726.
- D. Flexible Conduit: As specified in Section 260534.
- E. Wire and Cable: As specified in Section 260519.

- F. Boxes: As specified in Section 260537.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that equipment is ready for electrical connection, wiring, and energization.

### 3.2 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Make electrical connections in accordance with equipment manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Make conduit connections to equipment using flexible metal conduit. Use liquidtight flexible metal conduit with watertight connectors in damp or wet locations.
- C. Connect heat producing equipment using wire and cable with insulation suitable for temperatures encountered.
- D. Provide receptacle outlet to accommodate connection with attachment plug.
- E. Provide cord and cap where field-supplied attachment plug is required.
- F. Install suitable strain-relief clamps and fittings for cord connections at outlet boxes and equipment connection boxes.
- G. Install disconnect switches, controllers, control stations, and control devices to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- H. Install terminal block jumpers to complete equipment wiring requirements.
- I. Install interconnecting conduit and wiring between devices and equipment to complete equipment wiring requirements.

END OF SECTION 262717



SECTION 262726  
WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Wall dimmers.
- C. Receptacles.
- D. Wall plates.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260537 - Boxes.
- C. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 260923 - Lighting Control Devices: Devices for automatic control of lighting, including occupancy sensors.
- E. Section 262717 - Equipment Wiring: Cords and plugs for equipment.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2010.
- C. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (R 2010).
- D. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2012.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. UL 20 - General-Use Snap Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 498 - Attachment Plugs and Receptacles; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 514D - Cover Plates for Flush-Mounted Wiring Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
  - 2. Coordinate wiring device ratings and configurations with the electrical requirements of actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the installation and preparation of uneven surfaces, such as split face block, to provide suitable surface for installation of wiring devices.
  - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install wiring devices until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. GFI Receptacles: Include information on status indicators and testing procedures and intervals.

D. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations of wiring devices.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

A. Store in a clean, dry space in original manufacturer's packaging until ready for installation.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Arrow Hart, a brand of Cooper Industries; [www.cooperindustries.com](http://www.cooperindustries.com)

B. Hubbell Incorporated; : [www.hubbell-wiring.com](http://www.hubbell-wiring.com).

C. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc; : [www.leviton.com](http://www.leviton.com).

D. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc; : [www.legrand.us](http://www.legrand.us)

E. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

F. Source Limitations: Where possible, for each type of wiring device furnish products produced by a single manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.

### 2.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Provide wiring devices suitable for intended use and with ratings adequate for load served.

B. For single receptacles installed on an individual branch circuit, provide receptacle with ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit.

C. Provide weather resistant GFI receptacles with specified weatherproof covers for all receptacles installed outdoors or in damp or wet locations.

D. Provide GFI protection for all receptacles installed within 6 feet of sinks.

E. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles installed in kitchens.

F. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles serving electric drinking fountains.

G. Unless noted otherwise, do not use combination switch/receptacle devices.

### 2.3 ALL WIRING DEVICES

A. Provide products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.

B. Finishes:

1. Wiring Devices Installed in Finished Spaces: Color as selected by Architect with nylon wall plate unless otherwise indicated.

2. Wiring Devices Installed in Unfinished Spaces: Gray with galvanized steel wall plate unless otherwise indicated.

3. Wiring Devices Installed in Wet or Damp Locations: Gray with specified weatherproof cover unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.4 WALL SWITCHES

A. All Wall Switches: AC only, quiet operating, general-use snap switches with silver alloy contacts, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 20; types as indicated on the drawings.

1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring and screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.

B. Standard Wall Switches: Commercial specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.

## 2.5 WALL DIMMERS

- A. Wall Dimmers - General Requirements: Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 1472; types and ratings suitable for load controlled as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Control: Slide control type with separate on/off switch.
- C. Power Rating, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required to Control the Load Indicated on the Drawings:
  - 1. Incandescent: 2000 W.
  - 2. 0-10V LED: 1500 VA

## 2.6 RECEPTACLES

- A. All Receptacles: Self-grounding, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 498; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring or screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
  - 2. NEMA configurations specified are according to NEMA WD 6.
- B. Convenience Receptacles:
  - 1. Standard Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 3. Tamper Resistant Convenience Receptacles (All receptacles in dwelling units): Residential grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
- C. GFI Receptacles:
  - 1. All GFI Receptacles: Provide with feed-through protection, light to indicate ground fault tripped condition and loss of protection, and list as complying with UL 943, class A.
    - a. Provide test and reset buttons of same color as device.
  - 2. Standard GFI Receptacles: Industrial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.
  - 3. Weather Resistant GFI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.
  - 4. Tamper Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type.

## 2.7 WALL PLATES

- A. All Wall Plates: Comply with UL 514D.
  - 1. Configuration: One piece cover as required for quantity and types of corresponding wiring devices.
  - 2. Size: Standard; .
  - 3. Screws: Metal with slotted heads finished to match wall plate finish.
- B. Nylon Wall Plates: Smooth finish, high-impact thermoplastic.
- C. Galvanized Steel Wall Plates: Rounded corners and edges, with corrosion resistant screws.
- D. Weatherproof Covers for Damp Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with self-closing hinged cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations with cover closed.
- E. Weatherproof Covers for Wet Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with hinged lockable cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations while in use with attachment plugs connected.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.
- F. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1 and, where applicable, NECA 130.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260537 as required for installation of wiring devices provided under this section.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: As indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Where multiple receptacles or wall switches are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.
  - 4. Locate wall switches on strike side of door with edge of wall plate 3 inches from edge of door frame. Where locations are indicated otherwise, notify Architect to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
  - 5. Locate receptacles for electric drinking fountains concealed behind drinking fountain according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install wiring devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
- E. Where required, connect wiring devices using pigtails not less than 6 inches long. Do not connect more than one conductor to wiring device terminals.
- F. Connect wiring devices by wrapping conductor clockwise 3/4 turn around screw terminal and tightening to proper torque specified by the manufacturer. Where present, do not use push-in pressure terminals that do not rely on screw-actuated binding.
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- H. Provide GFI receptacles with integral GFI protection at each location indicated. Do not use feed-through wiring to protect downstream devices.
- I. Where split-wired duplex receptacles are indicated, remove tabs connecting top and bottom receptacles.
- J. Install wiring devices plumb and level with mounting yoke held rigidly in place.
- K. Install wall switches with OFF position down.
- L. Install wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified and indicated after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
- M. Do not share neutral conductor on branch circuits utilizing wall dimmers.

- N. Install vertically mounted receptacles with grounding pole on bottom and horizontally mounted receptacles with grounding pole on left.
- O. Install wall plates to fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- P. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no wiring devices installed or designated for future use.
- Q. Identify wiring devices in accordance with Section 260553.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection, testing, and adjusting in accordance with Section 014000.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each wall switch with circuit energized to verify proper operation.
- D. Test each receptacle to verify operation and proper polarity.
- E. Test each GFCI receptacle for proper tripping operation according to manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective wiring devices.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.

#### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces to remove dirt, paint, or other foreign material and restore to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 262726



## SECTION 262813

### FUSES

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fuses.

##### 1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 262818 - Enclosed Switches: Fusible switches.

##### 1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses; 2012.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. UL 248-1 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 1: General Requirements; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 248-8 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 8: Class J Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 248-12 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 12: Class R Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

##### 1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate fuse clips furnished in equipment provided under other sections for compatibility with indicated fuses.
    - a. Fusible Enclosed Switches: See Section 262818.
  - 2. Coordinate fuse requirements according to manufacturer's recommendations and nameplate data for actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

##### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard data sheets including voltage and current ratings, interrupting ratings, time-current curves, and current limitation curves.
- B. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Fuses: One set(s) of three for each type and size installed.
  - 3. Fuse Pullers: One set(s) compatible with each type and size installed.

##### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

#### PART 2 PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Cooper Bussmann, a division of Cooper Industries: [www.cooperindustries.com/#sle](http://www.cooperindustries.com/#sle).
- B. Mersen (formerly Ferraz Shawmut): [ferrazshawmut.mersen.com](http://ferrazshawmut.mersen.com).
- C. Littelfuse, Inc: [www.littelfuse.com/#sle](http://www.littelfuse.com/#sle).
- D. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

##### 2.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders:
  - 1. Fusible Switches up to 600 Amperes: Class J, time-delay.
- B. General Purpose Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time-delay.

## 2.3 FUSES

- A. Provide products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose indicated.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide fuses for all fusible equipment as required for a complete operating system.
- C. Provide fuses of the same type, rating, and manufacturer within the same switch.
- D. Comply with UL 248-1.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide cartridge type fuses complying with NEMA FU 1, Class and ratings as indicated.
- F. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- G. Class R Fuses: Comply with UL 248-12.
- H. Class J Fuses: Comply with UL 248-8.
- I. Selectivity: Where the requirement for selectivity is indicated, furnish products as required to achieve selective coordination.
- J. Provide the following accessories where indicated or where required to complete installation:
  - 1. Fuseholders: Compatible with indicated fuses.
  - 2. Fuse Reducers: For adapting indicated fuses to permit installation in switch designed for fuses with larger ampere ratings.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that fuse ratings are consistent with circuit voltage and manufacturer's recommendations and nameplate data for equipment.
- B. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install fuses until circuits are ready to be energized.
- B. Install fuses with label oriented such that manufacturer, type, and size are easily read.

END OF SECTION 262813



SECTION 262818  
ENCLOSED SWITCHES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Enclosed safety switches.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 260529 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 262813 - Fuses.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- B. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- C. NEMA KS 1 - Heavy Duty Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches (600 Volts Maximum); 2013.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades. Avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and within working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
  - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from the contract documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for enclosed switches and other installed components and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage and current ratings, short circuit current ratings, conduit entry locations, conductor terminal information, and installed features and accessories.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of product.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of enclosed switches.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include information on replacement parts and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store in a clean, dry space. Maintain factory wrapping or provide an additional heavy canvas or heavy plastic cover to protect units from dirt, water, construction debris, and traffic.
- B. Handle carefully in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to avoid damage to enclosed switch internal components, enclosure, and finish.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperature between -22 degrees F and 104 degrees F during and after installation of enclosed switches.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Siemens Industry, Inc: [www.usa.siemens.com](http://www.usa.siemens.com).
- B. Schneider Electric; Square D Products: [www.schneider-electric.us/#sle](http://www.schneider-electric.us/#sle).
- C. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- D. Source Limitations: Furnish enclosed switches and associated components produced by the same manufacturer as the other electrical distribution equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

### 2.2 ENCLOSED SAFETY SWITCHES

- A. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, enclosed safety switches complying with NEMA KS 1, type HD (heavy duty), and listed and labeled as complying with UL 98; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Provide products listed and labeled by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- C. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
  - 1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet.
  - 2. Ambient Temperature: Between -22 degrees F and 104 degrees F.
- D. Horsepower Rating: Suitable for connected load.
- E. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- F. Provide with switch blade contact position that is visible when the cover is open.
- G. Fuse Clips for Fusible Switches: As required to accept fuses indicated.
  - 1. Where NEMA Class R fuses are installed, provide rejection feature to prevent installation of fuses other than Class R.
- H. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- I. Provide insulated, groundable fully rated solid neutral assembly where a neutral connection is required, with a suitable lug for terminating each neutral conductor.
- J. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each enclosed safety switch, with a suitable lug for terminating each equipment grounding conductor.
- K. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA KS 1 and NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
  - 1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.

2. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Manufacturer's standard, factory applied grey unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening the cover with the switch in the ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.
- M. Heavy Duty Switches:
  1. Conductor Terminations:
    - a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  2. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position, capable of accepting three padlocks.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that the ratings of the enclosed switches are consistent with the indicated requirements.
- C. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive enclosed safety switches.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install enclosed switches in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install enclosed switches securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 260529.
- E. Install enclosed switches plumb.
- F. Except where indicated to be mounted adjacent to the equipment they supply, mount enclosed switches such that the highest position of the operating handle does not exceed 79 inches above the floor or working platform.
- G. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 260526.
- H. Provide fuses complying with Section 262813 for fusible switches as indicated or as required by equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
- I. Identify enclosed switches in accordance with Section 260553.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform field inspection, testing, and adjusting in accordance with Section 014000.
- B. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective enclosed safety switches or associated components.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust tightness of mechanical and electrical connections to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from switch enclosures and components according to manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 262818



SECTION 264300  
SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Surge protective devices for service entrance locations.
- B. Surge protective devices for branch panelboard locations.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding.
- B. Section 262413 - Switchboards.
- C. Section 262416 - Panelboards.

1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. SPD: Surge Protective Device.

1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- B. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2014.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. UL 1283 - Standard for Electromagnetic Interference Filters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 1449 - Standard for Surge Protective Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate size and location of overcurrent device compatible with the actual surge protective device and location to be installed. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to ordering equipment.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include detailed component information, voltage, surge current ratings, repetitive surge current capacity, voltage protection rating (VPR) for all protection modes, maximum continuous operating voltage (MCOV), nominal discharge current (I-n), short circuit current rating (SCCR), connection means including any required external overcurrent protection, enclosure ratings, outline and support point dimensions, weight, service condition requirements, and installed features.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include wiring diagrams showing all factory and field connections with wire and circuit breaker/fuse sizes.
- C. Certificates: Manufacturer's documentation of listing for compliance with the following standards:
  - 1. UL 1449.
  - 2. UL 1283 (for Type 2 SPDs).
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include information on status indicators and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- F. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty and documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- G. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of surge protective devices.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Store in a clean, dry space in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide minimum ten year warranty covering repair or replacement of surge protective devices showing evidence of failure due to defective materials or workmanship.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Field-installed, Externally Mounted Surge Protective Devices:
  - 1. Advanced Protection Technologies, Inc (APT); : [www.aptspd.com](http://www.aptspd.com).
  - 2. Current Technology; a brand of Thomas & Betts Power Solutions; : [www.tnbpowersolutions.com](http://www.tnbpowersolutions.com).
  - 3. General Electric Company; : [www.geindustrial.com](http://www.geindustrial.com).
  - 4. Square D; Schneider Electric; [www.schneider-electric.com](http://www.schneider-electric.com)
  - 5. Eaton Corporaton; [www.eaton.com/electrical](http://www.eaton.com/electrical)
  - 6. Siemens Industry, Inc.; [www.sea.siemens.com](http://www.sea.siemens.com)
  - 7. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Factory-installed, Internally Mounted Surge Protective Devices:
  - 1. Same as manufacturer of equipment containing surge protective device, to provide a complete listed assembly including SPD.
- C. Source Limitations: Furnish surge protective devices produced by a single manufacturer and obtained from a single supplier.

### 2.2 ALL SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Description: Factory-assembled surge protective devices (SPDs) for 60 Hz service, listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated; system voltage as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Protected Modes:
  - 1. Wye Systems: L-N, L-G, N-G, L-L.
- C. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Ratings (VPRs):
  - 1. 208Y/120V System Voltage: Not more than 700 V for L-N, L-G, and N-G modes and 1000 V for L-L mode.
  - 2. 240/120V System Voltage: Not more than 1,000 V for L-N, L-G, and N-G modes and 1,200 V for L-L mode.
- D. UL 1449 Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV): Not less than 115% of nominal system voltage.
- E. Response Time: Less than one nanosecond
- F. Enclosure Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
  - 1. Indoor clean, dry locations: Type 1 or Type 4x.
- G. Equipment Containing Factory-installed, Internally Mounted SPDs: Listed and labeled as a complete assembly including SPD.
  - 1. Switchboards: See Section 262413.
  - 2. Panelboards: See Section 262416.

### 2.3 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR SERVICE ENTRANCE LOCATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, provide field-installed, externally mounted or factory-installed, internally mounted SPDs.

- B. List and label as complying with UL 1449, Type 1 when connected on line side of service disconnect overcurrent device and Type 1 or 2 when connected on load side of service disconnect overcurrent device.
- C. List and label as complying with UL 1283 and UL 1449, Type 1.
- D. Surge Current Rating: Not less than 240 kA.
- E. Repetitive Surge Current Capacity: Not less than 5,000 impulses.
- F. UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I-n): 20 kA.
- G. UL 1449 Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR): Not less than 100 kA.
- H. Diagnostics:
  - 1. Protection Status Monitoring: Provide indicator lights to report the protection for each phase.
  - 2. Alarm Notification: Provide indicator light and audible alarm to report alarm condition. Provide button to manually silence audible alarm.
  - 3. Remote Status Monitoring: Provide Form C dry type contacts (normally open and normally closed) for remote annunciation of status.
- I. Provide surge rated integral disconnect switch for SPDs not connected to a dedicated circuit breaker or fused switch or not direct bus connected.

#### 2.4 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR BRANCH PANELBOARD LOCATIONS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, provide field-installed, externally mounted or factory-installed, internally mounted SPDs.
- B. List and label as complying with UL 1449, Type 1 or Type 2.
- C. Provide SPDs utilizing field-replaceable modular or non-modular protection circuits.
- D. Surge Current Rating: Not less than 60 kA per mode/120 kA per phase.
- E. Repetitive Surge Current Capacity: Not less than 5,000 impulses.
- F. UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I-n): 20 kA.
- G. UL 1449 Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR): Not less than 100 kA.
- H. EMI/RFI Filtering: Provide EMI/RFI filter to attenuate electrical noise; listed as complying with UL 1283 for Type 2 SPDs (UL 1283 listing not available for Type 1 SPDs).
- I. Diagnostics:
  - 1. Protection Status Monitoring: Provide indicator lights to report the protection status.
  - 2. Alarm Notification: Provide indicator light and audible alarm to report alarm condition. Provide button to manually silence audible alarm.
  - 3. Remote Status Monitoring: Provide Form C dry type contacts (normally open and normally closed) for remote annunciation of status.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that the service voltage and configuration marked on the SPD are consistent with the service voltage and configuration at the location to be installed.
- C. Verify system grounding and bonding is in accordance with Section 260526, including bonding of neutral and ground for service entrance and separately derived systems where applicable. Do not energize SPD until deficiencies have been corrected.
- D. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform work in a neat and workmanlike manner in accordance with NECA 1.

- B. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- C. Unless indicated otherwise, connect service entrance surge protective device on load side of service disconnect main overcurrent device.
- D. Install conductors between SPD and equipment terminations as short and straight as possible, not exceeding manufacturer's recommended maximum conductor length. Breaker locations may be reasonably rearranged in order to provide leads as short and straight as possible. Twist conductors together to reduce inductance.
- E. Do not energize SPD until bonding of neutral and ground for service entrance and separately derived systems is complete in accordance with Section 260526 where applicable. Replace SPDs damaged by improper or missing neutral-ground bond.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Procure services of a qualified manufacturer's representative to observe installation and assist in inspection, testing, and adjusting. Include manufacturer's reports with field quality control submittals.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Repair scratched or marred exterior surfaces to match original factory finish.

END OF SECTION 264300



SECTION 265100  
INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior luminaires.
- B. Emergency lighting units.
- C. Exit signs.
- D. Ballasts.
- E. Fluorescent emergency power supply units.
- F. Lamps.
- G. Luminaire accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 260537 - Boxes.
- B. Section 260553 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- C. Section 260919 - Enclosed Contactors: Lighting contactors.
- D. Section 260923 - Lighting Control Devices: Automatic controls for lighting including occupancy sensors.
- E. Section 262726 - Wiring Devices: Manual wall switches.
- F. Section 265600 - Exterior Lighting.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C82.11 - American National Standard for Lamp Ballasts - High Frequency Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts - Supplements; 2011.
- B. IEEE C62.41.2 - Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits; 2002 (Cor 1, 2012).
- C. IES LM-79 - Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products; Illuminating Engineering Society; 2008.
- D. IES LM-80 - Approved Method: Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules; Illuminating Engineering Society; 2015.
- E. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- F. NECA/IESNA 500 - Standard for Installing Indoor Commercial Lighting Systems; 2006.
- G. NECA/IESNA 502 - Standard for Installing Industrial Lighting Systems; 2006.
- H. NEMA LE 4 - Recessed Luminaires, Ceiling Compatibility; 2012.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; 2015.
- K. UL 924 - Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 935 - Fluorescent-Lamp Ballasts; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of luminaires with mounting surfaces installed under other sections or by others. Coordinate the work with placement of supports, anchors, etc. required for mounting.

Coordinate compatibility of luminaires and associated trims with mounting surfaces at installed locations.

2. Coordinate the placement of luminaires with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, diffusers, fire suppression system components, and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
3. Coordinate the placement of exit signs with furniture, equipment, signage or other potential obstructions to visibility installed under other sections or by others.
4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:
  1. Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, installed accessories, and ceiling compatibility; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with all proposed features.
  1. LED Luminaires:
    - a. Include estimated useful life, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
  2. Lamps: Include rated life, color temperature, color rendering index (CRI), and initial and mean lumen output.
  3. Fluorescent Emergency Power Supply Unit: Include list of compatible lamp configurations and associated lumen output.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Instructions for each product including information on replacement parts.
- E. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. See Section 016000 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  2. Extra Lamps: Ten percent of total quantity installed for each type, but not less than two of each type.
  3. Extra Ballasts: Two percent of total quantity installed for each type, but not less than one of each type.
- F. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of luminaires and any associated remote components.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION

- A. Receive, handle, and store products according to NECA/IESNA 500 (commercial lighting), NECA/IESNA 502 (industrial lighting), and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Keep products in original manufacturer's packaging and protect from damage until ready for installation.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide two year manufacturer warranty for all linear fluorescent ballasts.
- C. Provide five year pro-rata warranty for batteries for emergency lighting units.

- D. Provide ten year pro-rata warranty for batteries for self-powered exit signs.
- E. Provide five year full warranty for fluorescent emergency power supply units.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRES

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- C. Provide products listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. or testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- E. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- F. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- G. Recessed Luminaires:
  - 1. Ceiling Compatibility: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
- H. Fluorescent Luminaires:
  - 1. Provide ballast disconnecting means complying with NFPA 70 where required.
  - 2. Fluorescent Luminaires Controlled by Occupancy Sensors: Provide programmed start ballasts.
  - 3. Fluorescent Luminaires Controlled by Dual-Level Switching: Provide with two ballasts.
- I. LED Luminaires:
  - 1. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.
  - 2. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
  - 3. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
- J. Luminaires Mounted in Continuous Rows: Provide quantity of units required for length indicated, with all accessories required for joining and aligning.

### 2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. Description: Emergency lighting units complying with NFPA 101 and all applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
- B. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source or brownout condition exceeding 20 percent voltage drop from nominal, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamps to integral battery power for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
- C. Battery:
  - 1. Sealed maintenance-free lead calcium unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Size battery to supply all connected lamps, including emergency remote heads where indicated.
- D. Diagnostics: Provide power status indicator light and accessible integral test switch to manually activate emergency operation.
- E. Provide low-voltage disconnect to prevent battery damage from deep discharge.
- F. Self-Diagnostics: Provide units that self-monitor functionality and automatically perform testing required by NFPA 101 where indicated; provide indicator light(s) to report test and diagnostic status.

## 2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. All Exit Signs: Internally illuminated with LEDs unless otherwise indicated; complying with NFPA 101 and all applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
  - 1. Number of Faces: Single or double as indicated or as required for the installed location.
  - 2. Directional Arrows: As indicated or as required for the installed location.
- B. Self-Powered Exit Signs:
  - 1. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source or brownout condition exceeding 20 percent voltage drop from nominal, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamps to integral battery power for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
  - 2. Diagnostics: Provide power status indicator light and accessible integral test switch to manually activate emergency operation.
  - 3. Provide low-voltage disconnect to prevent battery damage from deep discharge.
  - 4. Self-Diagnostics: Provide units that self-monitor functionality and automatically perform testing required by NFPA 101 where indicated; provide indicator light(s) to report test and diagnostic status.

## 2.5 BALLASTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. General Electric Company/GE Lighting; : [www.gelighting.com/#sle](http://www.gelighting.com/#sle).
  - 2. Osram Sylvania; : [www.sylvania.com/#sle](http://www.sylvania.com/#sle).
  - 3. Philips Lighting Electronics/Advance; : [www.advance.philips.com](http://www.advance.philips.com).
  - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 5. Manufacturer Limitations: Where possible, for each type of luminaire provide ballasts produced by a single manufacturer.
- B. All Ballasts:
  - 1. Provide ballasts containing no polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs).
  - 2. Minimum Efficiency/Efficacy: Provide ballasts complying with all current applicable federal and state ballast efficiency/efficacy standards.
- C. Fluorescent Ballasts:
  - 1. All Fluorescent Ballasts: Unless otherwise indicated, provide high frequency electronic ballasts complying with ANSI C82.11 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 935.
    - a. Input Voltage: Suitable for operation at voltage of connected source, with variation tolerance of plus or minus 10 percent.
    - b. Total Harmonic Distortion: Not greater than 10 percent.
    - c. Power Factor: Not less than 0.95.
    - d. Ballast Factor: Normal ballast factor between 0.85 and 1.15, unless otherwise indicated.
    - e. Thermal Protection: Listed and labeled as UL Class P, with automatic reset for integral thermal protectors.
    - f. Sound Rating: Class A, suitable for average ambient noise level of 20 to 24 decibels.
    - g. Lamp Compatibility: Specifically designed for use with the specified lamp, with no visible flicker.
    - h. Lamp Operating Frequency: Greater than 20 kHz, except as specified below.
    - i. Lamp Current Crest Factor: Not greater than 1.7.
    - j. Lamp Wiring Method:
      - 1) Programmed Start Ballasts: Provide parallel or series/parallel wired where available; otherwise series wired is acceptable.
    - k. Provide automatic restart capability to restart replaced lamp(s) without requiring resetting of power.
    - l. Provide end of lamp life automatic shut down circuitry for T5 and smaller diameter lamp ballasts.

- m. Surge Tolerance: Capable of withstanding characteristic surges according to IEEE C62.41.2, location category A.
  - n. Electromagnetic Interference/Radio Frequency Interference (EMI/RFI) Limits: Comply with FCC requirements of CFR, Title 47, Part 18, for Class A, non-consumer application.
  - o. Ballast Marking: Include wiring diagrams with lamp connections.
2. Non-Dimming Fluorescent Ballasts:
- a. Lamp Starting Method:
    - 1) T8 Lamp Ballasts: Programmed start unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2) T5 Lamp Ballasts: Programmed start unless otherwise indicated.
    - 3) Compact Fluorescent Lamp Ballasts: Programmed start unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Lamp Starting Temperature: Capable of starting standard lamp(s) at a minimum of 0 degrees F, and energy saving lamp(s) at a minimum of 60 degrees F unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Dimmable LED Drivers:
- 1. Dimming Range: Continuous dimming from 100 percent to five percent relative light output unless dimming capability to lower level is indicated, without flicker.
  - 2. Control Compatibility: Fully compatible with the dimming controls to be installed.

## 2.6 FLUORESCENT EMERGENCY POWER SUPPLY UNITS

- A. Manufacturers:
- 1. Iota Engineering, LLC; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.iotaengineering.com/#sle](http://www.iotaengineering.com/#sle).
  - 2. Philips Emergency Lighting/Bodine; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.bodine.com/#sle](http://www.bodine.com/#sle).
  - 3. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 4. Manufacturer Limitations: Where possible, for each type of luminaire provide fluorescent emergency power supply units produced by a single manufacturer.
- B. Description: Self-contained fluorescent emergency power supply units suitable for use with indicated luminaires, complying with NFPA 101 and all applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
- C. Compatibility:
- 1. Ballasts: Compatible with electronic, standard magnetic, energy saving, and dimming AC ballasts, including those with end of lamp life shutdown circuits.
  - 2. Lamps: Compatible with low-mercury lamps.
- D. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamp(s) to the fluorescent emergency power supply for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
- E. Battery: Sealed maintenance-free high-temperature nickel cadmium unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Emergency Illumination Output:
- 1. As indicated in Light Fixture Schedule
- G. Diagnostics: Provide accessible and visible multi-chromatic combination test switch/indicator light to display charge, test, and diagnostic status and to manually activate emergency operation.
- H. Operating Temperature: From 32 degrees F to 122 degrees F unless otherwise indicated or required for the installed location.

## 2.7 LAMPS

- A. Manufacturers:
- 1. General Electric Company/GE Lighting; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.gelighting.com/#sle](http://www.gelighting.com/#sle).
  - 2. Osram Sylvania; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.sylvania.com/#sle](http://www.sylvania.com/#sle).
  - 3. Philips Lighting Company; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.lighting.philips.com](http://www.lighting.philips.com).
  - 4. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
  - 5. Manufacturer Limitations: Where possible, provide lamps produced by a single manufacturer.
- B. All Lamps:
- 1. Unless explicitly excluded, provide new, compatible, operable lamps in each luminaire.

2. Verify compatibility of specified lamps with luminaires to be installed. Where lamps are not specified, provide lamps per luminaire manufacturer's recommendations.
  3. Minimum Efficiency: Provide lamps complying with all current applicable federal and state lamp efficiency standards.
  4. Color Temperature Consistency: Unless otherwise indicated, for each type of lamp furnish products which are consistent in perceived color temperature. Replace lamps that are determined by the Architect to be inconsistent in perceived color temperature.
- C. Incandescent Lamps: Wattage and bulb type as indicated, with base type as required for lighting fixture; 130 V rated.
1. Non-Reflector Type Incandescent Lamps: Inside frosted lamp finish unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Compact Fluorescent Lamps: Wattage and bulb type as indicated, with base type as required for luminaire.
1. Low Mercury Content: Provide lamps that pass the EPA Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP) test for characteristic hazardous waste.
  2. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): 3,000 K unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Not less than 80.
  4. Average Rated Life: Not less than 10,000 hours for an operating cycle of three hours per start.
- E. Linear Fluorescent Lamps: Wattage and bulb type as indicated, with base type as required for luminaire.
1. Low Mercury Content: Provide lamps that pass the EPA Toxicity Characteristic Leaching Procedure (TCLP) test for characteristic hazardous waste.
  2. T8 Linear Fluorescent Lamps:
    - a. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): 3,000 K unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Not less than 80.
    - c. Average Rated Life: Not less than 20,000 hours for an operating cycle of three hours per start.
  3. T5 Linear Fluorescent Lamps:
    - a. Correlated Color Temperature (CCT): 3,000 K unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Color Rendering Index (CRI): Not less than 80.
    - c. Average Rated Life: Not less than 20,000 hours for an operating cycle of three hours per start.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Stems for Suspended Luminaires: Steel tubing, minimum 1/2" size, factory finished to match luminaire or field-painted as directed.
- B. Threaded Rods for Suspended Luminaires: Zinc-plated steel, minimum 1/4" size, field-painted as directed.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that suitable support frames are installed where required.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to luminaires.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260537 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.
- B. Install products according to manufacturer's instructions.

- C. Install luminaires securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1 (general workmanship), NECA 500 (commercial lighting), and NECA 502 (industrial lighting).
- D. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
- E. Suspended Ceiling Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Do not use ceiling tiles to bear weight of luminaires.
  - 2. Do not use ceiling support system to bear weight of luminaires unless ceiling support system is certified as suitable to do so.
  - 3. Secure surface-mounted and recessed luminaires to ceiling support channels or framing members or to building structure.
  - 4. Secure pendant-mounted luminaires to building structure.
  - 5. Secure lay-in luminaires to ceiling support channels using listed safety clips at four corners.
  - 6. In addition to ceiling support wires, provide two galvanized steel safety wire(s), minimum 12 gage, connected from opposing corners of each recessed luminaire to building structure.
  - 7. See appropriate Division 9 section where suspended grid ceiling is specified for additional requirements.
- F. Recessed Luminaires:
  - 1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
  - 2. Non-IC Rated Luminaires: Maintain required separation from insulation and combustibles according to listing.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to bottom of luminaire.
  - 2. Install using the suspension method indicated, with support lengths and accessories as required for specified mounting height.
  - 3. Provide minimum of two supports for each luminaire equal to or exceeding 4 feet in length, with no more than 4 feet between supports.
  - 4. Install canopies tight to mounting surface.
  - 5. Unless otherwise indicated, support pendants from swivel hangers.
- H. Wall-Mounted Luminaires: Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to center of luminaire.
- I. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- J. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- K. Fluorescent Luminaires Controlled by Dual-Level Switching: Connect such that each switch controls the same corresponding lamps in each luminaire.
- L. Emergency Lighting Units:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal lighting in same room or area. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.
- M. Exit Signs:
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal lighting in same room or area. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.
- N. Fluorescent Emergency Power Supply Units:
  - 1. For field-installed units, install inside luminaire unless otherwise indicated. Where installation inside luminaire is not possible, install on top of luminaire.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal ballast(s) in luminaire. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.
- O. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- P. Lamp Burn-In: Operate lamps at full output for prescribed period per manufacturer's recommendations prior to use with any dimming controls. Replace lamps that fail prematurely due to improper lamp burn-in.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. See Section 014000 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each product for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection to verify proper operation.
- D. Test self-powered exit signs, emergency lighting units, and fluorescent emergency power supply units to verify proper operation upon loss of normal power supply.
- E. Correct wiring deficiencies and repair or replace damaged or defective products. Repair or replace excessively noisy ballasts as determined by Architect.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Aim and position adjustable luminaires to achieve desired illumination as indicated or as directed by Architect. Secure locking fittings in place.
- B. Aim and position adjustable emergency lighting unit lamps to achieve optimum illumination of egress path as required or as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.
- C. Exit Signs with Field-Selectable Directional Arrows: Set as indicated or as required to properly designate egress path as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean surfaces according to NECA 500 (commercial lighting), NECA 502 (industrial lighting), and manufacturer's instructions to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.

### 3.7 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES

- A. Just prior to Substantial Completion, replace all lamps that have failed.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed luminaires from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION 265100



SECTION 265600  
EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Exterior luminaires.
- B. Poles and accessories.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 033000 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Materials and installation requirements for concrete bases for poles.
- B. Section 260526 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 260537 - Boxes.
- D. Section 260919 - Enclosed Contactors: Lighting contactors.
- E. Section 260923 - Lighting Control Devices: Automatic controls for lighting including outdoor photo controls.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI C82.4 - American National Standard for Ballasts for High-Intensity-Discharge and Low-Pressure Sodium Lamps (Multiple-Supply Type); 2002.
- B. IES LM-79 - Approved Method: Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products; Illuminating Engineering Society; 2008.
- C. IES LM-80 - Approved Method: Measuring Luminous Flux and Color Maintenance of LED Packages, Arrays, and Modules; Illuminating Engineering Society; 2015.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2010.
- E. NECA/IESNA 501 - Standard for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems; 2006.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate placement of poles and associated foundations with utilities, curbs, sidewalks, trees, walls, fences, striping, etc. installed under other sections or by others. Coordinate elevation to obtain specified foundation height.
  - 2. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from the contract documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, weight, effective projected area (EPA), and installed accessories; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with all proposed features.
  - 1. LED Luminaires:
    - a. Include estimated useful life, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
  - 2. Poles: Include information on maximum supported effective projected area (EPA) and weight for the design wind speed.

- C. Certificates for Poles and Accessories: Manufacturer's documentation that products are suitable for the luminaires to be installed.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, installation, and starting of product.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Instructions for each product including information on replacement parts.
- F. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Touch-Up Paint: 2 gallons, to match color of pole finish.
- G. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of pole foundations, luminaires, and any pull or junction boxes.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Conform to requirements of NFPA 70.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, handle, and store products according to NECA/IESNA 501 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Keep products in original manufacturer's packaging and protect from damage until ready for installation.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for all LED luminaires, including drivers.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the Drawings.
- B. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### 2.2 LUMINAIRES

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- C. Provide products listed and classified by testing firm acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- E. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, poles, foundations, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- F. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- G. Provide luminaires listed and labeled as suitable for wet locations unless otherwise indicated.
- H. LED Luminaires:
  - 1. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.
  - 2. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
  - 3. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.

#### 2.3 POLES

- A. All Poles:

1. Provide poles and associated support components suitable for the luminaire(s) and associated supports and accessories to be installed.
  2. Structural Design Criteria:
    - a. Wind Load: Include effective projected area (EPA) of luminaire(s) and associated supports and accessories to be installed.
      - 1) Design Wind Speed: 100 miles per hour, with gust factor of 1.3.
    - b. Dead Load: Include weight of proposed luminaire(s) and associated supports and accessories.
  3. Material: Steel, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Shape: Round straight, unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Finish: Match luminaire finish, unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Mounting: Install on concrete foundation, height as indicated on the drawings, unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Unless otherwise indicated, provide with the following features/accessories:
    - a. Top cap.
    - b. Handhole.
    - c. Anchor bolts with leveling nuts or leveling shims.
    - d. Anchor base cover.
- B. Metal Poles: Provide ground lug, accessible from handhole.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as shown on the drawings.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that suitable support frames are installed where required.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to luminaires.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide extension rings to bring outlet boxes flush with finished surface.
- B. Clean dirt, debris, plaster, and other foreign materials from outlet boxes.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 260537 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.
- B. Install products according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install luminaires securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 1 (general workmanship) and NECA/IESNA 501 (exterior lighting).
- D. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
- E. Recessed Luminaires:
  1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
- F. Pole-Mounted Luminaires:
  1. Foundation-Mounted Poles:
    - a. Provide cast-in-place concrete foundations for poles as indicated, in accordance with Section 033000.
      - 1) Install anchor bolts plumb per template furnished by pole manufacturer.
      - 2) Position conduits to enter pole shaft.
    - b. Install foundations plumb.
    - c. Install poles plumb, using leveling nuts or shims as required to adjust to plumb.
    - d. Tighten anchor bolt nuts to manufacturer's recommended torque.

- e. Install non-shrink grout between pole anchor base and concrete foundation, leaving small channel for condensation drainage.
  - f. Install anchor base covers as indicated.
  - 2. Grounding:
    - a. Bond luminaires, metal accessories, metal poles, and foundation reinforcement to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
    - b. Provide supplementary ground rod electrode as specified in Section 260526 at each pole bonded to grounding system as indicated.
  - 3. Install separate service conductors, 12 AWG copper, from each luminaire down to handhole for connection to branch circuit conductors.
- G. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- H. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- I. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Inspect each product for damage and defects.
  - B. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection to verify proper operation.
  - C. Correct wiring deficiencies and repair or replace damaged or defective products. Repair or replace excessively noisy ballasts as determined by Architect.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Aim and position adjustable luminaires to achieve desired illumination as indicated or as directed by Architect. Secure locking fittings in place.
  - B. Luminaires with Field-Rotatable Optics: Position optics according to manufacturer's instructions to achieve lighting distribution as indicated or as directed by Architect.
- 3.6 CLEANING
- A. Clean surfaces according to NECA/IESNA 501 and manufacturer's instructions to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed luminaires from subsequent construction operations.

END OF SECTION 265600

SECTION 283100  
FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fire alarm system design and installation, including all components, wiring, and conduit.
- B. Transmitters for communication with supervising station.
- C. Maintenance of fire alarm system under contract for specified warranty period.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 211300 - Fire-Suppression Sprinkler Systems: Supervisory, alarm, and actuating devices installed in sprinkler system.
- B. Section 142010 - Passenger Elevators: Elevator systems monitored and controlled by fire alarm system.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines; current edition.
- B. IEEE C62.41.2 - Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits; 2002 (Cor 1, 2012).
- C. IEEE C62.41 - IEEE Recommended Practice on Surge Voltages in Low-Voltage Power Circuits; 1991 (R1995).
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code; 2016.
- F. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; 2015.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Proposal Documents: Submit the following with cost/time proposal:
  - 1. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out to the extent known at the time.
  - 2. Manufacturer's detailed data sheet for each control unit, initiating device, and notification appliance.
  - 3. Certification by Contractor that the system design will comply with the contract documents.
  - 4. Proposed maintenance contract.
- B. Evidence of designer qualifications.
- C. Design Documents: Submit all information required for plan review and permitting by authorities having jurisdiction, including but not limited to floor plans, riser diagrams, and description of operation:
  - 1. Copy (if any) of list of data required by authority having jurisdiction.
  - 2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out to the extent known at the time.
  - 3. Clear and concise description of operation, with input/output matrix similar to that shown in NFPA 72 Appendix A-7-5-2.2(9), and complete listing of software required.
  - 4. System zone boundaries and interfaces to fire safety systems.
  - 5. Location of all components, circuits, and raceways; mark components with identifiers used in control unit programming.
  - 6. Circuit layouts; number, size, and type of raceways and conductors; conduit fill calculations; spare capacity calculations; notification appliance circuit voltage drop calculations.
  - 7. List of all devices on each signaling line circuit, with spare capacity indicated.
  - 8. Manufacturer's detailed data sheet for each component, including wiring diagrams, installation instructions, and circuit length limitations.
  - 9. Description of power supplies; if secondary power is by battery include calculations demonstrating adequate battery power.

10. Certification by either the manufacturer of the control unit or by the manufacturer of each other component that the components are compatible with the control unit.
  11. Certification by the manufacturer of the control unit that the system design complies with the contract documents.
  12. Certification by Contractor that the system design complies with the contract documents.
- D. Evidence of installer qualifications.
- E. Evidence of maintenance contractor qualifications, if different from installer.
- F. Inspection and Test Reports:
1. Submit inspection and test plan prior to closeout demonstration.
  2. Submit documentation of satisfactory inspections and tests.
  3. Submit NFPA 72 "Inspection and Test Form," filled out.
- G. Operating and Maintenance Data: Revise and resubmit until acceptable; have one set available during closeout demonstration:
1. Complete set of specified design documents, as approved by authority having jurisdiction.
  2. Additional printed set of project record documents and closeout documents, bound or filed in same manuals.
  3. Contact information for firm that will be providing contract maintenance and trouble call-back service.
  4. List of recommended spare parts, tools, and instruments for testing.
  5. Replacement parts list with current prices, and source of supply.
  6. Detailed troubleshooting guide and large scale input/output matrix.
  7. Preventive maintenance, inspection, and testing schedule complying with NFPA 72; provide printed copy and computer format acceptable to Owner.
  8. Detailed but easy to read explanation of procedures to be taken by non-technical administrative personnel in the event of system trouble, when routine testing is being conducted, for fire drills, and when entering into contracts for remodeling.
- H. Project Record Documents: Have one set available during closeout demonstration:
1. Complete set of floor plans showing actual installed locations of components, conduit, and zones.
  2. "As installed" wiring and schematic diagrams, with final terminal identifications.
  3. "As programmed" operating sequences, including control events by device, updated input/output chart, and voice messages by event.
- I. Closeout Documents:
1. Certification by manufacturer that the system has been installed in compliance with his installation requirements, is complete, and is in satisfactory operating condition.
  2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out completely and signed by installer and authorized representative of authority having jurisdiction.
  3. Certificate of Occupancy.
  4. Maintenance contract.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Registered engineer, employed by fire alarm control panel manufacturer, Contractor, or installer, with experience designing fire alarm systems in the jurisdictional area of the authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Firm with minimum 3 years documented experience installing fire alarm systems of the specified type and providing contract maintenance service as a regular part of their business.
1. Authorized representative of control unit manufacturer; submit manufacturer's certification that installer is authorized; include name and title of manufacturer's representative making certification.
  2. Installer Personnel: At least 2 years of experience installing fire alarm systems.
  3. Supervisor: NICET level III or IV (3 or 4) certified fire alarm technician; furnish name and address.

- C. Maintenance Contractor Qualifications: Same entity as installer or different entity with specified qualifications.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Provide control panel manufacturer's warranty that system components other than wire and conduit are free from defects and will remain so for 1 year after date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Provide installer's warranty that the installation is free from defects and will remain so for 1 year after date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Fire Alarm Control Units: Provided their products meet or exceed the performance of the basis of design product, products of the following are acceptable:
  1. Honeywell Security & Fire Solutions/Notifier: [www.notifier.com/#sle](http://www.notifier.com/#sle).
  2. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc: [www.usa.siemens.com/#sle](http://www.usa.siemens.com/#sle).
  3. Provide all control units made by the same manufacturer.
- B. Initiating Devices, and Notification Appliances:
  1. Same manufacturer as control units.
  2. Provide all initiating devices and notification appliances made by the same manufacturer.
- C. Substitutions: Not permitted.

#### 2.2 FIRE ALARM SYSTEM

- A. Fire Alarm System: Provide a new automatic fire detection and alarm system:
  1. Provide all components necessary, regardless of whether shown in the contract documents or not.
  2. Protected Premises: Entire building.
  3. Comply with the following; where requirements conflict, order of precedence of requirements is as listed:
    - a. ADA Standards for Accessible Design.
    - b. The requirements of the State Fire Marshal.
    - c. The requirements of the local authority having jurisdiction .
    - d. Applicable local codes.
    - e. The contract documents (drawings and specifications).
    - f. NFPA 101.
    - g. NFPA 72; where the word "should" is used consider that provision mandatory; where conflicts between requirements require deviation from NFPA 72, identify deviations clearly on design documents.
  4. Evacuation Alarm: general evacuation of entire premises.
  5. Hearing Impaired Occupants: Provide visible notification devices in all public areas and in dwelling units.
  6. Master Control Unit (Panel): New, location shown on plans .
  7. Combined Systems: Do not combine fire alarm system with other non-fire systems.
- B. Supervising Stations and Fire Department Connections:
  1. Public Fire Department Notification: By on-premises supervising station.
  2. Remote Supervising Station: UL-listed central station under contract to facility.
  3. Means of Transmission to Remote Supervising Station: Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT), 2 telephone lines.
- C. Circuits:
  1. Initiating Device Circuits (IDC): Class A, Style D.
  2. Signaling Line Circuits (SLC) : Class A, Style 6.
  3. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC): Class B, Style Y.

- D. Spare Capacity:
  1. Initiating Device Addresses: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.
  2. Notification Appliance Circuits: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.
  3. Master Control Unit: Capable of handling all circuits utilized to capacity without requiring additional components other than plug-in control modules.
- E. Power Sources:
  1. Primary: Dedicated branch circuits of the facility power distribution system.
  2. Secondary: Storage batteries.
  3. Capacity: Sufficient to operate entire system for period specified by NFPA 72.

### 2.3 FIRE SAFETY SYSTEMS INTERFACES

- A. Supervision: Provide supervisory signals in accordance with NFPA 72 for the following:
  1. Sprinkler/standpipe water control valves.
  2. Elevator shut-down control circuits.
- B. Alarm: Provide alarm initiation in accordance with NFPA 72 for the following:
  1. Sprinkler water flow.
  2. Kitchen hood suppression activation; also disconnect fuel source from cooking equipment.
  3. Elevator lobby, elevator hoistway, and elevator machine room smoke detectors.
  4. Smoke and heat detectors.
  5. Manual Pull Stations.
- C. Elevators:
  1. Elevator lobby, hoistway, and machine room smoke detectors: Elevator recall for fire fighters' service.
  2. Elevator Machine Room and hoistway Heat Detectors: Shut down elevator power prior to hoistway sprinkler activation.
- D. Doors:
  1. Door Magnetic Holders: Release upon activation of general alarm.

### 2.4 COMPONENTS

- A. General:
  1. Provide flush mounted units where installed in finish areas; in unfinished areas, surface mounted unit are acceptable.
  2. Provide legible, permanent labels for each control device, using identification used in operation and maintenance data.
- B. Fire Alarm Control Units, Initiating Devices, and Notification Appliances: Analog, addressable type; listed by Underwriters Laboratories as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Master Control Unit: As specified above.
- D. Remote Annunciators: LCD display; .
- E. Initiating Devices:
  1. Manual Pull Stations: Dual Action, non-coded, RED with white "FIRE" lettering.
  2. Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric, Addressable.
  3. Heat Detectors: Fixed temperature and Rate-of-Rise.
  4. Addressable Interface Devices.
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
- F. Notification Appliances:
  1. Bells.
  2. Horns: Wall mounted, RED with white "FIRE" lettering, Temporal pattern.
  3. Strobes: Wall mounted, RED with white "FIRE" lettering, Multi-candela selectable.
  4. Horn/Strobes: Wall mounted, RED with white "FIRE" lettering.
- G. Miscellaneous:
  1. Door Holders: 24V Electromagnetic, Flush wall-mount FM998



- H. Circuit Conductors: Copper; provide 200 feet extra; color code and label.
- I. Surge Protection: In accordance with IEEE C62.41.2 category B combination waveform and NFPA 70; except for optical fiber conductors.
  - 1. Equipment Connected to Alternating Current Circuits: Maximum let through voltage of 350 V(ac), line-to-neutral, and 350 V(ac), line-to-line; do not use fuses.
- J. Locks and Keys: Deliver keys to Owner.
- K. Instruction Charts: Printed instruction chart for operators, showing steps to be taken when a signal is received (normal, alarm, supervisory, and trouble); easily readable from normal operator's station.
  - 1. Frame: Stainless steel or aluminum with polycarbonate or glass cover.
  - 2. Provide one for each control unit where operations are to be performed.
  - 3. Obtain approval of Owner prior to mounting; mount in location acceptable to Owner.
  - 4. Provide extra copy with operation and maintenance data submittal.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with applicable codes, NFPA 72, NFPA 70, and the contract documents.
- B. Conceal all wiring, conduit, boxes, and supports where installed in finished areas.
- C. Install instruction cards and labels.
- D. Provide one year monitoring service.
- E. Verify location of all devices with Architect prior to installation.

#### 3.2 INSPECTION AND TESTING FOR COMPLETION

- A. Notify Owner 7 days prior to beginning completion inspections and tests.
- B. Notify authorities having jurisdiction and comply with their requirements for scheduling inspections and tests and for observation by their personnel.
- C. Provide the services of the installer's supervisor or person with equivalent qualifications to supervise inspection and testing, correction, and adjustments.
- D. Prepare for testing by ensuring that all work is complete and correct; perform preliminary tests as required.
- E. Provide all tools, software, and supplies required to accomplish inspection and testing.
- F. Perform inspection and testing in accordance with NFPA 72 and requirements of local authorities; document each inspection and test.
- G. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with contract documents.

#### 3.3 PERSONNEL INSTRUCTION

- A. Provide the following instruction to designated Owner personnel:
  - 1. Hands-On Instruction: On-site, using operational system.
- B. Administrative: One-hour session(s) covering issues necessary for non-technical administrative staff; classroom:
  - 1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.
- C. Basic Operation: One-hour sessions for attendant personnel, security officers, and engineering staff; combination of classroom and hands-on:
  - 1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.
- D. Furnish the services of instructors and teaching aids; have copies of operation and maintenance data available during instruction.

#### 3.4 CLOSEOUT

- A. Closeout Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of all functions to Owner.
  - 1. Be prepared to conduct any of the required tests.

2. Have at least one copy of operation and maintenance data, preliminary copy of project record drawings, input/output matrix, and operator instruction chart(s) available during demonstration.
  3. Have authorized technical representative of control unit manufacturer present during demonstration.
  4. Demonstration may be combined with inspection and testing required by authority having jurisdiction; notify authority having jurisdiction in time to schedule demonstration.
  5. Repeat demonstration until successful.
- B. Substantial Completion of the project cannot be achieved until inspection and testing is successful and:
1. Approved operating and maintenance data has been delivered.
  2. All aspects of operation have been demonstrated to Owner.
  3. Final acceptance of the fire alarm system has been given by authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Occupancy permit has been granted.
  5. Specified pre-closeout instruction is complete.
- 3.5 MAINTENANCE
- A. Provide to Owner, at no extra cost, a written maintenance contract for entire manufacturer's warranty period, to include the work described below.
- B. Perform routine inspection, testing, and preventive maintenance required by NFPA 72, including:
1. Maintenance of fire safety interface and supervisory devices connected to fire alarm system.
  2. Repairs required, unless due to improper use, accidents, or negligence beyond the control of the maintenance contractor.
  3. Record keeping required by NFPA 72 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide trouble call-back service upon notification by Owner:
1. Provide on-site response within 2 hours of notification.
  2. Include allowance for call-back service during normal working hours at no extra cost to Owner.
  3. Owner will pay for call-back service outside of normal working hours on an hourly basis, based on actual time spent at site and not including travel time; include hourly rate and definition of normal working hours in maintenance contract.
- D. Provide a complete description of preventive maintenance, systematic examination, adjustment, cleaning, inspection, and testing, with a detailed schedule.
- E. Maintain a log at each fire alarm control unit, listing the date and time of each inspection and call-back visit, the condition of the system, nature of the trouble, correction performed, and parts replaced. Submit duplicate of each log entry to Owner's representative upon completion of site visit.
- F. Comply with Owner's requirements for access to facility and security.

END OF SECTION 283100